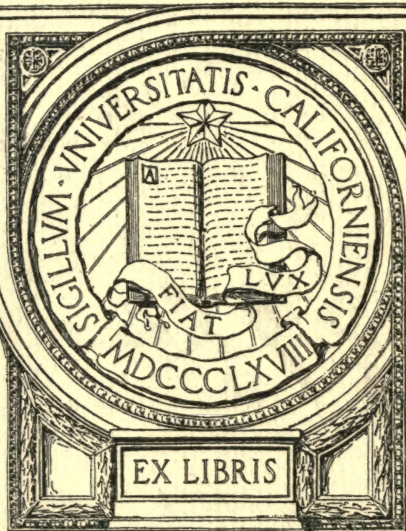


APPLIED LATIN

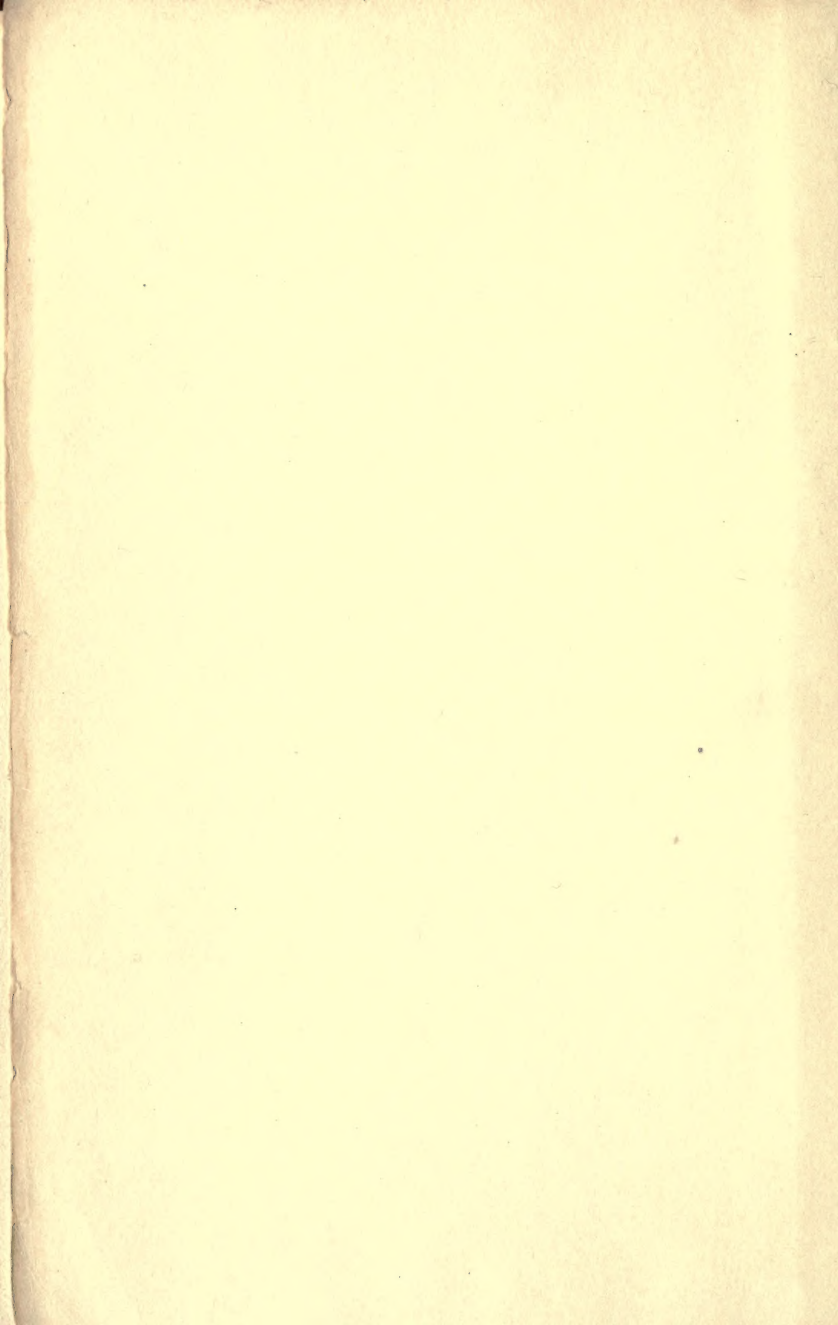
FREEMAN

GIFT OF
JANE K.SATHER



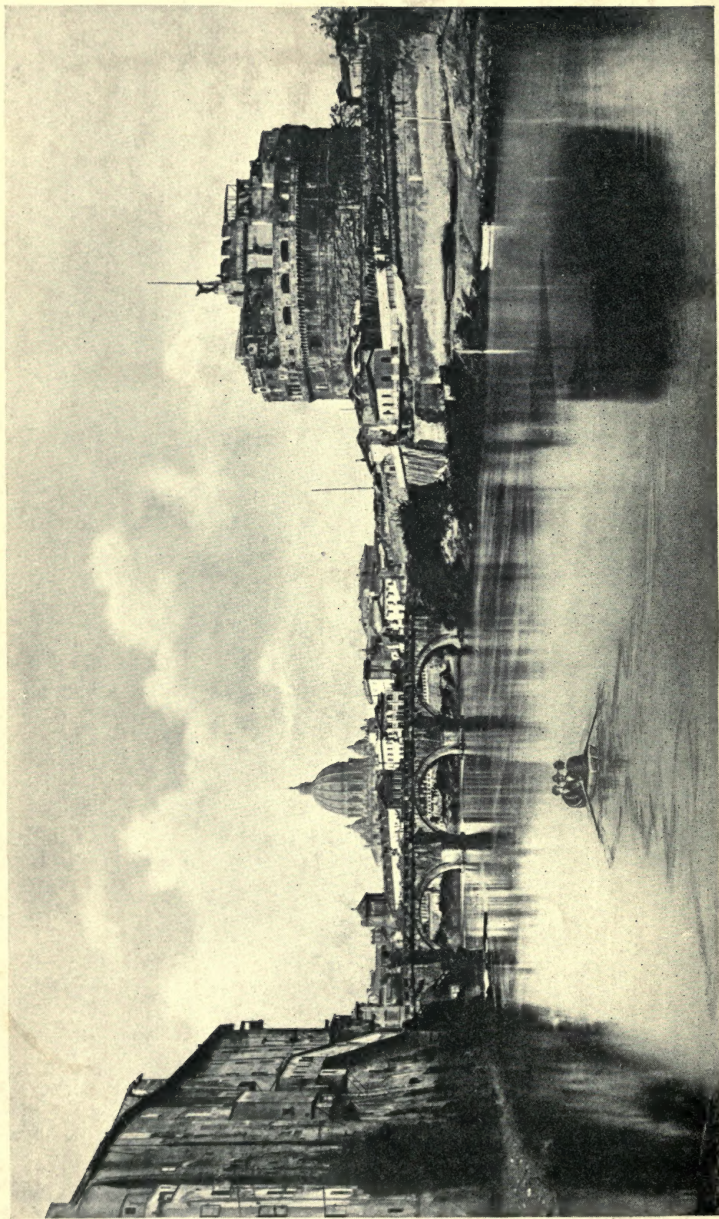
EX LIBRIS

760
F855





Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation



THE TIBER AND THE TOMB OF HADRIAN.

APPLIED LATIN

A COURSE FOR BEGINNERS

W. H. FREEMAN, PH. D. (HARVARD)

HEAD OF THE LATIN DEPARTMENT, HIGH SCHOOL, TRENTON, N. J.

PUBLISHED BY
WEIDENHAMER AND COMPANY
MILTON • PENNA.

COPYRIGHT, 1916, BY WEIDENHAMER & COMPANY
ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

Latin Sashie

THE
LATIN
SASHIE

WM.F. FELL CO. PRINTERS
PHILADELPHIA



760
F855

PREFACE

After an experience of several years teaching in College and High School, the author has become convinced that the present First Year books do not satisfy modern needs in the teaching of Latin nor do they handle the subject in a manner that produces "the greatest good for the greatest number" of students.

I. The Beginners' books in present use have been written too much for the small number of students who intend to go to College, and too little for the great number who study Latin only during two or three years of High School work.

Within the last few years the makers of High School curricula have been forced to pay more attention to the demands of the great mass of students who go no further than the High School. Courses more nearly related to their needs in later life as citizens and workers have been adopted. Traditional courses which gained reputations as valuable only for College students have been disregarded by the authorities and neglected by the students. Latin, especially, has been attacked as an educational luxury, because laymen have thought that the net results of the study do not justify the outlay of so much valuable time. Too often no definite advance could be pointed out as the result of the first year's study even by the teachers.

The prospect of beginning the study of Latin earlier than in the first year of the High School, a prospect which bids fair to be realized in the new *Junior High Schools*, has presented an opportunity for a rearrangement of Beginners' Latin so that not only the great mass of non-college students

PREFACE

may be benefited in ways not possible before, but those students also who are preparing for College may acquire a yet broader range of scholarship. APPLIED LATIN, by its new treatment of the language and its correlation of Latin to the study of English, history, mathematics, and the commercial branches, aims to increase the powers of the ordinary High School pupil and to prove that Latin is an educational necessity.

II. Present-day Latin books prevent the enthusiastic teacher from making adequate use of broad training in the class-room.

Beginners' books are today so crammed with material, the direct object of which is to prepare the student for the reading of Cæsar in the second year, that the teacher is reduced to desperation in attempting to cover merely the minimum requirements of first year work. No time is allowed for the correlation of Latin with other subjects, for digressions upon the life and manners of the ancient nations, for the drawing of conclusions from the study of an older civilization which can be applied to the questions of modern times. This is partly because there is so much Latin to cover, and partly because no inspirational material is included in the books used. Many a teacher does not feel at liberty to add life to Latin because the arrangement of his text-book seems to forbid any innovations. Excellent teachers are for this reason really prevented from making any personal impression on their classes. APPLIED LATIN aims to give the broad-gauge teacher a chance to inspire his students. The subject matter is arranged partly with a view to the acquisition of a sound foundation in Latin; partly to the correlation of Latin with things modern and vital.

PREFACE

III. The important aid which Latin can give to the other subjects included in the High School curriculum is hardly touched upon in the present introductory Latin books.

For many years it has been recognized that those who have studied Latin enter upon life better equipped in many ways than those who have never studied the subject. Experiments carried on at various points have uniformly indicated that in the matter of enlarged vocabulary, correct spelling, and facility in the use of English words non-Latin students are at a distinct disadvantage. **APPLIED LATIN**, by its constant drills in English derivatives, aims to enrich the student's vocabulary. The Latin words selected for memorizing, while none that are frequent in Cæsar have been omitted, have been chosen especially because of their importance as root words in English.

The problem of teaching formal English grammar has always given educators much trouble. Teachers are in agreement that hardly any progress is made in this difficult subject until the student takes up the study of a foreign language, preferably one that is highly inflected. In **APPLIED LATIN** careful attention is given to the connection of Latin with formal English grammar. The parts of speech, types of sentences, use of cases, and conjugation of verbs are consistently developed with reference to English.

The inability on the part of students to make use of the information gained in one subject in the work of another subject is almost too common a phenomenon to be mentioned. It is the usual experience of teachers to find the facts of literature, history, biology, etc., pigeon-holed, so to speak, in the student's brain and impossible of use except in the individual course in which the information was obtained. **APPLIED LATIN**, with its interchapters on ancient

PREFACE

geography, ancient history, ancient customs and modes of life, seeks to connect these subjects with modern geography, history, and life, and in this way to train the student to make effective use of his information, not in some particular class-room, but in all his class-rooms and especially in the problems of after-life.

Teachers who make use of this book should keep in mind the following facts:

1. APPLIED LATIN is intended to give the student of Latin a sound foundation in the forms and constructions of the Latin language.

2. APPLIED LATIN aims also to increase the student's English vocabulary, to train him in the uses of words, and to make perfectly clear the close relation of Latin to the other subjects of the curriculum. The translation of Latin to English and of English to Latin is to be a secondary matter compared with awakening a realization of the importance of a knowledge of Latin as an aid to the study of English.

3. APPLIED LATIN is so arranged that the broad-gauge teacher may feel justified in supplementing his teaching with the results of wide study in Latin and English, without a lurking suspicion that he is neglecting the subject of Latin in so doing. The division by topics and not by lessons leaves the rate of progress of the class entirely under the control of the teacher.

4. The material in APPLIED LATIN is entirely new, and the treatment is different from that found in the ordinary Beginners' Book. The text has been tried out at various times in Latin classes, and many suggestions from Latin teachers enter into the composition of the book. In the arrangement of the book the author has been assisted by

PREFACE

the teachers of Latin in the Trenton High School, in the correlation of Latin with English by J. Milnor Dorey, Head of the English Department of the same school, and in the reading and correction of proof by Howard L. Packard, Head of the Latin Department, State Normal School, Trenton, New Jersey.

CONTENTS

TOPIC	PAGE
INTRODUCTION.....	11
I. THE NOUN. FIRST DECLENSION.....	15
Rome and the Basin of the Mediterranean Sea.....	24
II. THE PREPOSITION.....	25
III. THE NOUN. SECOND DECLENSION.....	28
Rome and the Eastern Nations.....	35
IV. THE ADJECTIVE. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.....	36
V. THE VERB. FIRST CONJUGATION: ACTIVE VOICE; IN- DICATIVE MOOD.....	41
The Nations of the Ancient World.....	52
VI. THE VERB. SECOND CONJUGATION: ACTIVE VOICE; IN- DICATIVE MOOD.....	54
The Peninsula of Italy.....	62
VII. THE NOUN. THIRD DECLENSION.....	63
Latium , the Home of the Latins.....	77
VIII. THE ADJECTIVE. THIRD DECLENSION.....	78
IX. THE VERB. THIRD CONJUGATION: ACTIVE VOICE; IN- DICATIVE MOOD.....	84
The Cities of Italy.....	92
X. THE ADJECTIVE. COMPARISON.....	93
XI. THE VERB. THIRD CONJUGATION IN -io : ACTIVE VOICE; INDICATIVE MOOD.....	97
XII. THE NOUN. FOURTH DECLENSION.....	100
XIII. THE NOUN. FIFTH DECLENSION.....	102
The City of Rome.....	104
XIV. THE VERB. FOURTH CONJUGATION: ACTIVE VOICE; IN- DICATIVE MOOD.....	105
XV. THE SENTENCE. INTERROGATIVE.....	111
XVI. THE VERB Sum : INDICATIVE MOOD.....	112
XVII. THE ADVERB.....	114
XVIII. THE SENTENCE. COMPOUND. THE CONJUNCTION.....	116
XIX. THE PRONOUN.....	118
The Story of Early Rome.....	120
XX. THE VERB. FIRST CONJUGATION: PASSIVE VOICE; IN- DICATIVE MOOD.....	121
XXI. THE PRONOUN. PERSONAL.....	124
XXII. THE VERB. FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS: PASSIVE VOICE; INDICATIVE MOOD.....	126
XXIII. THE PRONOUN. REFLEXIVE.....	130

CONTENTS

TOPIC	PAGE
XXIV. THE VERB. SECOND AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS: PASSIVE VOICE; INDICATIVE MOOD.....	132
XXV. THE PRONOUN. DEMONSTRATIVE.....	135
XXVI. THE VERB. THIRD CONJUGATION: PASSIVE VOICE; INDICATIVE MOOD.....	137
The Story of Later Rome.....	138
XXVII. THE PRONOUN. DEMONSTRATIVE.....	140
XXVIII. THE VERB. THIRD CONJUGATION IN -io : PASSIVE VOICE; INDICATIVE MOOD.....	142
XXIX. THE ADJECTIVE AND PRONOUN. INTERROGATIVE.....	144
XXX. THE VERB. FOURTH CONJUGATION: PASSIVE VOICE; INDICATIVE MOOD.....	146
XXXI. THE PRONOUN. DEMONSTRATIVE.....	148
XXXII. THE VERB. FOURTH CONJUGATION: PASSIVE VOICE; INDICATIVE MOOD.....	150
The Heart of Rome.....	151
XXXIII. THE SENTENCE. COMPLEX.....	155
XXXIV. THE VERB. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: CLAUSES OF PURPOSE AND RESULT. SEQUENCE OF TENSES.....	160
The Roman Forum.....	171
XXXV. THE VERB. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: CLAUSES OF TIME. COMPOUND VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.....	173
The Principal Buildings in the Roman Forum.....	185
XXXVI. THE VERB. SUBJUNCTIVE OF Sum . CLAUSES OF CONDITION AND CAUSE. COMPOUND VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.....	186
The Uses of the Buildings in the Forum.....	197
XXXVII. THE SENTENCE. COMPLEX. CLAUSES OF CONCESSION. RELATIVE CLAUSES. COMPOUND VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.....	198
The Religion of Rome.....	210
XXXVIII. THE VERB. SUBJUNCTIVE IN EXHORTATIONS AND WISHES. IMPERATIVE. COMMANDS AND PROHIBITIONS.....	211
The Roman House.....	221
XXXIX. THE VERB. PARTICIPLE. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. INFINITIVE. COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE.....	223
Modern Conveniences in the Roman House.....	234
XL. THE VERB. GERUND AND GERUNDIVE. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS. SUPINE.....	236
The Occupations of the Romans.....	249
XLI. THE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE. INDEFINITE.....	250
XLII. THE INTERJECTION. NUMERALS.....	252
Some Tools Used by the Romans.....	258
XLIII. THE VERB. DEPONENTS. SEMI-DEPONENTS. COMPOUND VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.....	259
Skilled Workmen among the Romans.....	266

CONTENTS

TOPIC	PAGE
XLIV. THE VERB. IRREGULAR VERBS, Volō, Nōlō, Mālō, Eō, Ferō, Fiō. COMPOUNDS OF Sum	267
XLV. EXERCISES IN DERIVATIVES. SUFFIXES	275
XLVI. THE SUBJECT. CONSTRUCTIONS THAT REPLACE A NOUN AS SUBJECT. INFINITIVE. NOUN CLAUSES	278
Translation. The Creation of the World	281
XLVII. THE OBJECT IN ENGLISH EXPRESSED BY THE GENITIVE IN LATIN	281
Translation. Joseph and His Brethren	283
XLVIII. THE OBJECT IN ENGLISH EXPRESSED BY THE DATIVE IN LATIN	284
Translation. Joseph Sold into Egypt	285
XLIX. THE OBJECT IN ENGLISH EXPRESSED BY TWO ACCUSATIVES IN LATIN	286
Translation. The Birth of Moses	288
L. THE OBJECT IN ENGLISH EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE IN LATIN	289
Translation. Crossing the Red Sea	290
LI. THE OBJECT. NOUN CLAUSES	291
A. CLAUSES OF PURPOSE. The Birth of Samson	293
B. CLAUSES OF FEARING. David and Goliath	295
C. INDIRECT QUESTIONS. David and Absalom	298
D. INDIRECT STATEMENTS. The Judgment of Solomon	302
E. DEPENDENT CLAUSES IN INDIRECT STATEMENTS	307
Translation. Joshua Stops the Sun	309
LII. CAESAR. GALLIC WAR. Book I, Chapters 1-8	310
LIII. LATIN DERIVATIVES USED IN MODERN STUDIES AND BUSI- NESS	315
LIV. SYNOPSIS OF FORMS	320
LV. GENERAL VOCABULARY	i-xxxix
INDEX	xli-xliii

APPLIED LATIN

INTRODUCTION

In **Europe**, many centuries before the birth of **Christ**, there existed a language which was spoken by a nation, or better, by a group of tribes, to which belonged the ancestors of those men who later spoke the **Latin and Greek** languages. At that very early time those ancient peoples were like young children who can speak a language, but who have still to learn how to write and to read it; for the art of writing had not been invented. If men wished to communicate with distant kinsmen, they made use of pictures such as were once used by the **American Indians**. Now, later, when the **Greeks and Latins** wandered from Europe down into the lands of **Greece and Italy**, they had not yet learned to write. The **Egyptians** who dwelt along the **Nile** in northern **Africa** were probably the first to make use of letters to express sounds.

From Egypt the use of letters, carried probably by merchants, spread north first to Greece and then to Italy. The Greeks made use of the alphabet for the first time about the year 800 B. C. The Greek alphabet, strange as it looks, represents one stage of the development of letters. After 800 B. C. we may say that the human race began its rapid development. History was written, dates began to be kept, and mankind began to make permanent records of progress.

APPLIED LATIN

Not long after 800 B. C. the alphabet was introduced into Italy by way of the city of **Cumae**, a Greek colony. From this city it made its way to Rome, where a standard alphabet was developed for use in writing Latin. Today, many centuries later, in the writing of English we use the Latin alphabet, and our letters are called **Latin letters**. Consequently, as speakers and writers of English, we should feel a great interest in the **Latin alphabet**.

THE LATIN ALPHABET

Except for the letters *j* and *w*, the Latins had all the letters we use. The alphabet consisted of vowels, diphthongs (pairs of vowels), and consonants.

THE VOWELS, DIPHTHONGS, AND CONSONANTS

The vowels were *a, e, i, o, u, y*; the diphthongs *ae, au, oe, ei, eu, ui*. The consonants comprised all the other letters.

The vowels were either long (prolonged) or short (quick) in pronunciation. Letters marked thus *ā* are long.

ā equalled *a* in father;

ē equalled *e* in prey;

ī equalled *i* in machine;

ō equalled *o* in gold;

ū equalled *u* in crude;

a equalled *a* in *zhá*.

e equalled *e* in get.

i equalled *i* in hit.

o equalled *o* in obey.

u equalled *u* in full.

ae equalled *ai* in aisle;

ei equalled *ei* in eight;

oe equalled *oi* in soil;

au equalled *ou* in mouse.

eu equalled *eu* in feud.

ui almost the sound of *we*.

Of the consonants, *c* and *g* were always hard, as in *case* and *gone*. *S* was always as *s* in *yes*, never like *z*.

INTRODUCTION

I, when a consonant (before a vowel in the same syllable), was like *y* in *yet*; T was like *t* in *ten*, not like *t* in *nation*; V was like *w* in *went*. Ch had the sound of *k*.

THE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN WORDS

For accuracy in pronunciation, it is necessary to divide a Latin word into its **syllables**. There are as many syllables in a Latin word as there are vowels or diphthongs.

WHAT CONSTITUTES A SYLLABLE IN LATIN

A single consonant before a vowel is combined with the vowel to compose a **syllable**. If two or more consonants precede a vowel, the last consonant usually begins the syllable: *hos-tis*, *enemy*. A syllable may begin with two consonants if the second of the two is either *l* or *r*: *pū-bli-cus*, *public*. At the beginning of a word (*scrībō*) even three consonants may be included in a single syllable.

THE ACCENT OF LATIN WORDS

In accenting a Latin word, remember that the **accent** *never* falls on the last syllable, unless the word is composed of but one syllable. In words of two syllables the accent falls on the first syllable. In words of more than two syllables the accent falls on the next to the last syllable, if that syllable is long, otherwise on the second syllable from the last.

THE LENGTH OF SYLLABLES

Syllables are considered **long** if they contain a long vowel or a diphthong, or a short vowel followed by two consonants.

APPLIED LATIN

A short syllable followed by the double consonants $x (=ks)$ or $z (=ds)$ is also considered long.

PARTS OF SPEECH

The words of all languages are classified as follows: **nouns, pronouns, verbs, adjectives, adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, and interjections.** A single noun, verb, etc., is called a **part of speech.** The parts of speech will be taken up consecutively in this book.

SENTENCES

A **sentence** is a group of words (parts of speech) expressing a complete thought. It is composed of a **subject** (a noun with its modifiers) and a **predicate** (a verb and its modifiers). The **subject** represents that about which something is asserted. The **predicate** asserts something about that which the subject represents. Sentences are classified as **declarative, interrogative, and imperative.** A **declarative** sentence is one that declares something as a fact. "We love the balmy days of spring." An **interrogative** sentence is one that asks a question. "Who knows the name of the city?" An **imperative** sentence is one that states a command. "Look at the bright moon!" Sentences are further classified as **simple, compound, and complex.** **Simple** sentences contain but *one* subject and *one* predicate. **Compound** sentences consist of two (or more) sentences *connected by a conjunction.* **Complex** sentences consist of *one principal statement* and *one or more dependent statements.* In the first part of this book the sentences are either simple or compound.

THE NOUN

I. THE NOUN. FIRST DECLENSION

1. <i>causa</i> , a cause, reason.	<i>silva</i> , a forest.
<i>filia</i> , a daughter.	<i>via</i> , a street, road.
<i>hōra</i> , an hour.	<i>glōria</i> , glory.
<i>littera</i> , letter (of the alphabet).	<i>fāma</i> , fame, report.
<i>memoria</i> , memory, tradition.	<i>vīta</i> , life.

2. These Latin words are *naming words*, or *nouns*.

In English, nouns are classified as *proper*, *common*, *abstract*, and *collective*. **Proper nouns** are names of *particular persons or places*; John, Baltimore; **Common**, of *ordinary persons, places, or things*; book, pen; **Abstract**, of *conditions or qualities*; heat, gratitude; **Collective**, of *collections of persons or places*; crowd, multitude. In Latin there are the *same* classes.

In the following sentences repeat the Latin word whenever you see its English meaning: 1. My *daughter* walked through the *forest*. 2. The *road* takes an *hour*. 3. We all hope for an *hour* of *glory*. 4. A *cause* for *fame* may come to you during your *life*. 5. The *letter* M begins the word *memory*. 6. Where is the *road* to *fame*?

3. WORD STUDY.—A very large number of words in English with which you are now familiar, or will some day meet in your reading, are made from words of the Latin language. In the following examples try to find the Latin words from which each English word is derived, and learn to spell the English word correctly.

APPLIED LATIN

because (causa), on account of.	hour (hōra), a period of time.
via (via), by way of.	filial (filia), belonging to a child.
famous (fāma), well spoken of.	letter (littera), part of the alphabet.
vital (vīta), pertaining to life.	sylvan (silva), wooded.
glorious (glōria), full of glory.	memorial (memoria), that which refreshes the memory.

4. EXAMPLES OF THE PROPER USE OF THESE WORDS.—1. The monument was a memorial to a famous man. 2. We love sylvan scenery. 3. Let us go *via* Washington Street. 4. Heroic deeds are often glorious because of their vital importance in warding off disaster. 5. Filial love is a child's affection for its parents.

Form some other words, using the same Latin roots; as, viaduct, infamous, immemorial, literature. If unfamiliar, look up their meanings and talk them over in class.

NOTE.—As there is no word in Latin for *a* or *the*, **causa** may mean *a cause* or *the cause*.

QUIZ.—Of what part of speech are the Latin words given above? How is English closely connected with Latin?

5. amīcitia, <i>friendship</i> .	grātia, <i>favor, gratitude</i> .
cōpia, <i>plenty, abundance</i> .	iniūria, <i>an injury, injustice</i> .
fortūna, <i>fortune</i> .	inopia, <i>lack, scarcity</i> .
fossa, <i>a ditch, trench</i> .	nātūra, <i>nature, character</i> .
fuga, <i>a flight, retreat</i> .	poena, <i>a penalty</i> .

These nouns are like those of Paragraph 1. Have you noticed that these nouns all end in the letter **a**?

In the following sentences repeat the Latin word whenever you see its English meaning: 1. True *friendship* does not permit the *injury* of a *friend*. 2. Give *thanks* for good

THE NOUN

fortune. 3. *Fortune* is *naturally* fickle and uncertain. 4. *Abundance* and *need* are opposites. 5. Severe is the *penalty* following *flight* from battle.

6. WORD STUDY.—

natural (*nātūra*), according to nature.

injurious (*iniūria*), causing some damage.

gratitude (*grātia*), the feeling of thankfulness for help.

unfortunate (*fortūna*), not accompanied by good fortune.

copious (*cōpia*), full, abundant.

fugitive (*fuga*), one who flees.

cornucopia (*cōpia*), a horn of plenty used at Christmas.

fossil (*fossa*), an animal or plant of the past found imbedded in a cave or trench.

7. EXAMPLES OF THE PROPER USE OF THESE WORDS.—

1. Unfortunate are the people whose hearts are never filled with gratitude. 2. Let us penalize those who break the laws. 3. It is natural for copious rain to follow heavy clouds. 4. At Christmas we hang cornucopias full of candy on the tree. 5. Miners sometimes find fossil flowers in beds of coal. 6. The fugitive citizens fled before the approach of the enemy.

QUIZ.—How are the words of Paragraph 5 related to those of Paragraph 1? What other English derivatives can you add to those given above?

Porta, a gate, feminine gender

CASES	SINGULAR NUMBER	PLURAL NUMBER
8. <i>Nominative</i>	<i>porta</i> , a gate	<i>portae</i> , gates
<i>Genitive</i>	<i>portae</i> , of a gate	<i>portārum</i> , of gates
<i>Dative</i>	<i>portae</i> , to or for a gate	<i>portis</i> , to or for gates
<i>Accusative</i>	<i>portam</i> , a gate	<i>portās</i> , gates
<i>Vocative</i>	<i>porta</i> , (O) gate	<i>portae</i> , (O) gates
<i>Ablative</i>	<i>portā</i> , with, from, in, by a gate	<i>portis</i> , with, from, in, by gates

Meaning of the terms used with nouns:

9. DECLENSION.—*The forms of a noun grouped according to cases.* The **cases** of a Latin noun are indicated by the changes in the spelling of the final syllable. **Porta**, then, having many cases, has many different spellings, all of which are correct. An English noun *rarely* changes in spelling, for English no longer has an elaborate system of declensions. The addition of **s** to show (1) possession; as, *the cat's*; (2) a plural number; as, *the cats*, is the only common change in spelling of a noun permitted in English. The *beginning* of the Latin word should bring the English meaning at once to your mind. Having mastered the meaning once for all, then devote yourself to the *final syllables*. In the reading of English, your eye passes over final syllables without special attention; in Latin, these syllables are the most important part of the word. In the declension above, the final syllables or **endings** are printed in black type.

First declension nouns are declined like **porta**, and regularly end in **a** in the nominative singular. Learn to decline **porta**.

10. NUMBER.—Latin words have *two numbers* (singular and plural). The forms in the first column above compose the singular number, and are to be used when only one person, place, or thing is spoken of. The forms in the second column compose the plural number, and are to be used only when two or more persons, etc., are spoken of.

11. GENDER.—*The sex of a person, place, or thing is called gender.* There are *three* genders in Latin: *masculine, m.*,

THE NOUN

applied to nouns that designate males, rivers, winds, and months; *feminine*, f., applied to nouns that designate females, countries, trees, and towns; *neuter*, n., applied to nouns that are neither masculine nor feminine in gender.

In English gender presents *little difficulty*, for nouns denoting males are masculine; females, feminine; things, neuter.

12. Nouns of the *first declension* are regularly *feminine* in gender. Three masculine exceptions: **agricola**, -ae, a farmer; **nauta**, -ae, a sailor; **poëta**, -ae, a poet.

QUIZ.—What is the importance of the *first part* of a Latin word? Why is the final syllable difficult for us to master? What is number? Gender? Do you know any English words which are peculiar in gender? Is *ship* masculine, feminine, or neuter in English? Can you name some English words that are both masculine and feminine in gender?

13. audācia, -ae, boldness, f.	cūra, -ae, care, f.
ancora, -ae, an anchor, f.	diligentia, -ae, diligence, f.
aqua, -ae, water, f.	familia, -ae, family, retinue, f.
corōna, -ae, a crown, f.	disciplina, -ae, training, f.
cūstōdia, -ae, custody, f.	fēmina, -ae, a woman, f.

14. THE NAMES AND USES OF THE CASES.—The **Nominative** is the case of the *subject* (person, place, or thing about which we, as speakers or writers, make some assertion). The **Genitive** case usually indicates *possession*. The **Dative** is the case of the *indirect object* of the verb. The **Accusative** is the case of the *direct object* of the verb (the person, place, or thing *directly* affected by the action of the verb). The **Voca-**

tive is the case of *direct address* (O John! O Mary!). The **Ablative** case has *several uses*. It may mean the person *with whom* or the thing *with which* something is done; the place *in which* something is situated or *from which* something is taken.

In English, there are but *three cases*: *nominative*, *objective*, and *possessive*. The latest English grammars now *use the Latin names* for these cases.

15. EXAMPLES OF THE USE OF CASES.—1. I have Henry's (*genitive, possessive*) book, John (*vocative*). 2. Sarah (*nominative*) gave the doll (*accusative, objective*) to Mary (*dative*). 3. From the window (*ablative*) in the parlor (*ablative*) we saw Mabel (*accusative, objective*) walking with Jane (*ablative*). 4. James struck the dog (*accusative, objective*) with a stick (*ablative*).

16. Name all possible cases and give accurate translations of these forms: 1. Nātūrā, grātiās, vīta. 2. Fīliam, inopiā, fāmam. 3. Porta, ancorae, iniūriās. 4. Silvās, memoriae, fēminās. 5. Fortūnae, hōrārū, litterā. 6. Corōnīs, fossae, causārū, viīs, aquae.

17. WORD STUDY.—**Corōna** gives us the words crown, coronet, cornice; **cūstōdia**, custody, custodian; **aqua**, aquatic, aqueous, aqua-pura; **cūra**, care, accurate, curative, curator; **fēmina**, feminine, effeminate, feminism; **ancora**, anchor; **familia**, familiar; **disciplīna**, discipline; **audācia**, audacious.

NOTE.—The plural of **cōpia** means *troops* or *forces*. The dative and ablative plural of **fīlia** is **fīliābus**.

QUIZ.—How many cases are there in Latin? In English? What are their uses? Explain the words in Paragraph 17.

THE NOUN

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>18. fōrma, -ae, <i>form</i>, f.
 lingua, -ae, <i>the tongue</i>, f.
 fābula, -ae, <i>a story</i>, f.
 terra, -ae, <i>land or earth</i>, f.
 turba, -ae, <i>a crowd</i>, f.</p> | <p>scientia, -ae, <i>science, knowledge</i>, f.
 sagitta, -ae, <i>an arrow</i>, f.
 tabula, -ae, <i>a flat surface, tablet</i>, f.
 prōvincia, -ae, <i>a district, province</i>, f.
 pūgna, -ae, <i>a fight, battle</i>, f.</p> |
|--|--|

Learn these nouns.

19. In the declension of nouns *certain cases are spelled with the same letters*; take, for instance, the *genitive* and *dative* of **porta**. If taken by itself, there is no means of determining whether **portae** is *genitive* or *dative*, singular, or *nominative*, plural. Keep this fact in mind and always try to *recall all possible cases*. In translation, above all, be **flexible**. Do not confine yourself invariably to a single case or a single translation. *Try all possible cases until you have the one that fits the construction of the sentence.*

20. Name all possible cases and give accurate translations of these forms: 1. Fōrmā, fossās, silvae. 2. Fēminam, tabulīs, vītam. 3. Disciplinārum, fābulae, causārum. 4. Turbās, poētae, memoriā. 5. Scientiae, audāciam, hōrīs. 6. Corōnā, cōpiam, poenās. 7. Ancorae, inopia, pūgnā. 8. Diligentiam, fāmā, nātūrā. 9. Familia, prōvinciīs, fōrmārum. 10. Cūstōdiae, fābulīs, sagittīs. 11. Linguās, glōria, iniūriā. 12. Terrae, turbārum, scientiā.

21. WORD STUDY.—Explain the meaning of these sentences, using the Latin nouns of this lesson: 1. George Ade wrote fables in slang. 2. Sagittarius is a figure of the Zodiac. 3. Linguistics is the study of words. 4. There are subterranean chambers in the Mammoth Cave. 5. Empires are

APPLIED LATIN

composed of provinces. 6. A poet sometimes uses provincial language for effect. 7. Let us tabulate all the forms and leave them undisturbed. 8. Pugilists are noted for their pugnacity.

Are these words familiar: formation, poesy, turbulent, tablet, impugn, fabulous, language, terrain, prescient, inform, terrestrial?

Use these new words in sentences of your own composition.

QUIZ.—Why must the student of Latin be flexible in the translation of cases?

REVIEW

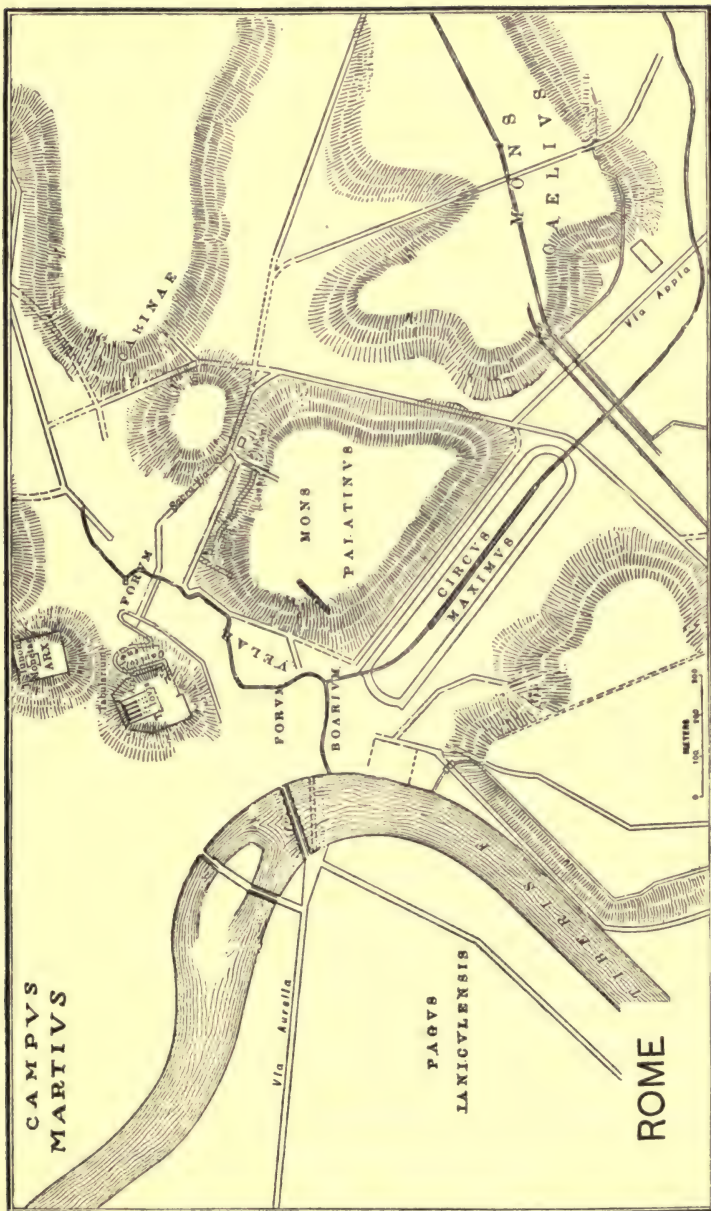
22. Give the Latin for the following English words, passing around in columns in different directions:

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>a</i>	poet,	boldness,	memory,	tablet,	anchor.
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>of a</i>	life,	daughter,	crown,	forest,	penalty.
<i>Dat.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{to or} \\ \text{for a} \end{array} \right.$	cause,	earth,	custody,	gate,	glory.
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>a</i>	ditch,	water,	hour,	street,	battle.
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>(O)</i>	fortune,	tongue,	letter,	training,	care.
<i>Abl.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{with,} \\ \text{etc.} \end{array} \right.$	fame,	plenty,	lack,	flight,	favor.

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>		crowns,	provinces,	arrows,	injuries,	sailors.
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>of</i>	gates,	battles,	favours,	daughters,	cares.
<i>Dat.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{to or} \\ \text{for} \end{array} \right.$	lands,	farmers,	sciences,	anchors,	streets.
<i>Acc.</i>		lives,	families,	women,	poets,	penalties.
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>(O)</i>	forms,	ditches,	tongues,	natures,	glories.
<i>Abl.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{with,} \\ \text{etc.} \end{array} \right.$	cares,	tablets,	flights,	hours,	stories.



23. REVIEW OF ENGLISH DERIVATIVES.—Because, via, famous, vital, glorious, hour, filial, letter, sylvan, memorial, viaduct, infamous, immemorial, literature. Natural, injurious, gratitude, unfortunate, copious, fugitive, cornucopia, fossil. Crown, coronet, cornice; custody, custodian. Aquatic, aqueous, aqua-pura, care, accurate. Curative, curator, feminine, effeminate, feminism. Anchor, familiar, discipline, audacious. Fable, Sagittarius, linguistics, subterranean, provincial. Language, tabulate, undisturbed, pugnacity. Formation, poesy, turbulent, tablet, impugn, language, terrain, prescient, inform, terrestrial.

Make a list of the other derivatives which you have discussed in class.

ROME AND THE BASIN OF THE MEDITERRANEAN SEA

The map on page 23 presents to you all of **Europe**, a portion of **Africa**, and a small part of **Asia**. These lands comprise the **basin of the Mediterranean Sea**, in which all that was important in ancient civilization reached the highest point of development. In this area two nations were rivals for supremacy. The **Greeks** and the **Romans** came down from the interior of **Europe**, found homes in the **Italian** and **Greek** peninsulas, and became the leading nations of the **East** and **West** respectively. The **Greeks**, first by colonization, then by conquest under the leadership of **Alexander the Great**, gained possession of the **East**. Then Greek merchants carried the language and ideals of the **Greeks** all over the Mediterranean basin. While the **Romans** were still

THE PREPOSITION

a small nation centred at **Rome** (**Rōma**), and the Latin language was confined to very narrow limits, **Greek** was the *common language* of the ancient world.

If you will examine the map carefully, you will see that the city of Rome is at the centre of the ancient world. This position was of immense importance to the Romans, for it enabled them to extend their dominion from a common center, marching in one direction after another. The history of Rome is the story of the constant and irrepressible growth of a war-like people. At first the Romans had to overcome the hostile tribes that surrounded Rome; next, they came into conflict with the **Etruscans** who dwelt in the northern part of **Italy** (**Ītalia**). Then came the vital struggle with the great naval empire of **Carthage** (**Carthāgō**), which controlled the coast of **Āfrica**, the island of **Sicily** (**Sicilia**), and a part of **Spain** (**Hispania**). By constant successes in these wars the Romans gained control of the Western half of the ancient world.

II. THE PREPOSITION

24. The young Romans were confronted by much the same problems in the study of Latin as we are today in the study of English. They did not speak Latin without *careful training*, nor read it without finding many difficulties. For instance, in reading, the cases spelled with exactly the same letters were very hard for the ordinary Roman boy to translate. Some cases, like the ablative, had more than one possible translation. To smooth out these difficulties, the

APPLIED LATIN

Romans made use of a *number of small words* called **prepositions**. For example, the form **glōria**, by itself, might be *nominative* or *ablative*, but if the word **ab** stood before it, the case was *surely ablative*, for this preposition was *never used* with any other case. Thus, the prepositions made reading *very accurate*, and *much easier*. Think for a moment of the four translations of the ablative, and you will realize what a help these words were.

25. Prepositions used *only with the accusative*: **Ad**, *to*; **ante**, *before*; **apud**, *at or near*; **circum**, *around*; **contrā**, *against*; **extrā**, *outside*; **inter**, *between or among*; **ob**, *on account of*; **per**, *through*; **post**, *after*; **praeter**, *except or beyond*; **propter**, *because of*; **trāns**, *across*.

26. Prepositions used *only with the ablative*: **Ab** (**ā**), *away from, or by*; **cum**, *with*; **dē**, *concerning, or down from*; **ex** (**ē**), *out of or from*; **prō**, *in front of, or before*; **sine**, *without*.

27. Prepositions used with the *accusative, sometimes with the ablative*: **In**, *in, or into*; **sub**, *under*; **super**, *above*.

Let these prepositions identify the cases for you.

28. In English we use prepositions with *very great frequency*, for our words are no longer declined, and we have *no other means* of determining the cases. The meanings of the Latin prepositions will furnish you with the most common prepositions in English. Learn them carefully and try to recognize them in English sentences.

NOTE.—Use **ā** and **ē** before words beginning with a consonant.

QUIZ.—What are prepositions? Their uses? Are there

THE PREPOSITION

prepositions in English? Were English words ever declined? Why are prepositions important in English?

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>29. <i>insula</i>, -ae, <i>island</i>, f.
 <i>pecūnia</i>, -ae, <i>money</i>, f.
 <i>praeda</i>, -ae, <i>booty</i>, f.
 <i>invidia</i>, -ae, <i>envy, jealousy</i>, f.
 <i>anima</i>, -ae, <i>the breath, soul</i>, f.</p> | <p><i>flamma</i>, -ae, <i>flame</i>, f.
 <i>victōria</i>, -ae, <i>victory</i>, f.
 <i>vigilia</i>, -ae, <i>watch (during night)</i>, f.
 <i>ira</i>, -ae, <i>anger, rage</i>, f.
 <i>rosa</i>, -ae, <i>a rose</i>, f.</p> |
|---|---|

30. Translate these sentences, noting the use of the prepositions and the cases which follow them:

1. We advanced **ad fossam**. 2. They left **ante fugam**. 3. He lived **apud Galbam** (Latin proper name, Galba). 4. They ran **circum filiā**. 5. We stood **extrā pūgnam**. 6. She sat **inter rosās**. 7. Did you travel **per prōvinciam**? 8. We had no weapons **praeter sagittās**. 9. They left us **propter iram**. 10. Throw the stone **trāns viam**. 11. He started **ā portā**. 12. We leaped **dē insulā** into the sea. 13. They rose **ex aquā**. 14. The messenger stood **prō portā**. 15. He came **sine pecūniā**. 16. Let us march **in prōvinciam**. 17. We dwell **in insulā**. 18. The booty lay **sub portā**. 19. The clouds hang **super terram**. 20. They left us **ob invidiam**.

31. WORD STUDY.—

- peninsula (*insula*), land which is almost an island.
- pecuniary (*pecūnia*), relating to money.
- predatory (*praeda*), devoted to the pursuit of booty.
- envy (*invidia*), a feeling of dislike or hatred.
- animal (*anima*), something possessing the breath of life.
- inflammation (*flamma*), cause to break into flame.
- vigilant (*vigilia*), watchful.
- irate (*ira*), angry.
- rosy (*rosa*), having the color of roses.

32. EXAMPLES OF THE USE OF THESE WORDS.—1. A peninsula is land partly surrounded by water. 2. Thieves

are said to follow a predatory business. 3. Great success often inspires envy among men. 4. Man is the highest of the animals. 5. Let not wrath inflame you. 6. Be vigilant, and success is inevitable. 7. The sky is rosy just at sunrise.

Can you guess the Latin words from which come: animation, isle, impecunious, flagrant, victorious, vigil, rosary, insulate, conflagration?

Learn to spell these words and to use them in sentences.

III. THE NOUN. SECOND DECLENSION

33. <i>amicus</i> , a friend, m.	<i>nūntius</i> , a messenger, m.
<i>captivus</i> , a captive, m.	<i>populus</i> , a people, m.
<i>equus</i> , a horse, m.	<i>socius</i> , an ally, m.
<i>lēgātus</i> , an envoy, lieutenant, m.	<i>vīcus</i> , a village, m.
<i>mūrus</i> , a wall, m.	<i>servus</i> , a slave, servant, m.
<i>numerus</i> , a number, m.	<i>campus</i> , a field, m.
<i>filius</i> , a son, m.	<i>ventus</i> , a wind, m.

34. These nouns are *unlike* those you have already learned in that they end not in *-a* but in *-us*. Such nouns belong to the *second declension*, and are regularly *masculine* in gender.

Learn these words by replacing the English words by the Latin equivalent in these sentences: 1. The *captive* had a *son*. 2. A *friend* of the *people*. 3. The *wind* swept across the *field*. 4. The *messenger* was a *lieutenant*. 5. The *slave* saw a *number* of *horses*. 6. Our *allies* dwell here.

35. WORD STUDY.—What do these words mean: capture, enumerate, servile, popular, mural, equestrian, announce, sociable, vent, campus, numerical, ventilator, captivity, inimical, legation, depopulate, servitude?

THE NOUN

36. THE MEANING OF COMPOUND ENGLISH WORDS.—Many compound words are formed by *placing a preposition before one of the parts of speech* (verbs, adjectives, etc.). The prefix **ab** (**ā**) means away (abstain). **Ab** often appears as *a-, abs-, as-*. **Ad** means to (admit). **Ad** often appears as *ac-, ag-, al-, ap-, ar-, as-, at-*. **Ante** means before (anteroom). **Circum** means around (circumstance). **Cum** means together (confer). **Cum** often appears as *com-, co-, col-, cor-*.

37. EXAMPLES OF SUCH COMPOUNDS.—Accurate, aggressive, allude, appear, arrest, assume, competence, coöperate, correct, colloquial.

Pick out similar compound words in any English book you are using. You must be sharp in separating the preposition from the word, so that you may pick out the Latin root words. This simple scheme will *save you from a constant use* of the English dictionary.

QUIZ.—What declension is given above? How is it recognized? How are masculines of this declension determined?

If a number of English words were handed to you with the request that you explain them, in what way could you do so without looking for them in the English dictionary? What new power, then, will the study of Latin give you?

38. aedificium, a building, n.

auxilium, aid, help, n.

bellum, war, n.

frumentum, grain, n.

impedimentum, a hindrance, n.

imperium, supreme command, n.

initium, a beginning, n.

oppidum, a walled tower, n.

periculum, danger, n.

praesidium, a garrison, n.

proelium, a battle, n.

règnum, a kingdom, n.

signum, a sign, standard, n.

spatium, a space, distance, n.

APPLIED LATIN

Nouns ending in **-um** belong to the *second declension* and are regularly *neuter* in gender. Their gender is *easily* determined by the final syllable, in **-um**.

39. WORD STUDY.—Pick out the Latin derivatives in these sentences: 1. The massive edifice burned during the night. 2. The militia should furnish auxiliaries in time of war. 3. When are nations belligerent? 4. Let no one impede our progress. 5. A huge flag fluttered above the imperial tent. 6. What are your initials? 7. An interregnum followed the death of the king. 8. The space of one hour intervened.

40. In compound English words **Dē** means *down or thoroughly* (despise, destroy). **Ex** (**ē**) means *out* (evade). **Ex** often appears as *ef-*. **In** means *in, on, against* (invade). **In** often appears as *im-, ir-, il-*. **Inter** means *between, in pieces* (interest, interrupt). **Ob** means *toward, to meet* (offer). **Ob** often appears as *oc-, of-, op-, obs-, o-*. **Sub** means *under* (subway). **Sub** often appears as *suc-, suf-, sug-, sup-, sur-*. **Super** means *upon, over, above* (supersede).

41. EXAMPLES OF COMPOUNDS.—Deter, determine, event, effort, immense, irreverent, illusion, occur, offering, opposite, obsolete, omit, submarine, superintendent, success, suffer, suggest, suppose, surreptitious.

Pick out similar compound words in your English reader.

QUIZ.—What new nouns are considered above? How can you tell the gender of these nouns? How do prepositions help you to reach the meaning of English words?

THE NOUN

Annus, a year, m.

CASES	SINGULAR	PLURAL
42. <i>Nom.</i>	<i>annus, a year</i>	<i>annī, years</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>annī, of a year</i>	<i>annōrum, of years</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>annō, to or for a year</i>	<i>annis, to or for years</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>annum, a year</i>	<i>annōs, years</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>anne, (O) year</i>	<i>annī, (O) years</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>annō, with, from, in, by a year</i>	<i>annis, with, from, in, or by years</i>

Dōnum, a gift, n.

CASES	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>dōnum, a gift</i>	<i>dōna, gifts</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>dōnī, of a gift</i>	<i>dōnōrum, of gifts</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>dōnō, to or for a gift</i>	<i>dōnīs, to or for gifts</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>dōnum, a gift</i>	<i>dōna, gifts</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>dōnum, (O) gift</i>	<i>dōna, (O) gifts</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>dōnō, with, from, in, or by a gift</i>	<i>dōnīs, with, from, in, or by gifts</i>

43. Learn these standard nouns. For practice decline the words given in Paragraphs 33 and 38. By comparison note *in just what cases the masculine and neuter nouns differ*. Remember that *in all neuter words the nominative, accusative, and vocative cases are alike in each number respectively*.

44. The **vocative** case in this declension is important. *In masculine nouns of the second declension the vocative singular ends in -e. In all other declensions the vocative is the same in form as the nominative in both singular and plural numbers.*

45. Translate the following forms, giving all possible cases:
 1. Amīcī, oppida, ad oppida. 2. Campōrum, sīgnī, ventīs, in ventīs. 3. Captīvum, initiīs, extrā mūrōs. 4. Lēgātōrum, servī, auxilia. 5. Frūmentō, spatiīs, praesidiō, sine praesidiō. 6. Proelium, propter proelium, equō, cum equō. 7. Sociōrum,

APPLIED LATIN

inter sociōs, sine sociīs. 8. Numerō, cum nūntiō, bella.
9. Post aedificium, contrā imperium, inter perīcula. 10.
Extrā rēgnum, vīcōrum, ex populō, filium, impedīmenta.

46. Three irregular nouns of the second declension.

SINGULAR			
<i>Nom.</i>	puer, <i>a boy</i> , m.	vir, <i>a man</i> , m.	ager, <i>a field</i> , m.
<i>Gen.</i>	puerī	virī	agrī
<i>Dat.</i>	puerō	virō	agrō
<i>Acc.</i>	puerum	virum	agrum
<i>Voc.</i>	puer	vir	ager
<i>Abl.</i>	puerō	virō	agrō
PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	puerī, <i>boys</i>	virī, <i>men</i>	agrī, <i>fields</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	puerōrum	virōrum	agrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	puerīs	virīs	agrīs
<i>Acc.</i>	puerōs	virōs	agrōs
<i>Voc.</i>	puerī	virī	agrī
<i>Abl.</i>	puerīs	virīs	agrīs

Only the nominative singular cases of these nouns are irregular. The original endings in **-us** (as **puer-us**) were dropped.

QUIZ.—What special rule applies to all neuter words?
What is to be remembered about the Vocative case?

47. Like **annus** and **dōnum** decline:

animus , -ī, <i>spirit, courage</i> , m.	rēmus , -ī, <i>an oar</i> , m.
gladius , -ī, <i>a sword</i> , m. (1)	locus , -ī, <i>a place</i> , m. (3)
somnus , -ī, <i>sleep</i> , m.	deus , -ī, <i>a god</i> , m. (4)
modus , -ī, <i>a measure, limit, way, method</i> , m.	lūdus , <i>a game</i> , m.
scūtum , -ī, <i>a shield</i> , n.	templum , -ī, <i>a temple</i> , n.
supplicium , -ī, <i>punishment</i> , n. (2)	astrum , -ī, <i>a star</i> , n.
tēlum , -ī, <i>a weapon, spear</i> , n.	fātum , -ī, <i>fate</i> , n.
vāllum , -ī, <i>a wall</i> , n.	vīnum , -ī, <i>wine</i> , n.
ingenium , -ī, <i>ability, talent</i> , n.	castra , -ōrum, <i>a military camp</i> , n., used only in the plural.

NOTES.—1. Nouns ending in **-ius** form the genitive and vocative singular in **-ī** instead of **-ii** and **-ie** respectively. 2. Nouns in **-ium** form the genitive singular in **-ī** as well as **-iī** (**suppli'cī**). 3. **Locus** may be masculine or neuter (**locī, loca**) in the plural. **Loca** means places, **locī**, topics in books. 4. The vocative singular of **deus** is like the nominative. The nominative plural is also written **dī**; the dative and ablative plural, **dīs**.

48. WORD STUDY.—Learn the meaning and correct spelling of these derivatives. From **animus**, animosity, animus; **locus**, locate, local, locality, location, locomotive; **somnus**, insomnia, somnambulism; **rēmus**, trireme; **modus**, mode, model, moderate, modest; **gladius**, gladiolus, gladiator; **castra**, Chester, Winchester; **lūdus**, delude, allude, illusion, ludicrous; **vāllum**, circumvallate; **ingenium**, ingenious, genius; **templum**, templar, temple; **astrum**, astrology, aster; **fātum**, fate, fatal; **vīnum**, wine, vintage, vineyard, vinegar.

49. EXAMPLES OF THE USE OF THESE WORDS.—1. Between the two Senators there was a feeling of animosity. 2. A victim of somnambulism died of exposure to the cold. 3. Strong coffee may produce insomnia. 4. The Greeks used triremes in war. 5. Stylish clothes are said to be in the mode. 6. The gladiolus is an old-fashioned flower. 7. Names of cities in England that end in Chester mark the sites of Roman **castra**. 8. The town was circumvallated by a wall. 9. Of all inventors Edison is perhaps the most ingenious. 10. The most famous vintages come from the vineyards of France.

APPLIED LATIN

REVIEW

50. Give the Latin for the following English words, passing around in columns in different directions:

SINGULAR NUMBER					
<i>Nom. a</i>	friend,	gift,	danger,	command,	help.
<i>Gen. of a</i>	captive,	ally,	grain,	building,	punishment.
<i>Dat. to or for a</i>	boy	garrison,	horse,	sleep,	servant.
<i>Acc. a</i>	battle,	wind,	breath,	people,	year.
<i>Voc. (O)</i>	field,	kingdom,	place,	sword,	wall.
<i>Abl. with a, etc.</i>	number,	man,	standard,	messenger,	weapon.
PLURAL NUMBER					
<i>Nom.</i>	years,	sons,	measures,	spaces,	shields.
<i>Gen. of</i>	wines,	gifts,	messengers,	games,	beginnings.
<i>Dat. to or for</i>	walled towns,	talents,	envoys,	horses,	weapons.
<i>Acc.</i>	fields,	buildings,	kingdoms,	men,	allies.
<i>Voc. (O)</i>	villages,	hindrances,	walls,	stars,	dangers.
<i>Abl. with, etc.</i>	wars,	servants,	temples,	commands,	fates.

51. Review the English derivatives of second declension nouns.

52. Translate the following:

LATIN TO ENGLISH		ENGLISH TO LATIN	
1. Puerī.	Ad agrum.	1. Methods.	
2. Cum animō.	Prō castrīs.	2. On account of fate.	
3. Sine rēmīs.	Ab oppidō.	3. Of swords.	
4. Ante lūdum.	Post bellum.	4. In the fields.	
5. Scūtōrum.	Extrā pugnam.	5. Around the men.	
6. Ingēnī.	Contrā sociōs.	6. Without sleep.	
7. Ad astra.	Per lēgātōs.	7. Among the gods.	
8. Ē castrīs.	Propter nātūrā.	8. Wines.	
9. Dē vāllō.	Ob iniūriam.	9. With punishment.	
10. In templīs.	Cum ancorā.	10. Across the place.	

ROME AND THE EASTERN NATIONS

ROME AND THE EASTERN NATIONS

Look at the map once more.* East of **Italy** lay the Empire of **Alexander the Great**, extending from **Greece** to **India** and south to the ends of **Egypt** (**Aegyptus**). This empire broke up after **Alexander's** death into a number of strong kingdoms governed by the descendants of Alexander's generals. The Romans first defeated **Pyrrhus**, one of Alexander's generals who had invaded Italy; then carried the war to **Greece**, which soon fell into their power. **Asia Minor** and **Egypt** were added to the Roman power by successful wars, and thus all the **East** came under the control of **Rome**.

For centuries these lands enjoyed a period of peace, during which the language, customs, and above all, the splendid governmental system of the Romans spread all over this area. Around the frontiers stood the famous Roman army, repelling all attacks. When, finally, the power of Rome was overthrown, the Latin customs and language had become so much a part of the traditions of the subject nations, especially in the West, that they never lost hold. These nations continued to use the **Latin language**, to follow the **Roman style of living**, and to adapt the **Roman system of government** to their own needs.

The Latin languages of modern times are **Italian**, **French**, **Spanish**, and **Portuguese**. Beyond the bounds of Europe, Latin languages are spoken in the southwest portion of the **United States**, in **Mexico**, **Central America**, and throughout **South America**.

* Cf. page 23.

APPLIED LATIN

Many Latin words were added to the **English** language through the **French** language when the **Normans**, under **William the Conqueror**, subdued **England**. The Normans made French, a branch of Latin, the court language of England. In the centuries that followed, many more French (Latin) words were taken over by the English. When English became again the court language, the French (Latin) words were kept. A knowledge of Latin is therefore a *splendid assistance* to the study of most modern languages, and especially to the study of **English**.

IV. THE ADJECTIVE. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

53. altus,	alta,	altum,	<i>high or deep.</i>
annuus,	annua,	annuum,	<i>yearly.</i>
bonus,	bona,	bonum,	<i>good.</i>
cōpiōsus,	cōpiōsa,	cōpiōsum,	<i>abundant.</i>
longus,	longa,	longum,	<i>long.</i>
amplus,	ampla,	amplum,	<i>extensive.</i>
certus,	certa,	certum,	<i>certain, appointed.</i>
novus,	nova,	novum,	<i>new or strange.</i>

54. The words above are **adjectives**. We take up adjectives now because they are *closely associated with nouns and resemble them in declension*. Adjectives add some fact, such as a *condition*, or a *quality*, to nouns, and regularly stand just before or just after the nouns they qualify. Because of this close association with nouns, adjectives came to be declined like nouns. In the English language, as in Latin, adjectives are used to qualify the meanings of nouns. They call attention to *size, color, shape, quality*, etc.

THE ADJECTIVE

55. **Lātus, lāta, lātum**, wide.

Memorize this standard adjective. Notice that **lātus** uses the endings of the first and second declensions.

	SINGULAR				PLURAL		
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	lātus	lāta	lātum	lāti	lātae	lāta	
<i>Gen.</i>	lāti	lātae	lāti	lātōrum	lātārum	lātōrum	
<i>Dat.</i>	lātō	lātae	lātō	lātīs	lātīs	lātīs	
<i>Acc.</i>	lātum	lātam	lātum	lātōs	lātās	lāta	
<i>Voc.</i>	lāte	lāta	lātum	lāti	lātae	lāta	
<i>Abl.</i>	lātō	lātā	lātō	lātīs	lātīs	lātīs	

56. WORD STUDY.—Many English words are derived from Latin adjectives. From **altus**, altitude; **annuus**, annual, perennial, triennial, biennial, millennium; **bonus**, bonbon, bounty, bonus; **cōpiōsus**, copious; **longus**, long, longitude, length, elongate, prolong; **amplus**, ample, amplitude, amplify; **certus**, certain, certitude, ascertain, certificate; **novus**, novel, new, novelty, renovate, novice; **lātus**, latitude, dilate.

QUIZ.—What are adjectives? How are they used? What about the use of adjectives in English?

57. Like **lātus**, decline the following adjectives:

aequus , -a, -um, <i>equal, level.</i>	grātus , -a, -um, <i>acceptable, pleasing.</i>
aeternus , -a, -um, <i>eternal.</i>	māgnus , -a, -um, <i>great.</i>
antiquus , -a, -um, <i>ancient.</i>	malus , -a, -um, <i>bad.</i>
barbarus , -a, -um, <i>savage, foreign.</i>	multus , -a, -um, <i>much, great.</i>
clārus , -a, -um, <i>clear, famous.</i>	dubius , -a, -um, <i>doubtful, uncertain.</i>
dēnsus , -a, -um, <i>dense, thick.</i>	pavrus , -a, -um, <i>small.</i>
falsus , -a, -um, <i>false.</i>	
firmus , -a, -um, <i>firm, strong.</i>	

58. Decline in the singular and plural: **hōra longa, vīcus**

antīquus, dēnsa silva, supplicium barbarum, equus novus, ancora māgna, falsus modus. Be sure that *the form of the adjective corresponds in gender, number, and case, to the form of the noun qualified.*

59. RULE.—Agreement of Adjectives.—*Adjectives must agree with the nouns they qualify in gender, number, and case.*

60. Translate the following expressions: Note all possible cases. 1. Viae lātae, servō bonō, fāmam amplam, populō antīquō, causā dubiā. 2. Imperī māgnī, hōrārū longārū, lēgātōrū bonōrū, oppidī clārī. 3. Filiō grātō, sociīs novīs, vītam cōpiōsam, rēgna mala, vīcōs barbarōs.

61. WORD STUDY.—Pick out the Latin derivatives: 1. There is perennial snow in the higher altitudes of the Alps. 2. We received a bonus for extra work. 3. The sun is directly over a meridian of longitude at noontime. 4. We were surprised at the magnificent tribute to our army. 5. Admiral Peary explored new latitudes near the North Pole. 6. Take ample space for problems in multiplication. 7. We consider ancient games mere antics. 8. On a certain day the malefactor was sentenced. 9. Equatorial storms are particularly severe. 10. Above a dense fog the sun shines as clear as ever. 11. The aëroplane lost its equilibrium. 12. We should doubt false reports. 13. Let us never equivocate. 14. What is the difference between equity and inequity? 15. Our opinion was confirmed by reading the novel. 16. Many people expected the Millennium to occur during the last century.

QUIZ.—What rule governs the agreement of adjectives and nouns? You have had some nouns, such as *agricola*,

THE ADJECTIVE

which are masculine in gender, though they appear to be feminine. What should be the gender of the adjective modifying such nouns?

62. These **adjectives** are formed from Latin nouns already given:

accūrātus, -a, -um, *accurate, careful.*

bellicōsus, -a, -um, *warlike.*

cūriōsus, -a, -um, *curious, meddling.*

fortūnātus, -a, -um, *fortunate.*

frūmentārius, -a, -um, *pertaining to grain.*

fugitivus, -a, -um, *fugitive.*

īrātus, -a, -um, *angry.*

inimīcus, -a, -um, *hostile.*

inivius, -a, -um, *pathless.*

pūblicus, -a, -um, *public, common.*

vīcīnus, -a, -um, *neighboring.*

63. Translate these expressions: 1. Ad mūrōs altōs, scientiā accūrātā, ante portās māgnās. 2. Trāns imperium antīquum, praesidium certum, apud falsum amīcum. 3. Sine vigiliā aeternā, rosa annua, dē mūrīs vīcīnīs. 4. Propter fāmam māgnam, ex proeliō aequō, locus pūblicus. 5. Praeter bonōs amīcōs, super silvā inviā, ā bellō dubiō. 6. Sub astrīs novīs, fāmā fugitivā, in campō lātō. 7. Servōrum cūriōsōrum, post vītā clāram, cum filiīs fortūnātīs. 8. Victōriā certā, prō templō altō, inter populōs barbarōs. 9. Circum turbam dēnsam, contrā fortūnam malam, extrā pūgnam māgnam.

64. Translate: 1. Via vīcī. 2. Initium pūgnae dubiae. 3. Rēmī nautārum inimīcōrum. 4. Prōvincia rēgnī vīcīnī.

5. *Īra captīvī*. In these examples notice especially the *use of the genitive case*. This case is often called the adjectival case, for, (1) like an adjective, it is regularly used with a noun and limits or qualifies its meaning; (2) it regularly stands just before or just after the noun it qualifies.

65. RULE.—Genitive of Possession.—*The genitive case often denotes possession or ownership.* In English, the genitive case is often called the possessive. It is shown by the addition of 's (or s') to the noun—*the boy's hat (the boys' hats)*.

66. WORD STUDY.—Tell the meanings of these words by finding the Latin bases. Learn their spelling, and use the words in sentences of your own: 1. Clear, equality, longitude, latitude, clarity, magnate. 2. Multitude, density, ancient, inaccurate, popular. 3. Curiosity, enemy, malevolent, falsify, doubt, confirm. 4. Antiquary, antique, clarion, declaration, condensation, failure. 5. Affirm, infirmary, congratulate, gracious, gratis, majesty. 6. Malignity, malice, sinecure, secure, impervious, voyage.

67. Make a list of the derivatives from the adjectives.

QUIZ.—Why is the genitive case called adjectival? What does this case commonly denote? Its name in English? How is this case indicated in English? Give the genitive singular of the words man, boy, lady, child, valley, Harry, Mr. Jones. Give the genitive plural of ally, calf, fairy, King of England, Miss Snow, lady. Write some English sentences containing these words in the genitive case.

THE VERB

V. THE VERB. FIRST CONJUGATION

68. amō, <i>I love;</i>	amāre, <i>to love.</i>
clāmō, <i>I shout;</i>	clāmāre, <i>to shout.</i>
liberō, <i>I free;</i>	liberāre, <i>to free.</i>
nārrō, <i>I relate;</i>	nārrāre, <i>to relate.</i>
ōrnō, <i>I adorn;</i>	ōrnāre, <i>to adorn.</i>
parō, <i>I prepare;</i>	parāre, <i>to prepare.</i>
partō, <i>I carry;</i>	portāre, <i>to carry.</i>
spectō, <i>I look at;</i>	spectāre, <i>to look at.</i>
superō, <i>I surpass;</i>	superāre, <i>to surpass.</i>
vocō, <i>I call;</i>	vocāre, <i>to call.</i>

69. We take up at this time another of the eight parts of speech, the **verb**. A verb is a word used to declare or assert something about a person, place, or thing. In sentences there are two essential parts, the **subject** and the **predicate**. In English the *subject* and the *predicate* must be expressed; in Latin the *subject* may be included in the form of the verb, as, **laudō**, *I praise*. A verb alone may then compose a Latin sentence, for it contains the two parts necessary to the expression of a complete thought.

70. Verbs may be **transitive**, that is, *require a direct object to complete the meaning*, as, *I struck the post*; or **intransitive**, that is, *require no direct object to complete the meaning*, as, *I walk*.

71. We have seen that nouns in Latin have different forms or cases which compose the various declensions. In like manner the different forms of a Latin verb are said to compose a *conjugation*.

There are in Latin **four conjugations** or groups of verb

forms: the first, second, third, and fourth. All the verbs of the present lesson belong to the first conjugation. The conjugation to which a verb belongs is indicated by the second form, called the *infinitive*, as, **amāre, clāmāre**, etc., above. *All verbs of the first conjugation have the long vowel ā in the infinitive form, as, laudāre.* This long vowel ā is called the *characteristic vowel* of the first conjugation.

English verbs are similar in their uses to Latin verbs. They do not, however, fall into four distinct conjugations, nor have they so elaborate a system of forms.

QUIZ.—What is a verb? What is its importance? What is a conjugation? Why is the infinitive form given? Why is the English verb simpler than the Latin?

72. Very many words in English are derived from Latin verbs. Sometimes these words are *exactly the same in spelling as the Latin word upon which they are based*. More often the Latin verb is *buried in the English word*, by being either preceded by a syllable (or two), called the **prefix**, or followed by a syllable (or two), called the **suffix**. You have already learned the meanings of some prefixes. Consider the following examples of English words derived from Latin verbs.

73. **amō**: amiable, amiability, amateur, amity, enmity, inimical, enemy, amicable.

clāmō: claim, claimant, clamor, acclaim, acclamation, declaim, declamation, disclaim, exclaim, exclamation, exclamatory, reclaim, reclamation, proclaim, proclamation.

THE VERB

liberō: liberate, liberty, deliberate, liberal.

nārrō: narrate, narration, narrative.

ōrnō: ornament, adorn, adornment, suborn.

parō: prepare, preparation, preparative, compare, comparable, comparative, comparison, apparel, apparatus, separate, separation, repair, reparation, reparative.

portō: transport, transportation, report, reporter, import, importation, importer, important, portable, portfolio, portmanteau, porter, portage, importune, portals, port, purport, portico, deport, inopportune, portly, deportment.

spectō: spectator, spectacle, spectacles, respect, inspect, spectre, spectrum, prospective, perspective, aspect.

vocō: vocative, vocation, vocal, vocabulary, revoke, convoke, invoke, voice, irrevocable.

74. Learn these words carefully. How many of them do you use? Did you realize that these words *were connected by the possession of a common Latin base*? Can you add any other words to this list?

QUIZ.—For what reason is it difficult to determine the Latin base in English derivatives? How do you know that the words following **amō** are interrelated? (Note the appearance of the common base **am-**.)

APPLIED LATIN

75. LAUDŌ.—Active Voice—Indicative Mood

SINGULAR	<i>Present Tense</i>	PLURAL
1. laudō, <i>I praise</i>		1. laudāmus, <i>we praise</i>
2. laudās, <i>you praise</i>		2. laudātis, <i>you praise</i>
3. laudāt, <i>he (she, it) praises</i>		3. laudānt, <i>they praise</i>
<i>Imperfect Tense</i>		
1. laudābam, <i>I was praising</i>		1. laudābāmus, <i>we were praising</i>
2. laudābās, <i>you were praising</i>		2. laudābātis, <i>you were praising</i>
3. laudābat, <i>he (she, it) was praising</i>		3. laudābant, <i>they were praising</i>
<i>Future Tense</i>		
1. laudābō, <i>I shall praise</i>		1. laudābimus, <i>we shall praise</i>
2. laudābis, <i>you will praise</i>		2. laudābitis, <i>you will praise</i>
3. laudābit, <i>he (she, it) will praise</i>		3. laudābunt, <i>they will praise</i>

76. Learn the conjugation of these tenses and the meaning of the terms used in connection with verbs.

77. VOICE.—The Latin verb has **two voices**, *the active and the passive*. The **Active Voice** is composed of all the forms of the verb which indicate that the subject of the sentence is *acting upon* some one or something; as, *I praise the horse*. The **Passive Voice** includes all those parts of the verb which indicate that the subject of the sentence is *being acted upon* by some one or something; as, *I am praised by John*.

78. MOOD.—The Latin verb has **three moods**: **indicative**, **subjunctive**, and **imperative**. The term mood refers to the *feeling* or *mood* of the speaker or writer. The **Indicative** mood is used when the speaker wishes to *state a fact*. Its use implies *firmness*, *frankness*, and *independence*. The **Subjunctive** mood lacks the firmness and assurance of the indicative. It does not state facts, but rather *possibilities*, things which *might be true* under certain conditions; as, *I*

THE VERB

may see, not I see; I might hear, not I hear. The **Imperative** mood is used to give a command; as, *shoot! charge!*

79. TENSE.—The word **tense** means *time*. Tenses tell the *time at which* an action takes place. The **Present** tense indicates that the action takes place *now*; that is, at the time when the speech is being made. The **Imperfect** tense implies that (1) the action took place in the *past*, and (2) that it took *some time in being accomplished*. The **Future** tense implies that the action will take place in the *future*; that is, after the speech is made.

80. NUMBER.—Each tense of the Latin verb is *further divided* into two parts, called **Numbers**.

The **Singular** number follows a subject which is *singular*; the **Plural**, a subject which is *plural*.

81. PERSON.—Each number of the verb has *three forms*, called **Persons**. The first person singular indicates that the subject of the sentence is *I*; the second person, *you*; the third, *he, she, or it*. The first person plural indicates that the subject of the sentence is *we*; the second *you*; the third, *they*. The Latin words meaning **I, you, we**, do *not* appear in a Latin sentence *unless very emphatic*. Ordinarily these words are included in the form of the Latin verb, as, **laudō**, *I praise*, etc. But when the subject of the sentence is *he, she, or it*, this subject is regularly expressed; as, **poēta laudat**, *he, namely, the poet, praises*.

82. Translate these verb forms: 1. **Amō, liberat, ōrnātis**. 2. **Clāmās, vocant, superāmus**. 3. **Parās, portant, spectātis, nārrāmus**. 4. **Parābat, clāmābam, portābāmus**. 5. **Nārrā-**

bās, vocābant, amābās. 6. Spectābātis, ōrnābant, liberābātis, superābant. 7. Portābunt, vocābō, superābimus.

83. Translate these simple declarative sentences:

LATIN TO ENGLISH

1. Clāmō.
2. Filiam amās.
3. Fēmina frūmentum ex oppidō* portat.
4. Amīcum ex agrō* vocāmus.
5. Prōvinciam liberātis.
6. Socii praesidium superant.
7. Aedificium ōrnābam.
8. Fātum viri nārrābās.
9. Nūntius oppidum spectābat.
10. Tēla ē fossā* portābāmus.
11. Gladiōs parābātis.
12. Filiae rosās amābant.
13. Rēmōs spectābō.
14. Perīcula superābis.
15. Poēta fābulam novam nārrābit.
16. Frūmentum parābimus.
17. Clāmābitis.
18. Amīci portās ōrnābunt.

ENGLISH TO LATIN

1. We shall shout.
2. You were loving glory.
3. The women carry roses from the building.
4. We call the men.
5. You were freeing a kingdom.
6. The allies will conquer.
7. We were adorning the place.
8. You relate a long story.
9. The messengers will look at the horses.
10. I carry a shield.
11. You were preparing gifts.
12. The daughter will love the man.
13. We shall look at the forests.
14. You were conquering the allies.
15. The poets relate the fates of cities.
16. I was preparing aid.
17. You shout.
18. The friends of the boys carry wine.

84.* THE ABLATIVE CASE.—The ablative is often called the *adverbial case* because (1) it qualifies or limits the meaning of the *verb*; (2) like an adverb, it defines the *time, manner, place, cause, or degree* of the action of a verb.

In this lesson there are a few cases of the ablative introduced by **ex** (ē before a word beginning with a consonant) which show the *place from which* something is taken or moves.

THE VERB

85. RULE.—Ablative of Place From Which.—*The ablative with **ab, dē, ex** is used to express place from which.*

As you have noticed in these sentences, a *first person singular subject* is followed by a *first person singular verb*; a *second person singular subject* by a *second person singular verb*; a *third person singular subject* (whether masculine, feminine, or neuter) by a *third person singular verb*.

86. RULE.—Agreement of a Verb with Its Subject.—*A verb must agree with its subject in person and number.*

87. This same rule applies to the English language. If you learn carefully the meanings of the Latin tenses, you will at the same time learn how to conjugate properly the tenses of the English verb.

QUIZ.—Why is the ablative called the adverbial case? How is *place from which* expressed? Give the rule for the agreement of subject and verb. What is a declarative sentence?

88. There are certain parts of the Latin verb which are selected for memorizing, because all the other verb forms can be made from them. These forms are called the **principal parts** of the verb. In Latin there are four parts usually given. If fewer than four appear, the lacking forms were not commonly used by Latin writers.

The **principal parts** of the verb **laudō** are the following:

PRESENT INDICATIVE	PRESENT INFINITIVE	PERFECT INDICATIVE	PERFECT PASSIVE PARTICIPLE
1. laudō	2. laudāre	3. laudāvī	4. laudātus
I praise	to praise	I have praised	praised or having been praised

89. EXAMPLES.—

clāmō	clāmāre	clāmāvī	clāmātus
amō	amāre	amāvī	amātus
parō	parāre	parāvī	parātus

Give the principal parts of the other first conjugation verbs.

90. In English, the principal parts of the verb are three in number, the infinitive not being given because *English does not present four regular conjugations*. (Cf. 71.)

91. EXAMPLES OF THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF ENGLISH VERBS:

PRESENT INDICATIVE	PAST INDICATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
I love	I loved	loved
I produce	I produced	produced
I pull	I pulled	pulled
I go	I went	gone
I sing	I sang	sung
I am	I was	been
I see	I saw	seen
I feel	I felt	felt
I sit	I sat	sat
I lie	I lay	lain

The English verbs *love*, *produce*, *pull*, are said to belong to the **regular** conjugation and do not show serious changes in form; *go* and *sing* are said to belong to the **irregular** conjugation; (1) because the vowels in the forms change and (2) because entire forms differ.

Examine the English verbs in your reading book. Classify them according to the conjugations and give the principal parts.

THE VERB

92. We learn the *perfect passive participle* of Latin verbs at this time because a great number of English words are derived from this principal part. How many words have you already had from this principal part?

QUIZ.—What is the importance of the principal parts of a verb? How many principal parts has the English verb? What two conjugations are found in English verbs? Why do we learn the participle of Latin verbs now?

93. LAUDŌ.—Active Voice—Indicative Mood

SINGULAR	Perfect Tense	PLURAL
1. laudāvī, <i>I have praised</i>	1. laudāvimus, <i>we have praised</i>	
2. laudāvistī, <i>you have praised</i>	2. laudāvistis, <i>you have praised</i>	
3. laudāvit, <i>he (she, it) has praised</i>	3. laudāvērunt, <i>they have praised</i>	

Pluperfect Tense

1. laudāveram, <i>I had praised</i>	1. laudāverāmus, <i>we had praised</i>
2. laudāverās, <i>you had praised</i>	2. laudāverātis, <i>you had praised</i>
3. laudāverat, <i>he (she, it) had praised</i>	3. laudāverant, <i>they had praised</i>

Future Perfect Tense

1. laudāverō, <i>I shall have praised</i>	1. laudāverimus, <i>we shall have praised</i>
2. laudāveris, <i>you will have praised</i>	2. laudāveritis, <i>you will have praised</i>
3. laudāverit, <i>he (she, it) will have praised</i>	3. laudāverint, <i>they will have praised</i>

Practise the conjugation of these tenses, using the verbs already given.

These tenses, with those already learned, complete the six tenses of the indicative mood.

94. USE OF THESE TENSES.—The **perfect tense** implies that the action of the verb is complete in the *present time*.

The **pluperfect tense** implies that the action of the verb was *completed in past time*. The **future perfect tense** implies that the action of the verb *will have been completed in future time*.

95. In English, the tenses most used are the *present*, *past*, and *future*; in Latin, the *present*, *perfect*, and *future*. All the other tenses of the indicative exist in English and are frequently used. They consist, however, not of a single verb form, as in Latin, but are formed by the addition of a number of *small verbs called auxiliaries*. These are *do*, *may*, *might*, *would*, *could*, *etc.*

96. EXAMPLES OF ENGLISH AUXILIARY VERBS.—I *do* praise, I *am* praising, **present indicative**; I *was* praising, **imperfect indicative**; I *shall* praise, you *will* praise, **future indicative**; I *have* praised, **perfect indicative**; I *had* praised, **pluperfect indicative**; I *shall have* praised, **future perfect indicative**; I *may* praise, I *might* praise, I *could* praise; I *would* praise, I *may have* praised, I *was going* to praise (tenses *outside* of the indicative mood).

The words italicized are English auxiliary verbs.

QUIZ.—How many tenses are there in the indicative mood? What are the tenses of the indicative most used in Latin? in English? How are many tenses made in English?

97. Translate the following forms: 1. *Liberāvit, ōrnāvistis, āmāvī*. 2. *Clāmāvistī, vocāvērunt, superāvimus, parāvistī*. 3. *Portāvērunt, spectāvistis, nārrāvimus*. 4. *Clāmāverat, parāveram, portāverāmus*. 5. *Nārrāverās, vocāverant, amāverās, spectāverātis*. 6. *Ōrnāverant, liberāverit, superāverātis*. 7. *Vocāverint, portāverō, superāverī*.

THE VERB

mus. 8. Parāveris, spectāveritis, amāverimus, liberāverint. 9. Nārrāverit, clāmāveris, ōrnāverō.

98. TRANSLATE

TRANSLATE

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Nōmen* fēminae clāmāvī. | 1. We shall have shouted. |
| 2. Māgnam virī pecūniam* amāvistī. | 2. You had loved the farmer's horse. |
| 3. Fēmina corōnam māgnam portāvit. | 3. The women have carried crowns. |
| 4. Ex aedificiō servōs vocāvimus. | 4. They have called the retinue from the fields. |
| 5. Nūntiōs liberāvistis. | 5. You had freed the messengers. |
| 6. Socii flammās superāvērunt. | 6. The allies will have conquered the provinces of the kingdom. |
| 7. Templum altum ōrnāveram. | 7. We had adorned the temple. |
| 8. Fāta mala nārrāverās. | 8. You have related the story of the war. |
| 9. Nūntius pūgnam ex insulā spectāverat. | 9. The messengers will have looked at the fight from the wall. |
| 10. Cōpiam frūmentī portāverāmus. | 10. I have carried the roses. |
| 11. Sagittās parāverātis. | 11. You will have gotten ready the arrows. |
| 12. Filiae litterās spectāverant. | 12. The daughter will have looked at the form of the letter. |
| 13. Turbam barbaram spectāverō. | 13. We shall have looked at the earth. |
| 14. Scientia impedimentum superāverit. | 14. You had overcome the flames. |
| 15. Poēta perīculum nārrāverit. | 15. The poets have related the dangers. |
| 16. Proelium parāverimus. | 16. I have gotten ready the gift. |
| 17. Clāmāveritis. | 17. You have shouted. |
| 18. Amīcī portam ōrnāverint. | 18. The friends had adorned the gate. |

THE DIRECT OBJECT

99. Some verbs in Latin may be used *alone*, that is, without *objects* (intransitive). Most verbs are so *full of action* that they *demand the use of some word to tell the object* toward which their action is directed (transitive). Note the accusative cases in the sentences above.

100.* RULE.—**The Direct Object.**—*The direct object of an active transitive verb is put in the accusative case.*

In English this case is called the objective.

WORD ORDER

101. The *most important places* in a Latin sentence are the *first* and *last*. Consequently, the *subject* usually stands *first* and the *verb last*. The *object, and all other words*, regularly stand *between subject and verb*. English sentences follow the *natural word order*. The subject and its modifiers begin the sentence, the verb is next, and the verb modifiers come last.

Review the derivatives from first conjugation verbs.

QUIZ.—What is the case of the direct object in Latin? What is the usual order of words in a Latin sentence? in an English sentence?

THE NATIONS OF THE ANCIENT WORLD

Let us look once more at the map on page 23 and read the names of the lands conquered by the Romans. In the far West lay the British Islands: **Britannia** (Britain, British, Britons), **Scōtia** (Scotland, Scottish, Scots), and **Hibernia** (Hibernians, Ivernia, Erin, Ireland). These islands were

THE NATIONS OF THE ANCIENT WORLD

known to the Ancients especially because of great deposits of tin in England.

In Europe was **Gallia** (Gaul, Gallic, Keltic), inhabited by the Kelts, who in early time controlled all the northern part of Europe. Gaul was divided into three parts; that inhabited by the **Belgae** (Belgium), the **Celtae** (Kelts), and the **Aquītānī**. The conquest of Gaul was completed by the great general Julius Caesar, and the Gallic campaigns are described in his famous Gallic War (**Bellum Gallicum**).

North of Gaul lay **Germānia**, across the river Rhine (**Rhēnus**), inhabited by the **Germānī** (Germans), who were an everlasting source of anxiety to the Romans. South of Gaul was **Hispania** (Spain), a part of which (**Lusitānia**) is today Portugal. On the northern coast of **Āfrica** lay **Mauretānia** (Morocco, Moors, Moorish), **Libya**, and **Aegyptus** (Egypt). Between Europe and Africa were the Pillars of Hercules (Straits of Gibraltar).

In the Mediterranean Sea were the following islands: **Baleārēs** (Balearic), **Corsica**, **Sardinia**, **Ilva** (Elba), **Sicilia** (Sicily), **Crēta** (Crete), **Rhodus** (Rhodes), and **Cyprus**. East of Italy (**Ītalia**) lay **Graecia** (Greece), bounded on the north by **Macedonia** and **Thrācia** (Thrace).

Beyond Greece was **Asia** (modern Turkey in Asia), which was composed of a number of small states, of which **Armenia** was one. The power of the Roman empire never reached further than **Armenia**, and beyond that point the huge **Parthian** (Persian) empire was a continual menace.

VI. THE VERB. SECOND CONJUGATION

102.

habeō, *I have or hold;***iubeō**, *I order;***maneō**, *I remain;***sedeō**, *I sit;***teneō**, *I hold;***timeō**, *I fear;***taceō**, *I am silent;***terreō**, *I frighten;***videō**, *I see;***valeō**, *I am strong or well;***habēre**, *to have or hold.***iubēre**, *to order.***manēre**, *to remain.***sedēre**, *to sit.***tenēre**, *to hold.***timēre**, *to fear.***tacēre**, *to be silent.***terrēre**, *to frighten.***vidēre**, *to see.***valēre**, *to be strong or well.*

Learn these second conjugation verbs.

103. There are *two ways* by which you may quickly recognize verbs of the second conjugation: (1) the final **ō** of the verb is preceded by the letter **e**; (2) the infinitive form (sign of the conjugation) always ends in the letters **ēre**, of which the first **ē** is always long in quantity. This long vowel **ē** is called the characteristic vowel of the second conjugation.

104. The following English words are formed from these second conjugation verbs.

Habeō gives us habit, habitable, habitual, habitation, habiliments, inhabit, haven, exhibit, habitat, prohibit.

Maneō is found in remain, remainder, mansion, manse, manor, manorial, maintain, remnant, permanent, permanence, permanently.

Sedeō is the base of seat, sedan, sedate, sedative, sedentary, session, sediment, reside, residence, residual, residuum, preside, president, subside, insidious, sedition, settee, settlement.

THE VERB

Teneō gives us tenable, tenacious, tenure, tenant, tement, detain, retain, sustain, tenor, attain, tentative.

Timeō appears in timid, timidity, timorous, intimidate.

Learn the meaning and spelling of these words. Use them in sentences of your own composition and add any other words of like origin that you know. In working out the meanings be careful to note the *prefixes* used.

QUIZ.—How can verbs of the first and second conjugations be distinguished?.

105. HABEŌ.—Active Voice—Indicative Mood

SINGULAR	<i>Present Tense</i>	PLURAL
1. habēō, <i>I have</i>		1. habēmus, <i>we have</i>
2. habēs, <i>you have</i>		2. habētis, <i>you have</i>
3. habet, <i>he (she, it) has</i>		3. habent, <i>they have</i>
<i>Imperfect Tense</i>		
1. habēbam, <i>I was having</i>		1. habēbāmus, <i>we were having</i>
2. habēbās, <i>you were having</i>		2. habēbātis, <i>you were having</i>
3. habēbat, <i>he (she, it) was having</i>		3. habēbant, <i>they were having</i>
<i>Future Tense</i>		
1. habēbō, <i>I shall have</i>		1. habēbimus, <i>we shall have</i>
2. habēbis, <i>you will have</i>		2. habēbitis, <i>you will have</i>
3. habēbit, <i>he (she, it) will have</i>		3. habēbunt, <i>they will have</i>

Practise the conjugation of these tenses, using the second conjugation verbs already given.

106. Translate these verb forms:

1. Iubeō, manet, sedētis, terrēs, timent, tacēmus, tenēs, vident, valētis, habēmus.

2. Valēbat, vidēbam, terrēbāmus, tacēbās, timēbant, tenēbas, sedēbātis, manēbant, iubēbātis.

3. Tenēbunt, sedēbō, manēbimus, iubēbis, habēbitis, valēbimus, vidēbunt, terrēbit, tacēbis, timēbitis.

107. WORD STUDY.—**Taceō** appears in English in the words tacit, taciturn, taciturnity, reticent.

Terreō gives us the words: terror, terrify, terrible, deter.

Videō is a very common base in English: Vision, visible, visibility, visionary, vista, survey. Evidence, vizer, revise, revision, view, visage, invisible, visual, provide, provision, provisional. Proviso, advice, prudent, supervision.

Valeō makes these words possible: value, valuable, invaluable, valor, valid, invalid, prevail. Valiant, valorous, validate, valid. Available, convalescent, valedictory.

108. Learn these words carefully, and try to make out their meanings without the aid of an English dictionary. Use them in sentences of your own construction.

Pick out some Latin bases in your English reader.

109.

moveō, *I move;*

miscēō, *I mix;*

pateō, *I extend;*

pareō, *I obey;*

pleō, *I fill;*

ardeō, *I am on fire or burn;*

arceō, *I ward off or prevent;*

augeō, *I increase;*

doceō, *I teach;*

haereō, *I stick or cling;*

movēre, *to move.*

miscēre, *to mix.*

patēre, *to extend.*

parēre, *to obey (followed by the dative).*

plēre, *to fill.*

ardēre, *to be on fire or burn.*

arcēre, *to ward off or prevent.*

augēre, *to increase.*

docēre, *to teach.*

haerēre, *to stick or cling.*

Use these verbs in practising the three tenses of the second conjugation already given.

THE VERB

110. TRANSLATE

1. Poenam augeō.
2. Aquam mīscēs.
3. Filia parva fēminae pāret.
4. Via longa patet.
5. Campōs lātōs plētis.
6. Māgnae silvae ārdent.
7. Aedificium in oppidō* antīquō ārdēbat.
8. Signum clārum movēbās.
9. Clārus poēta amīcōs docēbat.
10. Fāma bona in memoriā virōrum haerēbat.
11. Captīvōs falsōs habēbātis.
12. Multī equī in campō manēbant.
13. In viā lātā sedēbō.
14. Imperium vicīnum tenēbis.
15. Captīvus irātus iniūriam timēbit.
16. In somnō altō tacēbimus.
17. In victoriā valēbitis.
18. Fēminae rosās in agrīs vidēbunt.

TRANSLATE

1. We shall be strong.
2. You were teaching the boys.
3. The daughters will obey the poet.
4. We fill the walled town.
5. You were mixing wine.
6. The dangers will frighten the allies.
7. We were ordering the sailors.
8. The tongues of poets are silent.
9. The mansion will be on fire.
10. I ward off the danger.
11. You were moving the anchor from the road.
12. The fugitive slaves will sit in the road.
13. We shall remain in the camp.
14. You were afraid of a scarcity of grain.
15. They are holding the crowns.
16. I was frightening the farmers.
17. The sword is sticking in the earth.
18. The allies will remain in the village.

111.* In paragraph 110 you find a few cases of the ablative introduced by the preposition **in** to express *the place in which* something is situated or happens.

112. RULE.—**Ablative of Place in Which.**—*Place in which is regularly expressed by the ablative with the preposition in.*

QUIZ.—How is *place in which* expressed in Latin? in English? What word distinguishes this use of the ablative?

APPLIED LATIN

113. HABEŌ.—Active Voice—Indicative Mood

SINGULAR	Perfect Tense	PLURAL
1. habuī, <i>I have had</i>		1. habuimus, <i>we have had</i>
2. habuistī, <i>you have had</i>		2. habuistis, <i>you have had</i>
3. habuit, <i>he (she, it) has had</i>		3. habuērunt, <i>they have had</i>
<i>Pluperfect Tense</i>		
1. habueram, <i>I had had</i>		1. habuerāmus, <i>we had had</i>
2. habuerās, <i>you had had</i>		2. habuerātis, <i>you had had</i>
3. habuerat, <i>he (she, it) had had</i>		3. habuerant, <i>they had had</i>
<i>Future Perfect Tense</i>		
1. habuerō, <i>I shall have had</i>		1. habuerimus, <i>we shall have had</i>
2. habueris, <i>you will have had</i>		2. habueritis, <i>you will have had</i>
3. habuerit, <i>he (she, it) will have had</i>		3. habuerint, <i>they will have had</i>

114. In order to practise these tenses it is first necessary to learn the principal parts of the second conjugation verbs already given. Note that verbs whose fourth principal part ends in **-m** are intransitive.

habeō,	habēre,	habuī,	habitus.
iubeō,	iubēre,	iūssī,	iūssus.
maneō,	manēre,	mānsī,	mānsus.
sedeō,	sedēre,	sēdī,	sessus.
teneō,	tenēre,	tenuī,	(tentus).
timeō,	timēre,	timuī,	—
taceō,	tacēre,	tacuī,	tacitus.
terreō,	terrēre,	terruī,	territus.
videō,	vidēre,	vīdī,	vīsus.
valeō,	valēre,	valuī,	—
moveō,	movēre,	mōvī,	mōtus.
misceō,	miscēre,	mīscuī,	mīxtus.
pateō,	patēre,	patuī,	—
pāreō,	pārēre,	pāruī,	—
pleō,	plēre,	plēvī,	plētus.
ardeō,	ardēre,	ārsī,	ārsus.
arceō,	arcēre,	arcuī,	—
augeō,	augēre,	auxī,	auctus.
doceō,	docēre,	docuī,	doctus.
haereō,	haerēre,	haesī,	haesum.

THE VERB

115. Conjugate the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses of these second conjugation verbs.

Review the English words derived from these verbs.

QUIZ.—Why is it essential to learn principal parts? Mention some English words derived from the fourth principal part of these verbs? What does the fourth principal part in **-m** denote?

116. Translate: 1. Mōvit, mīscuistis, patuī. 2. Pāruistī, plēvērunt, ārsimus. 3. Arcuistī, auxērunt, docuistis, haesimus. 4. Docuerat, auxeram, arcuerāmus. 5. Ārserās, plēverant, pāruerās. 6. Patuerātis, mīscuerant, mōverat, haeserātis. 7. Plēverint, ārserō, arcuerimus. 8. Auxeris, docueritis, haeserimus. 9. Mōverint, mīscuerit, patueris, pāruerō.

117. TRANSLATE

1. Portam fīrmam mōvī.
2. Frūmenta mīscuistī.
3. Rēgnum māgnum patuit.
4. Nautae bonō pāruiimus.
5. Aedificia frūmentō* plēvistis.
6. Vicī in prōvinciā ārsērunt.
7. Perīcula cūrā arcueram.
8. Audāciam auxerās.
9. Nauta filiōs parvōs docuerat.

TRANSLATE

1. We shall have stayed in the field.
2. You had filled the town with allies.
3. The slaves had burned the yearly grain.
4. The wind has moved the roses.
5. You had taught the new captive.
6. The wind will have warded off the flames.
7. We had mixed the great swords.
8. You have increased the guard.
9. The crowd will have obeyed.

APPLIED LATIN

TRANSLATE	TRANSLATE
10. Haeserāmus.	10. I have filled the temple with roses.
11. Scūtum amplum mōverātis.	11. The forest will have been on fire.
12. Vīna bona mīscuerant.	12. The woman had taught the poet's daughters.
13. Oppida māgna ārserint.	13. We shall have held the crown.
14. Captīvum cūriōsum docueris.	14. You had increased (your) diligence.
15. Nūntius tēla mōverit.	15. The water had filled the lands.
16. Via in silvam patuerit.	16. I had stuck to (my) boldness.
17. Virōs bonōs docueritis.	17. You will have warded off fate.
18. Animō bellicōsō haeserint.	18. He will have held the chief command by the sword.

118.* In the sentences above there are some cases of the ablative without a preposition to indicate the *means* by which something is done.

119. RULE.—**Ablative of Means.**—*The means by which anything is done is expressed by the ablative without an introductory preposition.*

120. WORD STUDY.—From **moveō** come: move, motion, remove, motive, emotion, commotion, locomotive, mobile, mob, remote, promotion; **misceō**: miscellaneous, promiscuous, mix, mixture; **pateō**: patent, expatiate; **pāreō**: parent, parentage; **pleō**: complete, complementary, plenty, replete, deplete, implement, supplement, accomplish; **arceō**: coerce, coercion; **ārdeō**: ardent, ardor, arson; **augeō**: augment, author, authority, auctioneer, auxiliary; **doceō**: doctrine, doctor, docile, document; **haereō**: adhere, adhesive, cohere, incoherent, cohesion, hesitate.

Review the derivatives from the second conjugation verbs.



QUIZ.—How is the *means* (or *instrument*) by which an action is accomplished expressed in Latin? in English?

THE PENINSULA OF ITALY

The Italian peninsula fell naturally into three divisions, marked in a general way by the three rivers: **Arnus** (Arno), **Tiberis** (Tiber), and **Liris**. About the **Arnus** lay the lands of the **Etruscans**, those mysterious people whose writings have never yet been deciphered. Bordering the Tiber was **Latium**, the home of the Latins, whose chief city was **Rome**. Below the Liris Italy bore the name **Māgna Graecia** (Great Greece). This part of the peninsula had been settled at an early period by men from Greece. The three rivers mentioned carried away the waters from the **Apennine Mountains**, a chain of hills which ran down the center of the peninsula.

Above the **Arnus**, between the **Alps** and the northern end of the **Apennines**, was an extensive plain drained by the river **Padus** (Po). This plain belonged to **Cisalpine Gaul** (Gaul, this side of the Alps), and, as the name suggests, was inhabited by Gauls, not by Latins. When the Latins came down to **Latium**, they passed along the crests of the **Apennines**, escaping the **Etruscans**, and left little groups of their own people along their path. These were the **Umbrians**, **Sabines**, and **Samnites**. Be careful to note that Rome held the central position in Italy, and Italy the central position in the ancient civilized world. This central position meant much in the march of the Romans to imperial power.

VII. THE NOUN. THIRD DECLENSION

121.

cōsul , <i>a consul, magistrate</i> , m.	Caesar , <i>Caesar, a Roman name</i> , m.
hiems , <i>the winter</i> , f.	frāter , <i>a brother</i> , m.
homō , <i>man</i> , m.	amor , <i>love</i> , m.
legiō , <i>legion, a division of the Roman army</i> , f.	corpus , <i>the body</i> , n.
nōmen , <i>a name</i> , n.	urbs , <i>a city</i> , f.
vōx , <i>the voice, a word</i> , f.	civis , <i>a citizen</i> , m.
aetās , <i>age</i> , f.	nūbēs , <i>a cloud</i> , f.
virtūs , <i>courage, manliness</i> , f.	sedile , <i>a seat</i> , n.
caput , <i>the head</i> , n.	animal , <i>an animal</i> , n.

122. There is *no single* noun whose declension can be used as the standard *for all third declension* words. However, the declensions of the nouns given above serve as standards for all words of this declension in common use. These standard nouns must be carefully learned, as third declension words are *very common* in Latin.

When men began to make a careful study of the individual words of the Latin language, they found a large number that had the endings of the first declension, many that were like the second, and some that we shall soon find set apart in the fourth and the fifth declensions. All the rest, because of certain similarities, were grouped in the declension that we are now studying. For this reason the number of words in this declension is *unusually large*, and no single noun can be used as a standard for all the rest.

123. WORD STUDY.—From the nouns above come the English words:

cōsul, consulate, consular.

homō, human, humanity, humane, inhuman.

legiō, legion, legionary.

nōmen, noun, nominal, nominate, cognomen, pronoun, denomination.

vōx, voice, vocal, vowel, vocabulary, semivowel, vociferate, invoke, equivocal, vocation.

virtūs, virtue, virtuous.

caput, capital, capitol, decapitate, chapter, occiput, recapitulate, precipice.

Caesar, Caesarean, Kaiser, Czar, Shah.

frāter, fraternal, fraternity, fratricide, fraternize.

amor, amour, amorous, amity, enemy.

corpus, corporate, corporation, incorporate, corpse, corps, corporeal, corpuscle, habeas corpus.

urbs, urban, urbane, suburban.

cīvis, civic, civilian, civilize.

Use these English words in sentences of your own.

QUIZ.—Why are there so many standard words of the third declension?

124. **Cōnsul, cōnsulis, a consul, m.** **Hiems, hiemis, the winter, f.**

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	cōnsul, a consul, m.
<i>Gen.</i>	cōnsulis, of a consul.
<i>Dat.</i>	cōnsulī, to or for a consul.
<i>Acc.</i>	cōnsulem, a consul.
<i>Voc.</i>	cōnsul, (O) consul.
<i>Abl.</i>	cōnsule, with, from, in, or by a consul.

SINGULAR

hiems, the winter, f.
hiemis, of the winter.
hiemī, to or for the winter.
hiemem, the winter.
hiems, (O) winter.
hieme, with, from, in, or by the winter.

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	cōnsulēs, consuls.
<i>Gen.</i>	cōnsulum, of consuls.
<i>Dat.</i>	cōnsulibus, to or for consuls.
<i>Acc.</i>	cōnsulēs, consuls.
<i>Voc.</i>	cōnsulēs, (O) consuls.
<i>Abl.</i>	cōnsulibus, with, from, in, or by consuls.

PLURAL

hiemēs, winters.
hiemum, of winters.
hiemibus, to or for winters.
hiemēs, winters.
hiemēs, (O) winters.
hiemibus, with, from, in, or by winters.

THE NOUN

125. Like the word **cōnsul** decline:

exsul, exsulis, an exile, m.

sal, salis, salt, m. (saline, salary).

sōl, sōlis, the sun, m. (no genitive plural in good use) (solar, solarium).

126. GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION.—*No rule* for gender which will include all words of the third declension can be framed in any *brief* form. It is best to learn the gender of the words as they appear in the lessons.

127. Translate for practice in third declension cases: 1. Salis, cōnsulem, hiemēs, exsulibus, sōle. 2. Prō cōnsule, inter exsulēs, propter sōlem, post hiemem. 3. Cōnsulum annuōrum, longīs hiemibus, sōlem clārum, gladius exsulis. 4. Dōnum salis, in templō sōlis, cōsulēs. 5. Populum vocāmus. 6. Hiemēs longās amāmus.

128. Translate: 1. The consul's daughter. For the exiles. By the sun. Of salt. The winter (acc.). 2. O consuls! The exiles will hold the booty. In the sun. Before the battle. 3. In front of the gate. On account of victory. Without a sword.

129. EXAMPLES OF THE USE OF DERIVATIVES.—1. To save life, a saline solution is often injected into the blood. 2. The sun is the chief member of the solar system, which includes the planets Venus, Mars, the Earth, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, and Neptune. 3. Sun parlors are called *solaria*. 4. Salary was originally salt money; that is, money with which to buy an article without which mankind cannot live.

APPLIED LATIN

130. Homō, hominis, a <i>man, m.</i>	Legiō, legiōnis, a <i>legion, f.</i>	Nōmen, nōminis, a <i>name, n.</i>
SINGULAR	SINGULAR	SINGULAR
<i>Nom.</i> homō, <i>a man, m.</i>	legiō, <i>a legion, f.</i>	nōmen, <i>a name, n.</i>
<i>Gen.</i> hominis	legiōnis	nōminis
<i>Dat.</i> hominī	legiōnī	nōminī
<i>Acc.</i> hominem	legiōnem	nōmen
<i>Voc.</i> homō	legiō	nōmen
<i>Abl.</i> homine	legiōne	nōmine
PLURAL	PLURAL	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i> hominēs, <i>men</i>	legiōnēs, <i>legions</i>	nōmina, <i>names.</i>
<i>Gen.</i> hominum	legiōnum	nōminum
<i>Dat.</i> hominibus	legiōnibus	nōminibus
<i>Acc.</i> hominēs	legiōnēs	nōmina
<i>Voc.</i> hominēs	legiōnēs	nōmina
<i>Abl.</i> hominibus	legiōnibus	nōminibus

Learn these declensions.

131. Like **homō** and **legiō** decline:

imāgō, imāginis, an imitation, image, f. (image, imagine, imaginary).

margō, marginis, a border, m. (margin, marginal).

origō, originis, an origin, f. (original, originate, aboriginal).

virgō, virginis, a maiden, f. (virgin, Virginia).

māgnitūdō, māgnitūdinis, greatness, size, f. (magnitude).

multitūdō, multitūdinis, great number, f. (multitude).

longitūdō, longitūdinis, length, f. (longitude).

ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis, a speech, f. (oration, peroration, oratory, oratorio).

leō, leōnis, a lion, m. (lion, leonine, Leonard).

nātiō, nātiōnis, a nation, f. (national, international).

valētūdō, valētūdinis, health, f. (valetudinarian).

THE NOUN

132. Like *nōmen* decline:

grāmen, grāminis, the grass, m. (graminate, graminivorous).

lūmen, lūminis, light, n. (luminous, luminary).

līmen, līminis, a threshold, doorway, n. (preliminary).

āgmen, āgminis, an army (on the march), n.

flūmen, flūminis, a river, n. (flume).

carmen, carminis, a poem, n.

ōmen, ōminis, an omen, n. (ominous, ill-omened).

volūmen, volūminis, a volume, n. (voluminous).

133. Translate: 1. *Imāginis, ōmen, volūmine, carminibus, multitūdinem.* 2. *Marginī, orīginum, leōnēs, ōrātiōnis, nātiōnum, virginēs.* 3. *Legiō, nōmina, āgminis, lūminibus, longitūdinis.* 4. *In grāmine, ad legiōnem, propter māgnitūdinem, ab orīgine, carmina poētārum.* 5. *Ē flūmine, cum multitūdine amīcōrum, sub līmine, post ōrātiōnem cōsulis.*

Translate: 1. For men, to a legion, with nations, in the grass, of poems. 2. On account of size, from the origin, rivers, of maidens, outside the threshold.

Write English sentences using the derivatives given.

Most third declension words have *one more* syllable in the genitive singular than in the nominative singular.

134. *Amor, amōris, love, m.*

Frāter, frātris, a brother, m.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>amor, love, m.</i>	<i>amōrēs, loves</i>	<i>frāter, a brother, m.</i>	<i>frātrēs, brothers</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>amōris</i>	<i>amōrum</i>	<i>frātris</i>	<i>frātrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>amōrī</i>	<i>amōribus</i>	<i>frātrī</i>	<i>frātribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>amōrem</i>	<i>amōrēs</i>	<i>frātre</i>	<i>frātrēs</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>amor</i>	<i>amōrēs</i>	<i>frāter</i>	<i>frātrēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>amōre</i>	<i>amōribus</i>	<i>frātre</i>	<i>frātribus</i>

APPLIED LATIN

Caesar, Caesaris, Caesar, m.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	Caesar, Caesar, m.	Caesarēs, <i>emperors</i> *
<i>Gen.</i>	Caesaris	Caesarum
<i>Dat.</i>	Caesari	Caesaribus
<i>Acc.</i>	Caesarem	Caesarēs
<i>Voc.</i>	Caesar	Caesarēs
<i>Abl.</i>	Caesare	Caesaribus

135. Like *amor* decline:

clāmor, clāmōris, *an outcry*, m. (clamor, exclaim, proclaim).
honor, honōris, *an honor (office)*, m. (honor, honorable, dishonor, honorary).
labor, labōris, *labor, work*, m. (laborer, laborious, elaborate).
viātor, viātōris, *a traveler*, m.
imperātor, imperātōris, *a commander*, m. (emperor, empress, imperious).
ārdor, ārdōris, *a burning heat*, m. (ardor, ardent, arson).
auctor, auctōris, *an author*, m. (authoress, auctioneer).
color, colōris, *a color*, m. (colored, discolored, particolored).
odor, odōris, *an odor, smell*, m. (odorous, malodorous, odoriferous).
terror, terrōris, *fright*, m. (terror, terrible, deter).
soror, sorōris, *a sister*, f. (sorority).

136. Like *frāter* (fraternal, fratricide, fraternity) decline:

pater, patris, *a father*, m. (paternal, patrimony, patricide, patron, patrician).
māter, mātris, *a mother*, f. (maternal, matrimony, matricide, matron).

137. Translate: 1. Clāmōrī, honōribus, labōrem, viātōris.
 2. Imperātor (vocative), ārdōre, auctōrēs, colōris. 3. Odōrum, terrōrēs, sorōribus, amor (vocative). 4. Imperātōrī, labōre, colōrum, terrōrem. 5. Sorōris, frātrēs, mātrum, Caesare, patribus.

138. Translate: 1. Affections, by shouts, for a brother, of

* NOTE.—Proper nouns are rarely declined in the plural.

THE NOUN

Caesar, with colors. 2. In a burning heat, of an odor, authors of volumes, great fright.

Write exercises using the English derivatives.

139.

Corpus, corporis, a body, n.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	corpus, <i>a body, n.</i>	corpora, <i>bodies</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	corporis	corporum
<i>Dat.</i>	corpori	corporibus
<i>Acc.</i>	corpus	corpora
<i>Voc.</i>	corpus	corpora
<i>Abl.</i>	corpore	corporibus

140. Like **corpus** (corporate, incorporate, corporeal) decline:

genus, generis, a kind, breed, species, n. (genial, genuine, gentle, ingenuity).

onus, oneris, a load, burden, n. (onus, onerous, exonerate).

pectus, pectoris, the breast, n. (pectoral, expectorate, parapet).

frigus, frigoris, cold, n. (frigid, refrigerator).

opus, operis, a work, n. (operate, coöperate).

rūs, rūris, the countryside, n. (rural, rustic, rusticate).

iūs, iūris, the law, n. (jurist, jurisprudence, injustice, adjust).

mūnus, mūneris, a task, service, n. (remunerate, remuneration, municipal, common, immunity).

tempus, temporis, time, n. (extempore, temporal, temporary).

141. Translate: 1. Corpus, pectore, frīgora, operibus. 2. Iūra, rūri,* rūris, temporibus. 3. Oneris, genere, mūnerum. 4. In corpore, ex tempore, opera agricolārum. 5. Genus

* NOTE.—The form **rūri** (in the country) is the locative case of **rūs**, the country. The **locative case**, which in very old Latin expressed place **in which**, was discarded by the Latins except in certain very common words, like **rūs** (country) and **domus** (house), and *in the names of cities*: **Rōmae**, at Rome; **Athēnis**, at Athens; **Corinthi**, at Corinth; **Delphīs**, at Delphi; **Carthāgini**, at Carthage. Locate these cities. Why were they famous?

APPLIED LATIN

hominum, iūs nātiōnum, pectus leōnis. 6. Equus māgnum onus portāvit.

Translate: 1. Of bodies, by cold, in the breast, kinds of men. 2. Works, the laws of the land, in the country, the tasks of the consul, without burdens.

142. EXAMPLES OF THE USE OF DERIVATIVES.—1. There are good and bad corporations. 2. They say cherry pectoral allays expectoration. 3. The Pope lost his temporal powers in 1870. 4. Let us rusticate temporarily. 5. The prisoner was exonerated. 6. Breastworks are often called parapets. 7. Life is hardly endurable in the frigid zones. 8. The onus of the blame rested on the inhabitants of a remote municipality. 9. Vaccination brings to most people immunity from small-pox.

Write sentences using the derivatives above.

143.	Aetās, aetātis, <i>age</i> , f.	Vōx, vōcis, <i>the voice</i> , f.
	SINGULAR	SINGULAR
<i>Nom.</i>	aetās, <i>age</i> , f.	vōx, <i>the voice</i> , f.
<i>Gen.</i>	aetātis	vōcis
<i>Dat.</i>	aetātī	vōcī
<i>Acc.</i>	aetātem	vōcem
<i>Voc.</i>	aetās	vōx
<i>Abl.</i>	aetāte	vōce
	PLURAL	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	aetātēs, <i>ages</i>	vōcēs, <i>voices</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	aetātum	vōcum
<i>Dat.</i>	aetātibus	vōcibus
<i>Acc.</i>	aetātēs	vōcēs
<i>Voc.</i>	aetātēs	vōcēs
<i>Abl.</i>	aetātibus	vōcibus

THE NOUN

144. Like *aetās* decline:

calamitās, calamitātis, a disaster, f. (calamity, calamitous).

necessitās, necessitātis, need, f. (necessity, necessary).

auctōritās, auctōritātis, authority, f.

aestās, aestātis, the summer, f.

cīvitās, cīvitātis, a state, f. (civic, civilian).

hūmānitās, hūmānitātis, humanity, f. (humanitarian)

libertās, libertātis, freedom, f. (liberty).

nōbilitās, nōbilitātis, nobility, f.

mīles, mīlitis, a soldier, m. (military, militia, militarism).

quiēs, quiētis, rest, f. (quiet, requiem, acquiesce, coy).

virtūs, virtūtis, valor, f. (virtue, virtuous).

145. Like *vōx* (voice, vocal, invoke, provoke) decline:

dux, ducis, a leader, m. (duke, duchess, ducal, duchy)

lūx, lūcis, light, f. (lucid, translucent).

pāx, pācis, peace, f. (pacify, peaceful).

lēx, lēgis, a law, f. (legal, legislature).

rēx, rēgis, a king, m. (regal, regalia, reign, realm).

146. Translate: 1. Because of need. By authority. In states. Against humanity. 2. Without liberty. With nobility. Among the soldiers. In sleep. 3. For leaders. The light of the sun. Peace adorns a nation. The king is well. The woman's voice. The ages of men.

Write sentences using the derivatives above.

147.

Urbs, urbis, a city, f.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	urbs, <i>a city, f.</i>	urbēs, <i>cities</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	urbis	urbium
<i>Dat.</i>	urbī	urbibus
<i>Acc.</i>	urbem	urbēs
<i>Voc.</i>	urbs	urbēs
<i>Abl.</i>	urbe	urbibus

148. Like **urbs** (urban, urbane, suburban) decline:

pars, partis, *a part*, f. (impart, partition).

ars, artis, *an art*, f. (art, artist, artistic, artificial, inert, artisan).

gēns, gentis, *a tribe*, f. (gentile).

frōns, frontis, *the forehead*, f. (front, frontal, frontispiece).

dēns, dentis, *a tooth*, m. (dental, dentist, dentifrice, dandelion).

pōns, pontis, *a bridge*, m. (pontoon, pontiff).

mōns, montis, *a mountain*, m. (Montana, mountainous, mountaineer).

fōns, fontis, *a fountain*, m. (font, fountain).

mēns, mentis, *the mind*, f. (mental, mentality, demented).

149. Translate: 1. Urbī, partium, virtūtēs gentis. 2. Artēs, frōns leōnis, pontibus, dente, ad fontem aquae. 3. Mēns iram superat. 4. Pontēs in flūmine māgnō vidēbunt. 5. In margine fontis manēbunt. 6. Imāginem sōlis in aquā vidēmus. 7. Pars turbae in oppidō mānsit. 8. Agricola māgnū numerum servōrum habet. 9. Partem urbis mīlitibus plēvimus.

Notice the *genitive cases following* **pars** (7) and **numerus** (8).

150. RULE.—**Partitive Genitive.** *The genitive denoting the whole from which a part is taken is called the partitive genitive.*

151. EXAMPLES OF THE USE OF DERIVATIVES.—1. We live in the suburbs. 2. The artist imparts life to his pictures. 3. The frontal bone was fractured. 4. Dentifrice is a preparation which dentists prescribe for dental ills. 5. Robinson is a Gentile name. 6. We admire mental ability in our fellow men. 7. The bridge was made of seven pontoons. 8. Montana is so called from its high mountains. 9. The child was baptized at a marble font.

QUIZ.—Explain the use of the partitive genitive. What kind of words are found before this use of the genitive?

THE NOUN

152. **Civis, civis, a citizen, m.** **Nūbēs, nūbis, a cloud, f.**

SINGULAR		SINGULAR	
<i>Nom.</i>	cīvis, a citizen, m.	<i>Nom.</i>	nūbēs, a cloud, f.
<i>Gen.</i>	cīvis	<i>Gen.</i>	nūbis
<i>Dat.</i>	cīvī	<i>Dat.</i>	nūbī
<i>Acc.</i>	cīvem	<i>Acc.</i>	nūbem
<i>Voc.</i>	cīvis	<i>Voc.</i>	nūbēs
<i>Abl.</i>	cīve (ī)	<i>Abl.</i>	nūbe

PLURAL		PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i>	cīvēs, citizens	<i>Nom.</i>	nūbēs, clouds
<i>Gen.</i>	cīvium	<i>Gen.</i>	nūbium
<i>Dat.</i>	cīvibus	<i>Dat.</i>	nūbibus
<i>Acc.</i>	cīvēs (īs)	<i>Acc.</i>	nūbēs (īs)
<i>Voc.</i>	cīvēs	<i>Voc.</i>	nūbēs
<i>Abl.</i>	cīvibus	<i>Abl.</i>	nūbibus

153. Like **civis** decline:

avis, -is, a bird, f. (aviary).
orbis, -is, a circle, m. (orbit, orb, exorbitant).
turris, -is, a tower, f. (turret, tower). (**-im, acc.**)
vestis, -is, a garment, f. (vestment, vest, vesture).
collis, -is, a hill, m.
ignis, -is, a fire, m. (ignite, ignition).
nāvis, -is, a ship, f. (navy, naval, nautical, nave).
classis, -is, a fleet, f.
finis, -is, an end, m. (final, finish, definite).
hostis, -is, an enemy, m. (hostile, hostility).

Like **nūbēs** decline:

vallēs, -is, a valley, f. (vale)
caedēs, -is, a massacre, f.
clādēs, -is, a defeat, f.
rūpēs, -is, a rock, crag, f.
sēdēs, -is, a seat, f. (siege, sedate, insidious).

154. Most nouns of the third declension have stems ending in a consonant; the third declension nouns above, however, have stems ending in the vowel **i**. Nouns like **civis** and **nūbēs** differ from **cōnsul** in declension as follows: 1. They end in **is** (or **ēs**) in the nominative singular. 2. They have the same number of syllables in both the nominative and genitive singular. 3. Some have an accusative singular in **-im** (**turrim**). 4. Some have an ablative singular in **-ī** as well as in **-e** (**nāvī**). 5. All have **-ium**

not **-um** in the genitive plural. 6. They sometimes have **-is** for **-ēs** in the accusative plural.

The nouns of Paragraphs 147-148 and 157-159 are **-i** stems. In the words of 147-148 this is shown *only* in the genitive plural.

155. Translate, noting all possible cases: 1. *Avis, collis, finis, rūpēs, nāvis.* 2. *Clādī, sēdī, hostī, vallī, caedī.* 3. *Nūbem, avem, collem, finem, rūpem.* 4. *Nāvī, cīvī, orbe, turri, veste.* 5. *Classēs, clādēs, sēdēs, hostēs, vallēs.* 6. *Caedium, nūbium, avium, collium, finium.* 7. *Rūpibus, nāvibus, cīvibus, orbibus, turribus.*

156. Translate: 1. *In colle turrīm vīdistī.* 2. *Post nūbēs sōl manēbat.* 3. *Avēs in silvā clāmāvērunt.* 4. *Cōsulēs populum cīvītātis laudābunt.* 5. *Sōl orbem terrārum* (the world) *spectat.* 6. *Vestēs fēminārum portābimus.* 7. *Propter frīgus hiemīs ignem in aedificiō habuimus.*

Compose sentences using the English derivatives in ¶ 153.

157.	Sedile, sedilis, a seat, n.	Animal, animālis, an animal, n.
	SINGULAR	SINGULAR
<i>Nom.</i>	sedile, a seat, n.	animal, an animal, n.
<i>Gen.</i>	sedilis	animālis
<i>Dat.</i>	sedilī	animālī
<i>Acc.</i>	sedile	animal
<i>Voc.</i>	sedile	animal
<i>Abl.</i>	sedilī	animālī
	PLURAL	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	sedilia, seats	animālia, animals
<i>Gen.</i>	sedilium	animālium
<i>Dat.</i>	sedilibus	animālibus
<i>Acc.</i>	sedilia	animālia
<i>Voc.</i>	sedilia	animālia
<i>Abl.</i>	sedilibus	animālibus

THE NOUN

158. Like **sedīle**, **sedīlis**, *a seat*, n., decline:

cubile, **cubīlis**, *a den, couch, bed*, n.

mare, **maris**, *the sea*, n. (transmarine, submarine, maritime, marsh, marigold, mariner).

conclāve, **conclāvis**, *a suite of rooms*, n. (conclave).

159. Like **animal** (animalism) decline:

vectīgal, **vectīgālis**, *a tax*, n.

tribūnal, **tribūnālis**, *a tribunal*, n.

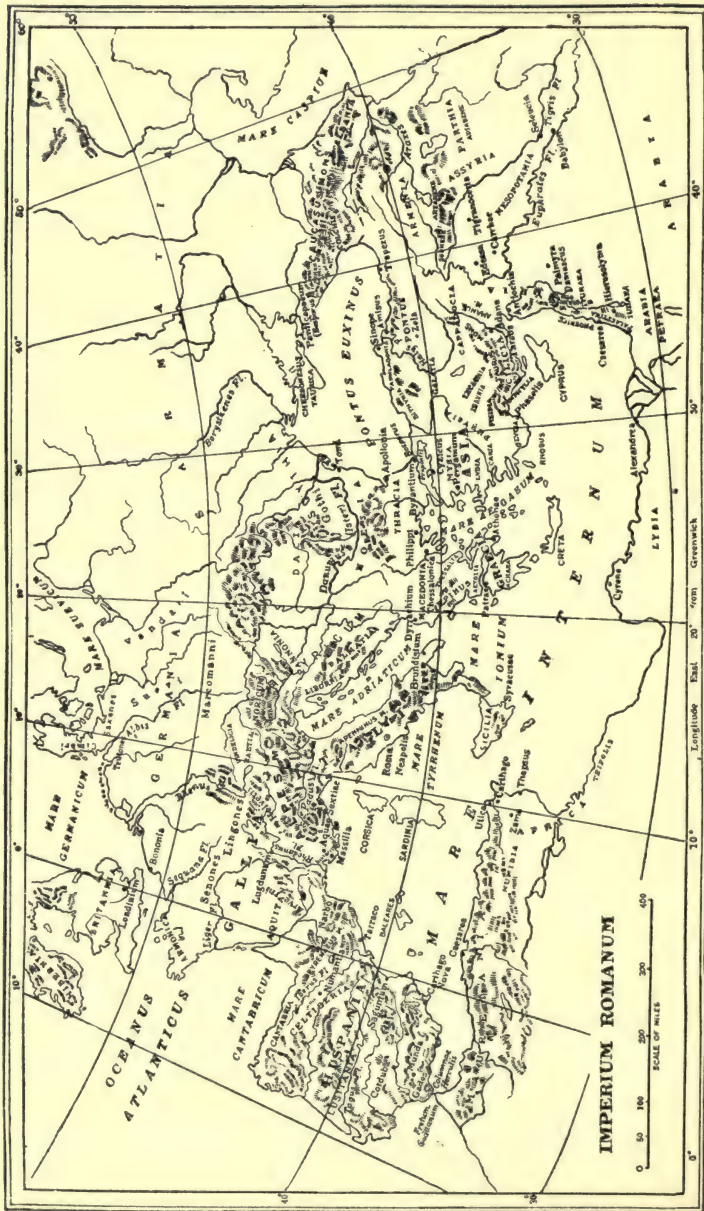
160. Translate, noting all possible cases: 1. **Marī**, **animālis**, **cubīlia**, **sedīlium**, **conclāvibus**. 2. **Vectīgal**, **tribūnālium**, **maria**, **vectīgālī**, **maribus**. 3. **Classem cōsulis in marī vīdimus**. 4. **Legiō partem insulae tenēbat**. 5. **In cubilī leō tacēbat**. 6. **Aestāte*** **avēs praedam ad silvās portant**. 7. **Hieme militēs in castrīs manēbunt**. 8. **Cōsulēs vectīgālia tenuērunt**.

*Notice the ablatives **aestāte** (6) and **hieme** (7), indicating *time when or within which*.

161. RULE.—**Ablative of Time When or Within Which.**
—*Time when or within which is expressed in Latin by the ablative without a preposition.*

162. EXAMPLES OF THE USE OF DERIVATIVES.—1. The color was ultramarine. 2. The problem of the submarine has caused great trouble in the present world war. 3. The prisoner stood before the tribunal of the judge. 4. At the edge of the marsh grew the marigold. 5. The cardinals in conclave at Rome chose the Pope. 6. The mariners were engaged in transmarine trade. 7. We deplore all evidences of animalism in our age of civilization.

QUIZ.—Explain the ablative of *time when or within which*.



LATIUM, THE HOME OF THE LATINS

Latium, THE HOME OF THE LATINS

When the Latins finally stopped their wanderings and found a permanent home, the land of which they possessed themselves lay along the **Tiber**, and was given the name of **Latium**. **Latium** stretched southward from the **Tiber** to a small range of hills called the **Alban mountains**. In this territory were located a number of villages which joined in a confederacy for protection. The enemy which they especially feared was the **Etruscan** nation. Against this foe a fortress was built at that point on the banks of the Tiber river, where, later, the great city of Rome stood.

There were seven small hills at this point, which gave great strength to the fortress, and made it easy to prevent the Etruscans from crossing the river by means of the island which lay in the river at this point. Across the river was a tall hill called **Janiculum**, which the Latins quickly occupied, and turned into an outer fortification. The capital city of **Latium** was at first **Alba Longa**, situated in the **Alban mountains**, but the fortress at Rome soon became more important than the capital, and the seat of government was transferred there.

When the Romans began the conquest of the tribes around the city, they first set out toward the south. After the march of the army, the Romans built great military roads for the rapid movement of troops. The first great road (**Via Appia**) led toward **Capua** from the gate in the walls of Rome called **Porta Capēna**. This road was later

APPLIED LATIN

extended to the city of **Brundisium**, and was the main road for all travellers to the East. The **Via Latina** (through **Latium**) followed. To the north the **Via Flāminia**, to which was added the **Via Aemilia**, led to the plain of the **Po** river. The **Via Aurēlia** skirted the shore on the way to **Spain**.

VIII. THE ADJECTIVE. THIRD DECLENSION

163.

fēlix , <i>happy</i> .	omnis , <i>all, every</i> .	brevis , <i>brief, short</i> .
audāx , <i>bold</i> .	facilis , <i>easy</i> .	ācer , <i>keen, sharp</i> .
atrōx , <i>fierce</i> .	fortis , <i>brave</i> .	celer , <i>swift</i> .
sagāx , <i>wise, shrewd</i> .	gravis , <i>heavy</i> .	equester , <i>equestrian</i> .
vēlōx , <i>fleet, swift</i> .	immortālis , <i>immortal</i> .	
recēns , <i>recent</i> .	insīgnis , <i>remarkable</i> ,	
praesēns , <i>present</i> .	<i>distinguished</i> .	

164. You have learned that adjectives, through constant use with nouns, came to be declined precisely like nouns. For this reason, then, many adjectives were declined like nouns of the first and second declensions; and many like nouns of the third declension. The adjectives above are third declension adjectives.

165. Third declension adjectives are divided into *three groups*: adjectives of *one termination*, *two terminations*, and *three terminations*. These groups are so named because, *in the nominative singular*, those of one termination have but *one form for all three genders*. For instance, the form **fēlix** may be used with a *masculine, feminine, or neuter* noun. In a two termination adjective, like **omnis**, there is a form **omnis**, which is used with a masculine or a feminine noun, and a form **omne**, which is used with a neuter noun. Adjectives

THE ADJECTIVE

of three terminations have a *separate* form for each gender.

Learn the meanings of the adjectives given above.

166. WORD STUDY.—Can you tell the Latin words from which these English derivatives come: velocipede, presentable, sagacity, celerity, fortitude, insignia, acrimonious, brevity, atrocity, facility, mortality, recent, audacity, equestrienne, accelerator, gravity, felicitous, omnibus, sage, represent, omnipotent, presage, omniscient, effort, force, comfort, grievous, gravitation, abbreviate, acrid?

Do you know the meaning of these words so well that you can use them in sentences?

QUIZ.—What are the different types of adjectives? What are the classes of adjectives of the third declension? How are they distinguished?

167.	Fēlix, <i>happy</i>		Recēns, <i>recent</i>	
	SINGULAR		SINGULAR	
	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	fēlix	fēlix	recēns	recēns
<i>Gen.</i>	fēlicis	fēlicis	recentis	recentis
<i>Dat.</i>	fēlicī	fēlicī	recentī	recentī
<i>Acc.</i>	fēlicem	fēlix	recentem	recēns
<i>Voc.</i>	fēlix	fēlix	recēns	recēns
<i>Abl.</i>	fēlice (ī)	fēlice (ī)	recente (ī)	recente (ī)
	PLURAL		PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i>	fēlicēs	fēlicia	recentēs	recentia
<i>Gen.</i>	fēlicium	fēlicium	recentium	recentium
<i>Dat.</i>	fēlicibus	fēlicibus	recentibus	recentibus
<i>Acc.</i>	fēlicēs (īs)	fēlicia	recentēs (īs)	recentia
<i>Voc.</i>	fēlicēs	fēlicia	recentēs	recentia
<i>Abl.</i>	fēlicibus	fēlicibus	recentibus	recentibus

168. Remember that *one termination adjectives have two forms in the ablative singular*. The accusative plural masculine and feminine may end in **-īs** instead of **-ēs**.

169. Like **fēlix** decline the adjectives in **-x** of Paragraph 163 and also

efficāx, *efficient* (efficacious, efficacy).

fāllāx, *treacherous, deceitful* (fallacious, fallible, infallibility).

loquāx, *talkative* (loquacious, loquacity).

rapāx, *thievish* (rapacious, rape, rapine, rapacity).

170. Like **recēns** decline:

diligēns, *careful* (diligent).

ēlegāns, *elegant* (elegance).

frequēns, *frequent* (frequent (verb), frequency, infrequent).

clēmēns, *mild* (clement, clemency, inclement).

ingēns, *huge*.

sapiēns, *wise* (sapient, insipid).

vehemēns, *violent* (vehemence, vehement).

171. Decline in full, with the rule about the agreement of adjectives in mind: 1. Nātūra fēlix, caedēs recēns, servus loquāx, avis rapāx, dōnum ēlegāns.

172. Translate, noting all possible cases: 1. Diligēns, frequentem, sapientēs, ingentī, vehementibus. 2. Rapācēs, loquācium, recente, ēlegantem.

173. Translate: 1. Homō fēlix filiōs diligentēs amat. 2. Viātōrēs clādem atrōcem in valle vīdērunt. 3. Leō ingēns in rūpe sedēbat. 4. Virī sapientēs inter loquācēs amīcōs tacent. 5. Vehemēns fili īra patrem terruit. 6. Clēmēns imperātor amōrem mīlitum habet.

Write sentences using the derivatives above.

QUIZ.—What have you learned about adjectives like **fēlix**?

THE ADJECTIVE

174.

Fortis, forte, brave

SINGULAR

	<i>M. F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	fortis, brave	forte
<i>Gen.</i>	fortis	fortis
<i>Dat.</i>	fortī	fortī
<i>Acc.</i>	fortem	forte
<i>Voc.</i>	fortis	forte
<i>Abl.</i>	fortī	fortī

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	fortēs	fortia
<i>Gen.</i>	fortium	fortium
<i>Dat.</i>	fortibus	fortibus
<i>Acc.</i>	fortēs (-īs)	fortia
<i>Voc.</i>	fortēs	fortia
<i>Abl.</i>	fortibus	fortibus

175. The great majority of third declension adjectives follow the declension of **fortis**. There are only a few like **fēlix**, and still fewer like **ācer**. Take great pains in learning **fortis**. Note especially that the *ablative singular* has but *one form*, and that *this form ends in ī*:

176. Like **fortis** practise the declension of

fragilis, -e, frail (fragile).

nōbilis, -e, noble (nobility).

illūstris, -e, remarkable (illustrious).

commūnis, -e, common (community, commons).

facilis, -e, easy (facile, facility).

fertilis, -e, fertile (fertilize).

levis, -e, light (levity, levitation, irrelevant, alleviate, relief).

militāris, -e, military (militia).

nāvālis, -e, naval.

terribilis, -e, terrible.

trīstis, -e, sad.

ūtilis, -e, useful (utility, utilitarian).

177. Decline in full: mīles terribilis, opus facile, ager fertilis, pūgna nāvālis, victōria illūstris.

178. Translate: 1. Pontibus fragilibus, virginum nōbīlium, nōmen illūstre. 2. Somnō levī, glōriae mīlitāris, artem ūtilem, anima trīstis. 3. Caesar omnēs imperātōrēs virtūte* superāvit. 4. In cubīlī leōnēs terrōre* mānsērunt. 5. Avēs sagācēs hiemem ventīs vehementibus timent. 6. Commūnī periculō* omnēs socii bellum parābant. 7. Praesidium audāciā* hostium auximus.

* Note the ablative cases in these sentences. They express the *cause or reason for action*.

179. RULE.—**Ablative of Cause.**—*Cause may be expressed in Latin by the ablative case without a preposition.*

This use of the ablative is often replaced by the use of the prepositions **ob** or **propter**, followed by the accusative; or by the prepositions **dē** or **ex**, followed by the ablative.

180. Pick out the Latin derivatives in these English sentences: 1. We should pity frailty. 2. Germany is charged with militarism, England with navalism. 3. Do you attack difficult problems with fortitude? 4. No man should think illustrious deeds ignoble. 5. Farmers use many preparations for fertilizing the fields.

QUIZ.—How is *cause* expressed in Latin? In what other ways can cause be expressed? Review the derivatives of third declension adjectives.

THE ADJECTIVE

181. **Acer, ācris, ācre, sharp, keen**

SINGULAR

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	ācer, <i>keen, sharp</i>	ācris	ācre
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris
<i>Dat.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
<i>Voc.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre
<i>Abl.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Gen.</i>	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrēs (-īs)	ācrēs (-īs)	ācria
<i>Voc.</i>	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Abl.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

182. Though the forms of each gender are given completely, note that in *quite a few cases the forms of the masculine, feminine, and neuter of ācer are the same*. Note especially that the ablative singular of adjectives, like **ācer**, has but one form, and that this form ends in the letter **ī**.

183. Practise the declension of **ācer**, using the adjectives:

celeber, -bris, -bre, *famous* (celebrate, celebrity).

celer, celeris, celere, *swift* (accelerate, accelerator).

pedester, -tris, -tre, *on foot, pedestrian*.

silvester, -tris, -tre, *wooded*.

terrester, -tris, -tre, *belonging to the earth* (terrestrial).

184. Decline in full: equus ācer, poēta celebr, nāvis celeris, imperium terrestre.

185. Translate: 1. Clāmōrēs ācrēs loca silvestria plēbant.
2. Flūmen vēlōx pontem ingentem superāvit. 3. Carmina

immōrtālia poētārum rēgēs antīquōs mōvērunt. 4. Initiō pugnae cōpiaē pedestrēs silvās dēnsās plēbant.

Translate: In a wooded place. Before the famous temple. Among pedestrian forces. Beyond the kingdoms of the earth. Sharp cold. A celebrated state.

186. EXAMPLES OF THE USE OF DERIVATIVES.—1. The life of the wealthy man is not always felicitous. 2. Vinegar has an acrid taste to some people. 3. An accelerator increases the speed of the automobile. 4. We speak of celestial and terrestrial regions. 5. Silvester was a saint of the early church. 6. The word vinegar is formed from **vīnum** and **ācer**.

QUIZ.—What facts must you specially note about third declension adjectives of three terminations?

IX. THE VERB. THIRD CONJUGATION

187.

agō, *I set in motion; I drive;*

cēdō, *I make a motion; I go away; I yield;*

dīcō, *I say, I state;*

dūcō, *I lead;*

mittō, *I send;*

petō, *I seek;*

pōnō, *I put or place;*

pellō, *I push back; I drive back;*

regō, *I rule;*

vertō, *I turn;*

agere, *to set in motion; to drive.*

cēdere, *to make a motion; to go away; to yield.*

dicere, *to say, state.*

dūcere, *to lead.*

mittere, *to send.*

petere, *to seek.*

pōnere, *to put or place.*

pellere, *to push back or drive back.*

regere, *to rule.*

vertere, *to turn.*

188. Verbs of the third conjugation can be recognized by the form of the infinitive. This form always ends in **ere**, the first **e** of which is short. Further, the first principal part

THE VERB

never has the vowel **e** before the final letter **ō**, as all second conjugation verbs do (**moneō**).

189. WORD STUDY.—Not only are verbs of this conjugation *very common* in Latin, but the roots of these verbs are found in *a great number of English words*, verbs, nouns, adjectives, etc.

Agō appears in the words

action, actual, actor, actress, cogent, enact, exact, agitate, agile, agent, agency, react, interact, inaction, transact, retroact, act.

Cēdō gives us

cede, cession, cessation, concede, recede, success, recess, precede, proceed, procession, intercede, exceed, excess, incessant, process.

Dīcō underlies

dictionary, diction, dictate, contradict, edict, male-diction, predict, verdict, indict, dictum.

Dūcō appears in the words

duke, conduct, conductor, reduce, reduction, abduct, conduce, deduce, ducat, duchy, introduce, produce, product.

Mittō gives us

mission, missionary, dismiss, omit, permit, transmit, submit, admit, intermission, missile, promise, emissary.

Try to make out the meanings of these words. Learn how to spell them and talk over the proper uses with your teacher.

QUIZ.—How can third conjugation verbs be identified?

APPLIED LATIN

190. DŪCŌ.—Active Voice—Indicative Mood

SINGULAR		Present Tense	PLURAL
1. dūco, <i>I lead</i>			1. dūcimus, <i>we lead</i>
2. dūcis, <i>you lead</i>			2. dūcitis, <i>you lead</i>
3. dūcit, <i>he (she, it) leads</i>			3. dūcunt, <i>they lead</i>
		Imperfect Tense	
1. dūcēbam, <i>I was leading</i>			1. dūcēbāmus, <i>we were leading</i>
2. dūcēbās, <i>you were leading</i>			2. dūcēbātis, <i>you were leading</i>
3. dūcēbat, <i>he (she, it) was leading</i>			3. dūcēbant, <i>they were leading</i>
		Future Tense	
1. dūcam, <i>I shall lead</i>			1. dūcēmus, <i>we shall lead</i>
2. dūcēs, <i>you will lead</i>			2. dūcētis, <i>you will lead</i>
3. dūcet, <i>he (she, it) will lead</i>			3. dūcent, <i>they will lead</i>

191. Practise these tenses, using the verbs given in Paragraph 187. Be specially careful with the *future tenses*. The **future** tense of the **first** and **second** conjugations ends in **-bō** in the *first person singular*; the **future** tense of the **third** and **fourth** conjugations ends in **-am** in the *first person singular*. Note this difference with great care.

192. Translate these verb forms: 1. Agō, cēdit, dīcitis, dūcis, mittunt, petimus, pōnis, pellunt, regitis, vertimus. 2. Regēbat, pellēbam, pōnēbāmus, petēbās, mittēbant, dūcēbās, dīcēbātis, cēdēbant, agēbātis, vertēbat. 3. Mittent, petam, pōnēmus, pellēs, regētis, vertēmus, agent, cēdet, dīcam, dūcent.

WORD STUDY:

193. **Petō** gives us the root of these words:

appetite, compete, competition, impetuous, repeat, petulant, competent, impetus.

Pōnō appears in the words

pose, position, positive, deposit, decompose, impose, expose, transpose, opponent, opposite, propose, posture, compose, compositor, exposition.

THE VERB

Pellō gives us

compel, repel, expel, impel, repellant, propel, pulse, impulse, repulse, propulsion, compulsion, expulsion, propeller, repulsive, impulsive.

Regō supplies us with

regent, regal, reign, royal, regimen, direct, regulate, rector, regiment, incorrect, rectify, erect, regular, regalia, interregnum.

Vertō underlies

avert, revert, convert, pervert, subvert, invert, divert, vertical, versatile, vertigo.

Try to make these words your own possessions. Use them in sentences. Talk them over in the class.

194.

cadō, *I fall*;

currō, *I run*;

iungō, *I join*;

premō, *I press hard*; *I overwhelm*;

quaerō, *I ask*;

rumpō, *I break*;

scribō, *I write*;

tegō, *I cover*;

trahō, *I draw*;

tangō, *I touch*;

cadere, *to fall*.

currere, *to run*.

iungere, *to join*.

premere, *to press hard, overwhelm*.

quaerere, *to ask*.

rumpere, *to break*.

scribere, *to write*.

tegere, *to cover*.

trahere, *to draw*.

tangere, *to touch*.

195. Learn these verbs, and practise them in the tenses already given.

196. Translate: 1. Aquam clāram tangō. 2. Turris dē monte cadit. 3. Caesar sīgnum veste tegit. 4. Scientiam cum cūrā iungimus. 5. Ancoram ingentem ex aquā trahitis. 6. Militēs ad fossam* currunt. 7. Hostem barbarum premēbam. 8. Nōmen urbis ab homine quaerēbās. 9. Ventus vėlōx

APPLIED LATIN

nūbēs rumpēbat. 10. Ad vīcum* currēbāmus. 11. Scūtum sine auxiliō trahēbātis. 12. Agricolaē fontēs cum flūmine iungēbant. 13. In īgnem* cadam. 14. Servum rūs* dūcēbās. 15. Somnus militēs in castrīs premet. 16. Litterās brevēs scribēmus. 17. Viam ā viātōribus quaerētis. 18. Equī celerēs virum circum oppidum trahent.

* In these sentences you find some instances of the accusative case introduced by **ad** or **in** expressing the *place to which*.

197. RULE.—Accusative of Place to Which.—*Place to which is expressed by the accusative with ad or in. Names of cities (Rōma), also rūs, the countryside, and domus, a house, omit the preposition.*

198. Translate: 1. We shall turn the huge ship. 2. You were ruling the brave allies. 3. The servants will drive the horses. 4. We put heavy burdens upon the men. 5. You were asking the name of the street. 6. The brothers will send gifts to (their) father. 7. We were leading the citizens into the temple. 8. You state the cause. 9. The birds will go away in winter. 10. I am sending the sisters from the city. 11. The sun was driving away the cold. 12. The forests will cover the mountains. 13. We shall go away from the river. 14. You were asking the classes of animals. 15. The sailors are leading the captives to Caesar. 16. I was driving a treacherous lion. 17. You rule provinces covered with woods. 18. All the men will send roses.

In your English reader find ten words derived from Latin.

QUIZ.—How is *place to which* expressed in Latin? Are there any exceptions? Why do you think the preposition

THE VERB

was omitted with the words mentioned in the rule? What can you say about the sentence, "I am going home."

199. DŪCŌ.—Active Voice—Indicative Mood

SINGULAR	Perfect Tense	PLURAL
1. dūxī, <i>I have led</i>		1. dūximus, <i>we have led</i>
2. dūxistī, <i>you have led</i>		2. dūxistis, <i>you have led</i>
3. dūxit, <i>he (she, it) has led</i>		3. dūxērunt, <i>they have led</i>
<i>Pluperfect Tense</i>		
1. dūxeram, <i>I had led</i>		1. dūxerāmus, <i>we had led</i>
2. dūxerās, <i>you had led</i>		2. dūxerātis, <i>you had led</i>
3. dūxerat, <i>he (she, it) had led</i>		3. dūxerant, <i>they had led</i>
<i>Future Perfect Tense</i>		
1. dūxerō, <i>I shall have led</i>		1. dūxerimus, <i>we shall have led</i>
2. dūxeris, <i>you will have led</i>		2. dūxeritis, <i>you will have led</i>
3. dūxerit, <i>he (she, it) will have led</i>		3. dūxerint, <i>they will have led</i>

200. Before practising these tenses, it is necessary to learn the principal parts of the verbs already given:

I	II	III	IV
agō,	agere,	ēgī,	āctus.
cēdō,	cēdere,	cēssī,	cessum.
dīcō,	dīcere,	dīxī,	dictus.
dūcō,	dūcere,	dūxī,	ductus.
mittō,	mittere,	mīsī,	missus.
petō,	petere,	petīvī,	petītus.
pōnō,	pōnere,	posuī,	positus.
pellō,	pellere,	pepulī,	pulsus.
regō,	regere,	rēxī,	rēctus.
vertō,	vertere,	vertī,	versus.
cadō,	cadere,	cecidī,	cāsum.
currō,	currere,	cucurrī,	cursum.
iungō,	iungere,	iūnxī,	iūctus.
premō,	premere,	pressī,	pressus.
quaerō,	quaerere,	quaesīvī,	quaesītus.
rumpō,	rumpere,	rūpī,	ruptus.
scribō,	scribere,	scripsī,	scriptus.
tegō,	tegere,	tēxī,	tēctus.
trahō,	trahere,	trāxī,	trāctus.
tangō,	tangere,	tetigī,	tāctus.

201. Practise the three tenses of Paragraph 199, using the verbs given above.

Try to determine from which principal part the English words of Paragraph 193 are derived.

202. WORD STUDY.—We have the following English derivatives from:

cadō: cadence, casual, occasion, coincide, accident, deciduous.

currō: current, currency, occur, incur, course, cursive, recur.

iungō: join, joint, juncture, junction, injunction, rejoinder.

premō: press, pressure, compress, repress, express, impress, oppress, suppress.

quaerō: inquire, inquest, request, query, question, require, perquisite, acquire, exquisite.

Use these derivatives in sentences of your own construction.

203. Translate these expressions into English: 1. Cecidit, cucurristis, iūnxī, pressistī. 2. Quaesivērunt, rūpimus, scrīpsistī. 3. Tēxērunt, trāxistis, tetigimus. 4. Rūperat, scrīpseram, ceciderāmus, presserās. 5. Tēxerant, tetigerās, trāxerātis. 6. Iūnxerant, cucurrerat, quaesiverātis. 7. Trāxerint, presserō, scrīpserimus, iūnxeris. 8. Cecideritis, quaesiverimus. 9. Cucurrerit, rūperint, tetigeris, tēxerō.

204. TRANSLATE

1. Bonam vītam ēgī.

2. Ex agrō cessistī.

TRANSLATE

1. We shall have fallen into the flames.

2. You had run to the spring.

THE VERB

TRANSLATE

3. Cōsul nōmen urbis dixit.
4. Populum clārum dūximus.
5. Litterās longās mīstis.
6. Dōna grāta petivērunt.
7. Volūmen parvum in aedificiō posueram.
8. Lēgātōs illūstrēs pepulerās.
9. Omnēs terrās gladiō rēxerat.
10. Caput leōnis verterāmus.
11. Iūn_xerātis.
12. Imperātor milītēs ācrēs in proelium dūxerat.
13. Ōmen bonum dixerō.
14. Ab hostibus vėlōcibus cesseris.
15. Calamitās nātiōnem ēgerit.
16. Nāvēs celerēs verterimus.
17. Rēgna lāta rēxeritis.
18. Corōnās in capitibus posuerint.

TRANSLATE

3. The leaders had sought the camp of Caesar.
4. They have joined wine with water.
5. You had repressed the crowd.
6. The soldiers will have broken the swords.
7. We had written a long letter.
8. You have covered the fields with grain.
9. They will have drawn the ship from the sea.
10. I have touched the fierce animal.
11. You will have sought the poet.
12. The sister had covered (her) head with a garment.
13. We shall have fallen from the rock.
14. You had joined shouts with terror.
15. The clouds have touched the earth.
16. I had run to (my) mother.
17. You will have repressed the boldness of the legions.
18. The slave will have broken the arrows.

205. WORD STUDY.—In English we have from:

rumpō: rupture, eruption, abrupt, interrupt, rumple, bankrupt, disrupt, corruption.

scribō: scribe, scrivener, scripture, scribble, describe, inscribe, subscribe, prescribe.

tegō: detect, detective, protect, protection, tegument, protégé.

APPLIED LATIN

trahō: attract, abstract, detract, trail, train, tract, trace, retract, contract, distract.

tangō: tact, tangent, tangible, tangle, intact, contact.

Try to make out the meaning of these derivatives, and talk them over in class.

THE CITIES OF ITALY*

Though we are chiefly interested in the story of the city of **Rome** and of its inhabitants, we must not forget that there were other cities in Italy which played a great part in the history of Roman greatness. Just south of the **Alps**, in the plain of the **Po**, were a number of important cities. **Mediolānum** (*medioplānum, middle of the plain*) is today Milan; **Placentia** (*placeō, the pleasing city*) is Piacenza. **Cremōna**, an important city in antiquity, was in the late Middle Ages the home of renowned violin makers. The city of **Mantua** has become immortal because the great Latin poet **Vergil** was born there. On the banks of the **Arnus** river stood **Pisa**, famous today because of its Leaning Tower, and **Flōrentia** (*flōreō, the flourishing city*), which today is eternally lovely Florence. South of the **Liris** river was situated **Capua**, long the second city of Italy. This city **Hannibal**, the great Carthaginian general, used as his base during the great death struggle between Rome and Carthage. Near Capua lay **Naples**, an early settlement of the Etruscans in Magna Graecia. Today steamers from Italy to America make Naples their last stopping place on the way to the New World. Behind Naples stood **Vesuvius**,

* Cf. page 61.

THE ADJECTIVE

a mountain which, as a volcano, overwhelmed the fair cities of **Pompēiī** and **Herculaneum**, the fashionable pleasure resorts of the Romans, in 79 A.D. In Magna Graecia were **Tarentum** (Taranto, a great modern Italian naval base), and **Brundisium** (Brindisi to-day), the port from which all steamships leave Italy for Greece and Egypt.

X. THE ADJECTIVE. COMPARISON

206. THE VALUE OF COMPARISON.—Whatever we meet that is *new* or *strange* we try to understand by *comparing* with something we already know or with which we are familiar. For instance, we realize how *sweet* some new thing is, (1) by comparing it with the sweet thing that we eat constantly (sugar), or, (2) by recalling all the sweet things we have ever eaten and comparing the new thing with them. So, for the sake of giving *the proper value* to new things, we need *degrees of comparison* in Latin as well as in English. The Latins used the following forms to express these comparative values.

207.

POSITIVE DEGREE	COMPARATIVE DEGREE	SUPERLATIVE DEGREE
lātus , <i>wide</i> ,	lātior , lātius , <i>wider</i> ,	lātissimus , -a, -um, <i>widest</i> .
fēlix , <i>happy</i> ,	fēlicior , fēlicius , <i>happier</i> ,	fēlicissimus , -a, -um, <i>happiest</i> .
recēns , <i>late, recent</i> ,	recentior , recentius , <i>later or more recent</i> ,	recentissimus , -a, -um, <i>latest or most recent</i> .
fortis , <i>brave</i> ,	fortior , fortius , <i>braver</i> ,	fortissimus , -a, -um, <i>bravest</i> .
ācer , <i>sharp</i> ,	ācrior , ācrius , <i>sharper</i> ,	ācerrimus , -a, -um, <i>sharpest</i> .

208. Remember: (1) That the *comparative degree* must be used when a comparison is to be made between *two* things; (2) that the *superlative* must be used when *three or more* things are to be compared. Incorrect use of the degrees of comparison is a very common error among students of English.

209. Like **lātus** compare

altus, clārus, amplus, fīrmus.

Like **fēlix** compare

audāx, atrōx, vėlōx.

Like **recēns** compare

diligēns, frequēns, ingēns, sapiēns.

Like **fortis** compare

nōbilis, levis, trīstis, fertilis.

Like **ācer** compare

celeber.

Give the English comparison of each of the above words.

210. The degrees of comparison are *also declined*. The *positive* (**lātus**) you have already learned: the *superlative* is also declined like the adjective **lātus**; the declension of the *comparative* you will learn in the next paragraph.

The rule regarding the agreement of an adjective with its noun applies to the comparative and superlative degrees as well as to the positive.

QUIZ.—What is the importance of degrees of comparison?

THE ADJECTIVE

211. **Fortior, fortius, braver**

SINGULAR		
	<i>M. F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	fortior, fortius, <i>braver</i>	fortius
<i>Gen.</i>	fortiōris	fortiōris
<i>Dat.</i>	fortiōrī	fortiōrī
<i>Acc.</i>	fortiōrem	fortius
<i>Voc.</i>	fortior	fortius
<i>Abl.</i>	fortiōre (ī)	fortiōre (ī)
PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
<i>Gen.</i>	fortiōrum	fortiōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	fortiōribus	fortiōribus
<i>Acc.</i>	fortiōrēs (īs)	fortiōra
<i>Voc.</i>	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
<i>Abl.</i>	fortiōribus	fortiōribus

212. Like **fortior** decline:

audācior, faciliior, ācrior, brevior, recentior, clārior.

213. Decline in full: Initium audācius, fābula brevior, opus facilius, tempus recentius, homō nōbiliior.

214. Translate: 1. Fortissimōs hostēs in proeliō superābimus. 2. Rēgna ampliōra rēxerās. 3. Inter hominēs honōrēs īnsigniōrēs habēbunt. 4. Praesidium fīrmissimum in urbe mānsit. 5. Altissimōs montēs rūrī amāmus. 6. Imāginem clāriōrem sōlis in aquā vidēs. 7. Virī fortēs animālia leōnibus* ferōciōra in silvīs petīvērunt. 8. Deus nōmen omnibus nōminibus* altius habet. 9. Aquam bonō vīnō* clāriōrem mīscēmus.

* Notice the ablative cases used in the last three sentences. They indicate a comparison.

215. RULE.—**Ablative of Comparison.**—*The ablative case with a comparative denotes comparison.*

APPLIED LATIN

216. Translate: 1. We have horses fleet^{er} than the winds.
2. They saw towers higher than hills. 3. Caesar held provinces more extensive than a kingdom. 4. They were adorn^{ing} a building more ancient than the temple of the god.

QUIZ.—How is a *comparison* often expressed in Latin?

Learn these irregular comparisons:

217. bonus, <i>good</i> ,	melior, <i>better</i> ,	optimus, <i>best</i> .
malus, <i>bad</i> ,	pēior, <i>worse</i> ,	pessimus, <i>worst</i> .
māgnus, <i>great</i> ,	māior, <i>greater</i> ,	māximus, <i>greatest</i> .
parvus, <i>small</i> ,	minor, <i>smaller</i> ,	minimus, <i>smallest</i> .
multus, <i>much</i> ,	plūs, <i>more</i> ,	plūrimus, <i>most</i> .

Notice that in English some of these adjectives are also compared irregularly. Learn their comparisons in English.

218. The adjective **facilis**, *easy*, is compared irregularly as follows:

facilis, facili^{or}, facillim^{us}.

Like **facilis** compare **difficilis**, *difficult*; **similis**, *similar*; **dissimilis**, *dissimilar*; **gracilis**, *slender*; and **humilis**, *lowly*.

219. **Plūs** is defective in declension.

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	<i>M. F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	—	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
<i>Gen.</i>	—	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
<i>Dat.</i>	—	—	plūribus	plūribus
<i>Acc.</i>	—	plūs	plūrēs (-is)	plūra
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	—	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

220. In English there are *several ways of wording comparisons*. You may say—

wide,	wider,	widest.
or wide,	rather wide,	very wide.
or wide,	comparatively wide,	extremely wide.

THE VERB

221. Decline in full: Causa optima, aedificium māius, vīnum pessimum, turba māxima, flūmen minus.

222. Translate: 1. Puerī bonī amīcōs optimōs habent. 2. Opera facillima petis. 3. Gracillima grāmina ventus grāvior pressit. 4. Turba māxima in templō sedēbat. 5. Pēiōra vīna mīsērunt. 6. Plūrimī virī fāmam amant. 7. Plūrimae fēminae pācem petēbant. 8. Dōna minōra amōrem māiōrem portant. 9. Frātrēs dissimillimōs in viā vīdimus.

223. Translate: 1. Rather small women, better wine, a great reward. 2. A very lowly art, greater glory, in the smallest danger. 3. The worst calamity, for an extremely bad boy, more men, of the best citizens, more citizens.

XI. THE VERB. THIRD CONJUGATION IN -IŌ

224.

capiō,	capere,	cēpī,	captus,	<i>to take.</i>
cupiō,	cupere	cupīvī,	cupītus,	<i>to desire.</i>
faciō,	facere	fēcī,	factus,	<i>to make or do.</i>
fugiō,	fugere	fūgī,	fugitum,	<i>to flee.</i>
iaciō,	iacere,	iēcī,	iactus,	<i>to throw.</i>
rapiō,	rapere,	rapuī,	raptus,	<i>to snatch.</i>
speciō,	specere,	spexī,	spectus,	<i>to spy.</i>
quatiō,	quatere,	quassī,	quassus,	<i>to shake.</i>

225. That these verbs belong to the **third conjugation** is shown by the ending of the **infinitive**. You will find that verbs of the fourth conjugation also end in -iō, but you must not confuse these verbs with them. The -iō ending of the first principal part may trouble you, but the ending of the infinitive in -ere should make a mistake impossible, for the fourth conjugation infinitive ends in -īre.

226. Learn the following tenses:

CAPĪŌ.—Active Voice—Indicative Mood

SINGULAR	Present Tense	PLURAL
1. capiō, <i>I take</i>	1. capimur, <i>we take</i>	
2. capis, <i>you take</i>	2. capitis, <i>you take</i>	
3. capit, <i>he (she, it) takes</i>	3. capiunt, <i>they take</i>	
	Imperfect Tense	
1. capiēbam, <i>I was taking</i>	1. capiēbāmus, <i>we were taking</i>	
2. capiēbās, <i>you were taking</i>	2. capiēbātis, <i>you were taking</i>	
3. capiēbat, <i>he (she, it) was taking</i>	3. capiēbant, <i>they were taking</i>	
	Future Tense	
1. capiam, <i>I shall take</i>	1. capiēmus, <i>we shall take</i>	
2. capiēs, <i>you will take</i>	2. capiētis, <i>you will take</i>	
3. capiet, <i>he (she, it) will take</i>	3. capient, <i>they will take</i>	

227. In the last three tenses of the indicative these verbs follow the conjugation of the verb **dūcō** exactly.

Practise the conjugation of all these tenses, using the verbs in Paragraph 224.

228. WORD STUDY.—We find in English the following derivatives from:

capiō: capture, capacious, conception, accept, receptacle, receive, intercept, deceive, except, receipt.

cupiō: cupid, cupidity.

faciō: fact, facility, factor, factory, perfect, infect, affection, efface, deface, effect, affect, faculty.

fugiō: fugitive, refuge, subterfuge, vermifuge, refugee.

iaciō: inject, reject, dejection, abject, subject, object, adjective.

rapiō: rapine, rapacious, rapid, rapture, rapier, surreptitious.

quatiō: (often **-cutiō**) quake, earthquake, discuss, percussion, concussion.

THE VERB

speciō: inspect, respect, retrospect, circumspect, despicable, suspect.

QUIZ.—How do the verbs above differ from **dūcō**? How are they distinguished from verbs of the fourth conjugation? Can you spell the derivatives above correctly?

229. For practice in the third conjugation **-iō** verbs translate the following forms:

1. Cupis, faciō, fugimus, rapit. 2. Iaciunt, quatitis, capis.
3. Faciēbās, iaciēbant, rapiēbam, fugiēbātis. 4. Cupiēbāmus, capiēbant, quatiēbat. 5. Capiēs, cupiēmus, faciam, fugient. 6. Rapiētis, iaciet, quatiā. 7. Quassī, iēcistis, rapuit, fūgimus. 8. Fēcistī, cupīvit, cēpērunt. 9. Fūgerās, rapueram, iēcērāmus, quasserant. 10. Fēcērātis, cupīverat, cēpērāmus. 11. Iēcērimus, quasserō, rapuerimus.

230. TRANSLATE

TRANSLATE

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Vectīgal māgnūm capiō. | 1. We have taken public money. |
| 2. Rēgnūm ducis cupimus. | 2. You have desired a wider kingdom. |
| 3. Servi īgnem in īnsulā faciunt. | 3. He has made a massacre of the soldiers. |
| 4. Ex periculīs bellī fugiēbās. | 4. You had fled from the lion with greatest danger. |
| 5. Pecūniā nūntiōrum rapiēbat. | 5. They had snatched a soldier's shield. |
| 6. Tēla barbara cum irā* iaciēbātis. | 6. You had thrown the booty with care into the fire. |
| 7. Terram māgnam quatiā. | 7. We shall have shaken the mountains with courage. |
| 8. Captīvus plūre cum periculō* fugiet. | 8. They will have fled from the envoys with disaster. |
| 9. Virī māximō cum clāmōre* opus facient. | 9. Galba will have made a high wall around the town. |
| 10. Vitā longiōrem bonō animō cupīvistī. | 10. You desire quiet. |

APPLIED LATIN

TRANSLATE

11. Agrōs fertilēs agricolae cēpimus.
12. Gladiōs terribilēs quassērunt.
13. Scūtum ingēns in mare iēcēram.
14. Cīvis avem loquācem rapuerat.
15. Frīgus hiemis fūgerātis.
16. Sēdem grātam in grāmine fēcēris.
17. Nōbilitātem cupīverit.
18. Vestēs bonās cēperimus.

TRANSLATE

11. With great boldness I take the sailor's oars.
12. He shakes the ends of the earth.
13. We were throwing spears from the mountain into the sea.
14. They were snatching up the roses from the grass.
15. You were fleeing from a savage lion with great fear.
16. You will make a bridge across the river.
17. They will desire very great fame.
18. I shall take many allies to the camp.

* Notice the ablatives introduced by **cum** in these sentences. They express **manner**.

231. RULE.—Ablative of Manner.—*The ablative with cum is used to denote the manner of an action. When the ablative is modified by an adjective, the preposition cum may be omitted.*

QUIZ.—How is the *manner* of an action expressed in Latin? In English?

XII. THE NOUN. FOURTH DECLENSION

232.

cāsus, *a chance, falling*, m. (case, casual).

cornū, *a horn, wing (of an army)*, n. (Capricorn).

exercitus, *an army*, m. **senātus**, *the senate*, m.

impetus, *a charge, attack*, m. (impetuous).

passus, *a pace*, m. (compass, unsurpassed).

ūsus, *use, advantage*, m. (misuse, abuse, usual).

cursus, *a running, course*, m. (incursion, concourse, excursion).

mōtus, *a motion*, m. (motive, locomotive).

cōnspectus, *a view, sight*, m. **concursum**, *an attack, collision*, m.

occāsus, *the setting (of the sun)*, m.

manus, *the hand*, f. (manual, maneuver, manuscript).

THE NOUN:

233. Words of the fourth declension have, with a few exceptions, the same form in the *nominative singular* as the form which you have already learned as the *fourth principal part* of the verb. For example, take the noun **mōtus** from **moveō**, **cāsus** as if from **cadō**, **cursus** from **currō**, **cōnspectus** from **speciō**. The *fourth declension*, then, enabled the Latins to use *part of a verb as a noun*. It is very easy in most cases to *determine the meaning* of fourth declension nouns by recalling the *meaning of the verb* from which the noun is derived.

234. Learn this standard fourth declension noun:

Cāsus, cāsūs, a chance, m.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	cāsus , <i>a chance, m.</i>	cāsūs , <i>chances</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	cāsūs , <i>of a chance</i>	cāsuum , <i>of chances</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	cāsuī , <i>to or for a chance</i>	cāsibus , <i>to or for chances</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	cāsum , <i>a chance</i>	cāsūs , <i>chances</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	cāsus , <i>(O) chance</i>	cāsūs , <i>(O) chances</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	cāsū , <i>with, etc., a chance</i>	cāsibus , <i>with, etc., chances</i>

235. *Most of the nouns of this declension are masculine in gender.* The only common *neuter* noun of the fourth declension is **cornū**, a horn.

Cornū, cornūs, a horn n.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	cornū , <i>a horn, n.</i>	cornua , <i>horns</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	cornūs	cornuum
<i>Dat.</i>	cornū	cornibus
<i>Acc.</i>	cornū	cornua
<i>Voc.</i>	cornū	cornua
<i>Abl.</i>	cornū	cornibus

APPLIED, LATIN

236. Domus, a house, f., is a fourth declension noun with some forms of the second declension.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	domus, a house, f.	domūs, houses
<i>Gen.</i>	domūs (domī)	domuum (domōrum)
<i>Dat.</i>	domuī (domō)	domibus
<i>Acc.</i>	domum	domūs (domōs)
<i>Voc.</i>	domus	domūs
<i>Abl.</i>	domū (domō)	domibus
<i>Loc.</i>	domī, at home (compare note, page 67)	

Domus (domestic, domicile, domesticate).

237. Write sentences containing the English derivatives given above.

QUIZ.—What do you know about the gender of the fourth declension? Explain the locative case.

XIII. THE NOUN. FIFTH DECLENSION

238. When the nouns of the Latin language had been examined and arranged by scholars in *four declensions*, there were found to be a *few left*; very few, indeed, hardly twenty that had a uniform declension. These were grouped in the *fifth declension*.

Learn these nouns:

aciēs, an edge, a line of battle, f.	fidēs, faith, f.
diēs, a day, m.	perniciēs, destruction, ruin, f.
superficiēs, a surface, f.	speciēs, an appearance, show, f.
effigiēs, a likeness, image, f.	spēs, hope, f.
faciēs, the face, f.	rēs, a thing, f.
glaciēs, ice, f.	plānitīēs, a plain, f.
seriēs, a series, f.	rabiēs, fury, f.

THE NOUN

239. Learn to decline these two fifth declension nouns:

	Diēs, diēī, <i>a day</i> , m.	Rēs, rei, <i>a thing</i> , f.
	SINGULAR	SINGULAR
<i>Nom.</i>	diēs, <i>a day</i> , m.	rēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diēī, <i>of a day</i>	rei
<i>Dat.</i>	diēī, <i>to or for a day</i>	rei
<i>Acc.</i>	diem, <i>a day</i>	rem
<i>Voc.</i>	diēs, (<i>O</i>) <i>day</i>	rēs
<i>Abl.</i>	diē, <i>with, etc., a day</i>	rē
	PLURAL	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	diēs, <i>days</i>	rēs, <i>things</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	diērum, <i>of days</i>	rērum
<i>Dat.</i>	diēbus, <i>to or for days</i>	rēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	diēs, <i>days</i>	rēs
<i>Voc.</i>	diēs, (<i>O</i>) <i>days</i>	rēs
<i>Abl.</i>	diēbus, <i>with, etc., days</i>	rēbus

240. Nouns of the fifth declension are *feminine in gender*. **Diēs**, m., is an *exception*. Only the nouns **diēs** and **rēs** of this declension are declined throughout in *both singular and plural*. The others are declined *in the singular*. Among these some have *also the nominative and the accusative plural*.

241. For rapidity translate the following forms, noting *all possible cases*:

1. Acīēs, cāsus, superficiēī, rēs. 2. Domibus, spem, cornua, manibus. 3. Perniciēī, rēbus, cāsum, mōtuum. 4. Fidem, domī, ūsum, rē, senātuī. 5. Diēbus, cāsū, rērum, speciem, exercituum. 6. Glaciē, seriem, rabiēs.

242. Translate: 1. Servī montēs altōs diēs* multōs spectābant. 2. Multās hōrās per silvam dēnsam exercitum dūxit. 3. Hostēs ex locō plūrimōs passūs cessērunt.

*Notice the underscored *accusatives* in these sentences. They express *duration of time or extent of space*.

243. RULE.—Accusative of Duration of Time and Extent of Space.—*Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative without a preposition.*

244. Translate: 1. The hours of the day. 2. Many strange things. 3. Beyond hope. 4. Days of anger. 5. To the faith of Caesar. 6. Because of great things. 7. The image of a man. 8. The wing of an army.

QUIZ.—How extensive is the fifth declension? Are all fifth declension words completely declined? How are *duration of time and extent of space* expressed?

THE CITY OF ROME*

The first settlement at Rome was on that one of the *seven hills* called the **Palatine** (**Mōns Palātinus**). Around this hill a strong wall was constructed, and inside this wall were the barracks of the soldiers. This hill was completely covered in later times by the houses (**palātia**, *palaces*) of the Emperors. Near the river was another hill called the **Capitoline** (**Mōns Capitōlinus**), on which stood the temple erected to the three great gods of the Latins: **Jupiter, Juno**, and **Minerva**. This hill had two peaks, and upon the second peak was built a citadel called the **Arx**. As a center of civic life, the **Capitoline** hill has given us the words *capitol* and *capital*, which we now use in connection with our state houses and centers of state government.

* Cf. p. 76.

THE VERB

Between the **Palatine** and the **Capitoline** was the meeting-place of the Romans, called the **Forum**, a place which has been justly famous throughout all succeeding centuries. Nearer the river was the **Forum Boarium**, to which the Romans brought produce for exchange. Here was the great commercial center of early Rome. Beyond the Capitoline lay in order the **Quirinal**, **Viminal**, **Esquiline**, **Caelian**, and **Aventine** hills, which were afterward enclosed within the walls of Rome. The **Circus Māximus**, or chief circus, lay between the **Aventine** and the **Palatine**. In this circus took place horse races, gladiatorial shows, and festal games. At the bend in the **Tiber**, north of the city, was the **Campus Martius**, or field devoted to the god of war, **Mars**. In this field the Roman armies were trained for war and their magistrates were elected. The **Janiculan** hill was just across the river.

XIV. THE VERB. FOURTH CONJUGATION

245.

audiō, *I hear;*

finiō, *I finish;*

hauriō, *I draw off; I drain;*

impediō, *I hinder;*

mūniō, *I fortify;*

sentiō, *I perceive;*

sciō, *I know;*

serviō, *I serve;*

veniō, *I come;*

vinciō, *I bind;*

audire, *to hear.*

finire, *to finish.*

haurire, *to draw off; drain.*

impedire, *to hinder.*

mūnire, *to fortify.*

sentire, *to perceive (by the senses).*

scire, *to know.*

servire, *to serve (followed by dative case).*

venire, *to come.*

vincire, *to bind.*

246. Verbs of the *fourth conjugation* do not differ greatly from *third conjugation* verbs, especially **capiō**, **rapiō**. The

vowel **i**, however, *constantly* appears in the forms. Verbs of this conjugation may be recognized by the ending of the infinitive **-ire**, in which the vowel **i** is *always long*.

247. WORD STUDY.—Though the number of verbs in this group is small in comparison with the great number found in the other conjugations, they furnish important root verbs for the English language.

Audiō is the base of audit, auditor, audience, audible, obedience.

Finiō gives us finish, finite, infinite, infinitive.

Hauriō appears in exhaust, inexhaustible, exhaustion.

Impediō is found in impede, impediment.

Mūniō gives munition, ammunition.

Sentiō is found in sense, sensation, sentiment, sensual, sensible, sentence, presentiment, resent, assent, consent, scent, sentinel, nonsense.

Sciō appears in science, scientific, conscience, prescience.

Serviō is the base of serve, servitude, subservient.

Veniō is particularly common: advent, adventure, vent, prevent, intervene, invent, event, eventual.

Write out some English sentences containing these derivatives.

QUIZ.—How are verbs of the fourth conjugation recognized?

248. AUDIŌ.—Active Voice—Indicative Mood

SINGULAR	Present Tense	PLURAL
1. audiō, <i>I hear</i>	1. audīmus, <i>we hear</i>	
2. audīs, <i>you hear</i>	2. audītis, <i>you hear</i>	
3. audit, <i>he (she, it) hears</i>	3. audiunt, <i>they hear</i>	

THE VERB

SINGULAR	<i>Imperfect Tense</i>	PLURAL
1. audiēbam , <i>I was hearing</i>		1. audiēbāmus , <i>we were hearing</i>
2. audiēbās , <i>you were hearing</i>		2. audiēbātis , <i>you were hearing</i>
3. audiēbat , <i>he (she, it) was hearing</i>		3. audiēbant , <i>they were hearing</i>

<i>Future Tense</i>	
1. audiam , <i>I shall hear</i>	1. audiēmus , <i>we shall hear</i>
2. audiēs , <i>you will hear</i>	2. audiētis , <i>you will hear</i>
3. audiet , <i>he (she, it) will hear</i>	3. audient , <i>they will hear</i>

Practise these tenses, using the verbs already given.

249. Translate these verb forms:

1. Audiō, fīnit, haurītis, impedīs.
2. Mūnit, sentiunt, scīs, serviunt, venītis.
3. Mūniēbat, sentiēbam, sciēbāmus, serviēbas.
4. Veniēbant, vinciēbās, audiēbātis.
5. Fīniēbant, hauriēbātis, impediēbat.
6. Fīnient, sentiam, hauriēmus, sciēs.
7. Impediētis, serviēmus, mūnient.
8. Vincient, veniam, audiet.

250. Learn these fourth conjugation verbs:

dormiō , <i>I sleep</i> ;	dormīre , <i>to sleep</i> .
pūniō , <i>I punish</i> ;	pūnīre , <i>to punish</i> .
sanciō , <i>I ordain or establish</i> ;	sancīre , <i>to ordain or establish</i> .
sēpeliō , <i>I bury</i> ;	sēpelīre , <i>to bury</i> .

251. WORD STUDY:

Dormiō appears in the words: dormant, dormitory.

Pūniō gives us: punish, punitive, impunity.

Sanciō is the base of saint, sanctum, sanctify, sanctuary.

Sepeliō provides the words: sepulchre, sepulture.

252. EXAMPLES OF THE USE OF THESE DERIVATIVES.—1.

The auditor examined the accounts of the bank. 2. Fire

APPLIED LATIN

broke out in the dormitory. 3. Francis of Assisi was a saint of the Catholic Church. 4. Caesar led the army on a punitive expedition. 5. Do not enter the *Sānctum Sānctōrum*.

Write other similar sentences. Ask your teacher for other derivatives.

253. Learn the principal parts of the following verbs:

audiō,	audīre,	audīvī,	audītus.
finiō,	finīre,	finīvī,	finītus.
hauriō,	haurīre,	hausī,	haustus.
impediō,	impedīre,	impedīvī,	impeditus.
mūniō,	mūnīre,	mūnīvī (-iī),	mūnītus.
sentiō,	sentīre,	sēnsī,	sēnsus.
sciō,	scīre,	scīvī,	scītus.
serviō,	servīre,	serviī (-ivī),	servitum.
veniō,	venīre,	vēnī,	ventum.
vinciō,	vincīre,	vīnxī,	vīnctus.
dormiō,	dormīre,	dormīvī,	dormitum.
pūnio,	pūnīre,	pūnīvī (-iī),	pūnītus.
sanciō,	sancīre,	sānxī,	sānctus.
sepeliō,	sepelīre,	sepelīvī (-iī),	sepultus.

254. TRANSLATE

TRANSLATE

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>1. Avem inter nūbēs audiō.</p> <p>2. Labōrem diēi cum spē finīs.</p> <p>3. Fēmina aquam ex fonte haurit.</p> <p>4. Sociōs lēgibus malis impedīmus.</p> <p>5. Oppidum vāllō mūnītis.</p> <p>6. Avēs odōrem silvae sentiunt.</p> <p>7. Aetātem equī sciēbam.</p> <p>8. Imperātōrī grātō serviēbās.</p> | <p>1. We shall hear of the terrible dangers.</p> <p>2. You were ending a night-watch in the tower.</p> <p>3. He will drain the water from the ditch.</p> <p>4. We fortify the town with a wall.</p> <p>5. You were hindering the ardor of the soldiers.</p> <p>6. The senate will perceive the courage of the citizens.</p> <p>7. We know the face of the maiden.</p> <p>8. You serve the senate.</p> |
|---|---|

THE VERB

TRANSLATE

9. Exercitus ad castra veniēbat.
10. Vinum antīquum hauriēbāmus.
11. Vāllum māgnō labōre finī-
ēbātis.
12. Cīvēs rem ā captīvīs audi-
ēbant.
13. Manūs pessimōrum servōrum
vinciam.
14. In agrō inter collēs dormiēs.
15. Dux sapiēns filiōs pūniet.
16. Pācem sine bellō sanciemus.
17. Equum in fossā altā sepe liētis.
18. Silvae dēnsae āgmen
impedient.

TRANSLATE

9. They will come to the gate
with hope.
10. They will draw off the new
wine.
11. I was ending the liberty of
the captives.
12. You will hear of the necessi-
ties of the state.
13. I bind the hands of the treach-
erous slave.
14. You were sleeping on a low
couch.
15. He will establish the law.
16. The consul will punish the
crowd.
17. You were burying the body.
18. They hinder the charge of
the soldiers.

255. AUDIŌ.—Active Voice—Indicative Mood

SINGULAR	<i>Perfect Tense</i>	PLURAL
1. audīvī, <i>I have heard</i>		1. audīvimus, <i>we have heard</i>
2. audīvistī, <i>you have heard</i>		2. audīvistis, <i>you have heard</i>
3. audīvit, <i>he (she, it) has heard</i>		3. audīvērunt, <i>they have heard</i>

Pluperfect Tense

1. audīveram, <i>I had heard</i>	1. audīverāmus, <i>we have heard</i>
2. audīverās, <i>you had heard</i>	2. audīverātis, <i>you had heard</i>
3. audīverat, <i>he (she, it) had heard</i>	3. audīverant, <i>they had heard</i>

Future Perfect Tense

1. audīverō, <i>I shall have heard</i>	1. audīverimus, <i>we shall have heard</i>
2. audīveris, <i>you will have heard</i>	2. audīveritis, <i>you will have heard</i>
3. audīverit, <i>he (she, it) will have heard</i>	3. audīverint, <i>they will have heard</i>

Practise the conjugation of these tenses, using the verbs already given.

256. Translate these forms: 1. Mūnīvit, impēdivistis, hausī.

APPLIED LATIN

2. Fīnīvistī, audīvērunt, sēnsimus. 3. Scīvistī, serviērunt, vēnistis. 4. Vīnximus, dormīverat, pūnīveram. 5. Sānxerāmus, sepelīverās, impedīverant. 6. Servierās, scīverātis, sēnsērant. 7. Mūnīverat, impedīverātis, hauserint. 8. Fīnīverō, audīverimus, vēneris. 9. Vīnixeritis, dormīverimus, pūnīverit. 10. Sānxerint, sepelīveris, impedīverō.

257. TRANSLATE

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Perniciem aciēi impedīvī. | 1. We shall have heard the name of the state. |
| 2. Leōnem ferōcem sepelīvistī. | 2. You had drained the deep ditch. |
| 3. Caesar omnēs lēgēs bonās sanxit. | 3. Caesar will have fortified the houses. |
| 4. Hominēs malōs pūnīvimus. | 4. We had hindered the wayfarer's steps. |
| 5. In templō dormīvistis. | 5. They will have perceived the odor of wine. |
| 6. Nūntium fallācem vīnxērunt. | 6. You had known the affairs of the senate. |
| 7. In aedificium cum filiis amīci vēneram. | 7. We have served the people. |
| 8. Cīvibus nōbilibus servīverās. | 8. The end of the day will have come. |
| 9. Caesar omnēs mīlītēs scīverat. | 9. The enemy had drained the rivers around the camp. |
| 10. Colōrem vestium sēnsērāmus. | 10. I have ended the hope of flight. |
| 11. Urbem fossā altissimā mūnīverātis. | 11. You will have heard the winds in the hills. |
| 12. Nūbēs lūmen sōlis impedīverant. | 12. I have bound the brothers with care. |
| 13. Fontēs aquae malae hauserō. | 13. You had slept among the mountain crags. |
| 14. Imperium ducis fīnīveris. | 14. The commander will have ratified peace. |
| 15. Vōcem Caesaris in senātū audīverit. | 15. We had punished the treacherous envoys. |

THE SENTENCE. INTERROGATIVE

TRANSLATE

16. Exsulēs pūniverimus.

17. Frīgus flūmina hieme vīxerit.

18. In valle inter montēs dorm-
iveritis.

TRANSLATE

16. You have buried the body
of Caesar.

17. The mountains have hin-
dered the swift motion of
the winds.

18. He had heard the false re-
port.

XV. THE SENTENCE. INTERROGATIVE

258. Up to the present time we have dealt only with the *declarative* sentence, the form which is used when we wish to make a *statement of fact*. We now come to the *interrogative* sentence, which is employed when we wish to *ask a question*. In English this kind of sentence is shown commonly by the addition of a *mark of punctuation* called the *question mark* at the end. Now, in the time of Shakespeare it was *not an uncommon practice* to place this mark of punctuation just *above the first word of a question*, so that the reader might not have to wait till the end of the sentence, as we do now, to find out whether or not the sentence was a question. Among the Romans there was a *similar practice*. One of three little words, **-ne, nōnne, num**, was usually placed *at the beginning of an interrogative sentence*.

These *little words told the reader or listener* not only that the sentence was a *question*, but also indicated what *kind of an answer was expected*.

259. The little word **-ne** attached to the first word of a sentence showed that the sentence was interrogative, and that the answer expected *might be either affirmative or nega-*

tive. **Habēsne rosam?** *Have you a rose?* Yes or no (**Habeō** or **nōn habeō**).

The word **nōnne** at the beginning of a sentence indicated a question requiring an *affirmative answer*. **Nōnne rosam habes?** *You have a rose, haven't you?* Yes (**Habeō**).

The word **num** at the beginning indicated a question requiring a *negative answer*. **Num rosam habēs?** *You haven't a rose, have you?* No (**Nōn habeō**).

260. In Latin, the difference between declarative and interrogative sentences is commonly shown by the addition of these little words, but there are also other words; as, **ubi**, *where*, and **unde**, *whence*, which may introduce questions. Such introductory words are common. They are either *pronouns* or *adverbs*. We shall meet them later, but for the present *remember that every interrogative sentence must be introduced by some interrogative word*.

261. Translate: 1. **Nōnne exercitus impetum fēcit?** 2. **Num flāmmae equōs terrent?** 3. **Ubi servī viam parāvērunt?** 4. **Rēgēsne gēntēs hominum regent?**

1. Have you seen the captive? 2. Whence came the sound of voices? 3. You don't love money, do you? 4. Where do the boys sleep? 5. We have served the state, haven't we?

QUIZ.—How are interrogative sentences distinguished in Latin?

XVI. THE VERB SUM, TO BE

262. This verb, although *very important*, we have left till now because it is *irregular* in conjugation, and does not follow the forms of any of the four regular conjugations.

THE VERB

Principal Parts: *Sum, I am; esse, to be; fui, I was or I have been,—.*

SUM.—Active Voice—Indicative Mood

SINGULAR	Present Tense	PLURAL
1. <i>sum, I am</i>	1. <i>sumus, we are</i>	
2. <i>es, you are</i>	2. <i>estis, you are</i>	
3. <i>est, he (she, it) is</i>	3. <i>sunt, they are</i>	
<i>Imperfect Tense</i>		
1. <i>eram, I was</i>	1. <i>erāmus, we were</i>	
2. <i>erās, you were</i>	2. <i>erātis, you were</i>	
3. <i>erat, he (she, it) was</i>	3. <i>erant, they were</i>	
<i>Future Tense</i>		
1. <i>erō, I shall be</i>	1. <i>erimus, we shall be</i>	
2. <i>eris, you will be</i>	2. <i>eritis, you will be</i>	
3. <i>erit, he (she, it) will be</i>	3. <i>erunt, they will be</i>	
<i>Perfect Tense</i>		
1. <i>fui, I have been</i>	1. <i>fuimus, we have been</i>	
2. <i>fuistī, you have been</i>	2. <i>fuistis, you have been</i>	
3. <i>fuit, he (she, it) has been</i>	3. <i>fuērunt, they have been</i>	
<i>Pluperfect Tense</i>		
1. <i>fueram, I had been</i>	1. <i>fuerāmus, we had been</i>	
2. <i>fuerās, you had been</i>	2. <i>fuerātis, you had been</i>	
3. <i>fuerat, he (she, it) had been</i>	3. <i>fuerant, they had been</i>	
<i>Future Perfect Tense</i>		
1. <i>fuerō, I shall have been</i>	1. <i>fuerimus, we shall have been</i>	
2. <i>fueris, you will have been</i>	2. <i>fueritis, you will have been</i>	
3. <i>fuerit, he (she, it) will have been</i>	3. <i>fuerint, they will have been</i>	

263. Learn the tenses of the verb given above, and for practice translate the following forms of the verb **sum**:

1. *Es, erātis, fuistī, sumus, erant, fueris.*
2. *Fuerimus, est, eram, erō, fuērunt, erimus.*
3. *Fuimus, erat, erunt, fueram, eris, erāmus.*

264. Examine these sentences:

1. **Caesar fuit homō, Caesar was a man.**

The noun **homō**, though it is connected in sense with the noun **Caesar**, is a part of the predicate. It is called a **predicate noun**.

2. **Flūmen erat lātum**, *The river was wide.*

The adjective **lātum**, though it modifies the noun **flūmen**, is a part of the predicate. It is called a **predicate adjective**. Predicate nouns and predicate adjectives are to be translated after their verb.

265. RULE.—Agreement in the Predicate. *A predicate noun agrees in case with the noun it modifies; a predicate adjective agrees in gender, number, and case.*

Make up some Latin sentences using the verb **sum**.

XVII. THE ADVERB

266. The *name* of this new part of speech reveals to us *its most important and most frequent use*. The adverb belongs in a sentence, *ad* in connection with *verb*, the verb. To a slight extent the use of the adverb is extended beyond its use with the verb. Sometimes an adverb modifies an *adjective* or *another adverb*.

267. Most adverbs (1) are derived from adjectives and (2) present degrees of comparison as follows:

(Adj.) ADVERB	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
(clārus), clārē, clearly,	clārius, <i>more clearly</i> ,	clārissimē, <i>most clearly</i> .
(fortis), fortiter, bravely,	fortius, <i>more bravely</i> ,	fortissimē, <i>most bravely</i> .
(recēns), recenter, recently,	recentius, <i>more recently</i> ,	recentissimē, <i>most recently</i> .
(fēlix), fēliciter, happily,	fēlicius, <i>more happily</i> ,	fēlicissimē, <i>most happily</i> .
(ācer), ācriter, sharply,	ācrius, <i>more sharply</i> ,	ācerrimē, <i>most sharply</i> .

These adverbs furnish standard examples of the degrees of comparison of first, second, and third declension ad-

THE ADVERB

verbs. Most first and second declension adverbs follow the comparison of **clārē**; most third declension adverbs are like **fortiter**.

268. Some adverbs are compared irregularly:

bene (<i>bonus</i>), <i>well</i> ,	melius , <i>better</i> ,	optimē , <i>best</i> .
male (<i>malus</i>), <i>ill</i> ,	pēius , <i>worse</i> ,	pessimē , <i>worst</i> .
māgnopere , <i>greatly</i> ,	magis , <i>more</i> ,	māximē , <i>most</i> .
multum (<i>multus</i>), <i>much</i> ,	plūs , <i>more</i> ,	plūrimum , <i>most</i> .
parum , <i>little</i> ,	minus , <i>less</i> ,	minimē , <i>least</i> .
saepe , <i>often</i> ,	saepius , <i>oftener</i> ,	saepissimē , <i>oftenest</i> .

269. Some very common adverbs are not derived from adjectives, but are actually cases of *nouns* or *adjectives* that are used as *adverbs*.

a. Some adverbs end in **-ō** (originally an ablative case): **subitō**, *suddenly*; **necessāriō**, *necessarily*; **perpetuō**, *ceaselessly*; **prīmō**, *at first*.

b. Some adverbs end in **-tim** or **-im** (originally an accusative case): **gradātīm**, *step by step*, **verbātīm**, *word by word*, **nōminātīm**, *name by name*, **statīm**, *immediately*.

270. The following adverbs express the idea of *place*: **ubi**, *where*; **ibi**, *there*; **inde**, *thence*; **unde**, *whence*; **hīc**, *here*; **hūc**, *hither*; **hinc**, *hence*.

271. The following adverbs indicate *time*: **nunc**, *now*; **tunc**, *then*; **iam**, *already*; **nūper**, *recently*; **prīmum**, *first*; **deinde**, *next*; **dēnique**, *finally*; **numquam**, *never*; **semper**, *always*; **saepe**, *often*; **anteā**, *before*; **posteā**, *afterward*.

272. The adverbs **tam**, **ita**, **sīc**, mean *so*; **praetereā**, *besides*; **proptereā**, *on that account*. The negative adverb is **nōn**, *not*.

273. Translate the following: 1. Dux milites in pugnam saepe ducit. 2. Recenter venerunt. 3. Impetum subito fecerunt. 4. Legati homines nominatim vocaverunt. 5. Inde leonem spectat. 6. Ubi fontes sunt? 7. Nunc clare videmus. 8. Primum venit, deinde aciem spectavit, denique acriter clamavit. 9. Famam numquam habebis. 10. Nonne fortissimi semper sumus? 11. Tunc in agro eratis. 12. Ibi captivos tenent. 13. Poeta fata verbatim narrabat.

QUIZ.—How are adverbs formed and used?

Pick out ten adverbs in your English reader.

XVIII. THE SENTENCE. COMPOUND

The Conjunction

274. Our sentences so far have been very short and have expressed simple ideas only. Short sentences are commonly used by young children or those older persons whose education has been neglected. After the short sentences of childhood we come to the longer sentences of youth. These longer sentences are, first, *compound*, and later, *complex*.

275. Compound sentences are composed of two or more short sentences of equal importance, connected by a new part of speech called the **Conjunction**.

EXAMPLE.—*Cæsar gave the command and the soldiers obeyed.*

276. Some conjunctions merely connect two sentences (**and**); others connect, but at the same time show a contrast between the two sentences (**but**); others are used at the beginning of a sentence to connect it with the sentence which has just preceded.

COMPOUND SENTENCES

277. The following Latin conjunctions *merely connect*: **et**, **-que**, **atque**, *and*. **Color et odor**; **color odórque**.

278. These conjunctions *connect and also show a contrast*: **sed**, *but*; **tamen**, *nevertheless*; **autem**, *however*.

279. These conjunctions connect a new sentence with one which has just preceded: **nam**, *for*; **itaque**, *and so*; **igitur**, *accordingly*; **enim**, *for*; **etenim**, *for*.

280. These conjunctions often occur in pairs:

et . . . **et**, both . . . and.

aut . . . **aut**, either . . . or.

vel . . . **vel**, either . . . or.

neque (**nec**) . . . **neque**, (**nec**) neither . . . nor.

Conjunctions which are used in pairs are called **correlative conjunctions**.

281. It is important to remember that the conjunctions **autem**, **enim**, and **igitur** are regularly placed *second*, *never first*, in their sentences. The conjunction **-que** is always added to the word which it ought to precede. It is called an **enclitic** because it is always attached to another word. The accent of a word to which an enclitic is attached is on the syllable just before the enclitic, **hominēs'que**.

282. The most common English conjunctions are *and*, *but*, *because*, *neither*, *nor*, *either*, *or*, *for*, *if*, *than*, *that*.

283. Translate: 1. **Honōrem glōriamque** petimus. 2. **Et patrem et mātrem amābant filiī**. 3. **Virum facilē cēpērunt sed fēmina fūgit**. 4. **Avis frūmentum rapuit, et in rūpe sēdit**. 5. **Neque aestātem neque lūmen sōlis timēmus**. 6. **Etenim domum in īsulā habēmus**.

284. Translate: 1. Where are the hills and valleys? 2. And so the general led the army into camp. 3. We saw neither houses nor low buildings. 4. For (*cf.* 282) the town was on fire. 5. Nevertheless the slaves warded off the flames, and overcame the fire. 6. Both women and men sought flight. 7. However the danger drove them from the road.

QUIZ.—Explain the words conjunction, enclitic, correlative.

XIX. THE PRONOUN

285. If it were always necessary to repeat the noun-subject of a sentence, and there were no words which could replace the subject, we would talk something in the following way: "John says that John saw John's wife at John's store and that John's wife said to John that John's wife was on the way home." Happily there are words which we may use to replace the noun. These words are called **pronouns**, and the word **pro** (*for*) **noun** (*a noun*) reveals the use of this new part of speech.

286. In English and in Latin there are **personal, demonstrative, reflexive, interrogative, relative, and indefinite** pronouns.

287. **Personal** pronouns replace nouns which are the names of persons. They are usually employed when it is desirable to emphasize the subject of a verb which is used in the *first* or *second persons, singular* or *plural*. As you have learned, the personal subjects of the verbs, unless especially important or emphatic, are not expressed in Latin, but are included in the verb form.

THE PRONOUN

288. The **personal pronoun** of the *first* person:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	ego, I	nōs, we
<i>Gen.</i>	meī, of me	nostrum, (ī), of us
<i>Dat.</i>	mihi, to or for me	nōbīs, to or for us
<i>Acc.</i>	mē, me	nōs, us
<i>Voc.</i>	—, —	—, —
<i>Abl.</i>	mē, with, etc., me	nōbīs, with, etc., us

289. The **personal pronoun** of the *second* person:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	tū, you	vōs, you
<i>Gen.</i>	tuī, of you	vestrum (ī), of you
<i>Dat.</i>	tibi, to or for you	vōbīs, to or for you
<i>Acc.</i>	tē, you	vōs, you
<i>Voc.</i>	—, —	—, —
<i>Abl.</i>	tē, with, etc., you	vōbīs, with, etc., you

Learn these pronouns.

290. Translate: 1. Ego filiam rēgis amō. 2. Tē in aedificium portāmus. 3. Nōs fortissimī militum sumus. 4. Vōs equum in viā vīdistis. 5. Nōs loquācēs sumus sed numquam malī. 6. Nōs ad mare vēnimus et rosās in aquam clāram iēcimus. 7. Vōs cum poētā* vēnistis. 8. Cum virginibus puerisque* templum spectāvī. 9. Lēgātum tēcum* mīsī. 10. Vōbīscum in exercitū serviēbāmus. 11. Multa animālia nōbīscum in agrō dormiunt. 12. Rēx tē ē rēgnō pellet.

*Note the use of the *ablative with cum* in these sentences. They express *accompaniment*.

291. RULE.—Ablative of Accompaniment.—*The ablative with cum expresses accompaniment.*

292. The preposition **cum** is regularly attached (enclitic) to the ablative cases of these two personal pronouns (**tēcum**).

293. Translate: 1. The consul looked at the races with the citizens. 2. Did the sad woman come with you? 3. The general with leaders and envoys ran to the camp. 4. We came with you. 5. They spoke to us about the soul.

QUIZ.—What kinds of pronouns are there in Latin? in English? How is *accompagnement* expressed in Latin?

THE STORY OF EARLY ROME

At the beginning, **Rome** was merely an outpost of the **Latin Confederacy** against the **Etruscans**. Many soldiers lived there. When the fortress became thoroughly established and there was a lull in the fighting, the peaceful occupations of herding and agriculture began to appear. The farmers and herdsmen went out each morning to their work, and returned each evening to the protection of the walls of the **Palatine**. Popular tales of the Romans told an interesting story of the way early Rome was filled with people. It seems that the Romans held some great festival to which all the maidens of the neighboring tribes were invited. When the games were going on, and all the maidens were intently watching, each Roman, at a given signal, seized one for himself and kept her for his wife. Thus, they said, domestic life began at Rome.

After Rome had become important as a large village, the men of surrounding tribes made their homes there and increased the population. Eventually Rome fell into the power of the **Etruscans**, who set up a kingdom there. When the new government was established, the leading

men of the Roman families were called together as an advisory council for the kings, and formed the **Senate**. Descendants of these senators made up the first group of citizens at Rome called the **Patrician Order**. Men of other tribes who had come to Rome made up the **Plebeian Order**, or the common people of Rome. The **Etruscan** kings were finally banished, and a **Republican** government under two **Consuls** was set up. This government was at first entirely controlled by the Patricians, the Plebeians having no voice in public affairs. The later history of Rome is mainly the story of the struggle of the Plebeians for a voice in the government.

XX. THE VERB. FIRST CONJUGATION

294.

armō, armāre, armāvī, armātus, to equip with weapons, arm.

creō, creāre, creāvī, creātus, to create, elect.

dō, dare, dedī, datus, to give, grant.

errō, errāre, errāvī, errātum, to go astray, make a mistake.

firmō, firmāre, firmāvī, firmātus, to make firm, strengthen.

memorō, memorāre, memorāvī, memorātus, to mention, relate.

ēmigrō, ēmigrāre, ēmigrāvī, ēmigrātum, to move away.

mōnstrō, mōnstrāre, mōnstrāvī, mōnstrātus, to show, point out.

mūtō, mūtāre, mūtāvī, mūtātus, to change, alter.

stō, stāre, stetī, statum, to stand, stand firm.

Learn these first conjugation verbs.

295. WORD STUDY.—Can you tell the Latin base and the English meanings of the following words? Add, army, monster, commute, station, destiny, statute, constitution, armory, donor, solstice, demonstrate, dative, erratic, ar-

APPLIED LATIN

mada, memorandum, confirm, editor, stagnant, armistice, firmament, memorial, monstrous, statue, render, errant, stall, infirmary, remonstrate, surrender, disarm, standard, armament, unerring, commuter, donation, firm, memoir, date, immutable, erratum, memory, monstrosity, addition, erroneous, obstacle, institute, data, error, affirm, infirmity, memorable, mutual, erring, destitute, stable, superstition, distance, assist, staid, stability, establish, restive, constant, stage, standstill.

Discuss these derivatives in class. Learn to spell them correctly. Use them in sentences.

296. LAUDŌ.—Passive Voice—Indicative Mood

SINGULAR		Present Tense	PLURAL
1. laudor, <i>I am praised</i>		1. laudāmur, <i>we are praised</i>	
2. laudāris, <i>you are praised</i>		2. laudāmini, <i>you are praised</i>	
3. laudātur, <i>he (she, it) is praised</i>		3. laudantur, <i>they are praised</i>	
		Imperfect Tense	
1. laudābar, <i>I was praised</i>		1. laudābāmur, <i>we were praised</i>	
2. laudābāris, <i>you were praised</i>		2. laudābāmini, <i>you were praised</i>	
3. laudābātur, <i>he (she, it) was praised</i>		3. laudābantur, <i>they were praised</i>	
		Future Tense	
1. laudābor, <i>I shall be praised</i>		1. laudābimur, <i>we shall be praised</i>	
2. laudāberis, <i>you will be praised</i>		2. laudābimini, <i>you will be praised</i>	
3. laudābitur, <i>he (she, it) will be praised</i>		3. laudābuntur, <i>they will be praised</i>	

297. The Passive Voice. You have already learned that the *passive voice* is used when the subject of the sentence is

represented, not as acting upon some object, but as being acted upon.

298. EXAMPLES.--He strikes John (verb in the active voice). He is struck by John (verb in the passive voice). From the second of these sentences note *that it is impossible to have a direct object after a passive verb.*

299. EXAMPLES.—He strikes John. John is struck by him. From the second of these sentences note *that the direct object of a verb in the active voice becomes the subject of the verb when the verb is changed from the active to the passive voice.*

300. Translate for practice: 1. Amor, liberātur, ōrnāminī. 2. Laudātur, vocantur, superāmur, parāris. 3. Portantur, spectāminī, narrantur. 4. Parābātur, laudābātur, portābāmur. 5. Nārrābātur, vocābantur, amābāris, spectābāminī. 6. Ōrnābantur, liberābāminī, superābantur. 7. Portābuntur, vocābor, superābimur. 8. Parāberis, spectābiminī. 9. Amābimur, liberābuntur. 10. Nārrābitur, clāmābitur, ōrnāberis.

301. Translate: 1. Neque tēlis neque gladiīs armor. 2. Tū rēx Brittanōrum ē multitudīne militum creāris. 3. Prōvinciae nāvibus praesidiīsque māximīs fīrmābantur sed hostēs impetūs terribilēs saepe fēcērunt. 4. Post perīcula et labōres vītae nōmina virōrum illūstriū memorantur. 5. Vōs inter optimōs cīvēs mōnstrābiminī.

302. Translate: 1. I shall be decorated with a crown. 2. We shall be overcome by the cold. 3. The slaves will be carried from the island. 4. Nevertheless they always desire freedom. 5. At first the commander looked at the army. 6.

APPLIED LATIN

Then he changed the line of battle. 7. We have seen the sunset.

QUIZ.—When is the passive voice used? Can a passive verb have a direct object?

XXI. THE PRONOUN. PERSONAL

303. The personal pronoun of the *third* person:

Is, Ea, Id, He, She, It, This, That

SINGULAR			
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id
<i>Gen.</i>	eius	eius	eius
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō
PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	eī, iī	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
<i>Acc.</i>	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

Meaning of the cases:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>he, she, it, this, that</i>	<i>they, these, those</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>of him, her, it, this, that</i>	<i>of them, these, those</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>to or for him, her, it, this, that</i>	<i>to or for them, these, those</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>him, her, it, this, that</i>	<i>them, these, those</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>with, etc., him, her, it, this, that</i>	<i>with, etc., them, these, those</i>

304. The pronoun **is**, *when used in agreement with a noun*, becomes a **demonstrative adjective**; **Is** *homō*, *this man*; **ea** *fēmina*, *this woman*; **id** *bellum*, *this war*.

305. Translate: 1. *Avēs loquācēs eīs* dabuntur.* 2. *Ab eīs** hostēs superantur.* 3. *Filiīs* poētae novam viam mōnstrāmus.* 4. *Ā cōsulibus** lēgēs malae mūtābantur.* 5. *Ampla prōvinciae vectīgālia imperātōrī dabantur.* 6. *Eōrum equī in agrō sunt.* 7. *Aedificia māgna eīs faciēmus.*

* Many verbs are followed by *two* objects: the direct (accusative) upon which the verb acts *directly*, and the *indirect* (dative) with which the action of the verb is *indirectly concerned*. Thus: *I give the book* (d. o.) *to John* (i. o.). In sentences Nos. 3, 5, 7 are cases of the *dative of the indirect object*.

306. RULE.—Indirect Object.—*The indirect object of a verb is put in the dative case.*

** Note the instances in 2 and 4 of the *ablative introduced by ab* (*ā*). These ablatives are used with verbs in the *passive voice*. They indicate the **person by whom** the action is done. Change the verb to the active voice and you will see that the ablative becomes the **subject** of the verb.

307. RULE.—Ablative of Agent.—*The personal agent with a passive verb is put in the ablative case introduced by the preposition ab* (*ā*).

Translate: 1. *I love her son.* 2. *He is freed by the commander.* 3. *They are carrying grain to the town.* 4. *Their voices are heavy.* 5. *We were overcome by them.* 6. *Are you looking at them (fem.)?* 7. *We shall be armed with those swords.* 8. *He was appointed consul.*

QUIZ.—Give the personal pronouns for all three persons, singular and plural. How is the *indirect object* expressed? The *personal agent*?

XXII. THE VERB. FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

308. LAUDŌ.—Passive Voice—Indicative Mood

SINGULAR	<i>Perfect Tense</i>	PLURAL
1. laudātus (a, um) sum, <i>I have been praised</i>		1. laudāti (ae, a) sumus, <i>we have been praised</i>
2. laudātus (a, um) es, <i>you have been praised</i>		2. laudāti (ae, a) estis, <i>you have been praised</i>
3. laudātus (a, um) est, <i>he (she, it) has been praised</i>		3. laudāti (ae, a) sunt, <i>they have been praised</i>

Pluperfect Tense

1. laudātus (a, um) eram, <i>I had been praised</i>	1. laudāti (ae, a) erāmus, <i>we had been praised</i>
2. laudātus (a, um) erās, <i>you had been praised</i>	2. laudāti (ae, a) erātis, <i>you had been praised</i>
3. laudātus (a, um) erat, <i>he (she, it) had been praised</i>	3. laudāti (ae, a) erant, <i>they had been praised</i>

Future Perfect Tense

1. laudātus (a, um) erō, <i>I shall have been praised</i>	1. laudāti (ae, a) erimus, <i>we shall have been praised</i>
2. laudātus (a, um) eris, <i>you will have been praised</i>	2. laudāti (ae, a) eritis, <i>you will have been praised</i>
3. laudātus (a, um) erit, <i>he (she, it) will have been praised</i>	3. laudāti (ae, a) erunt, <i>they will have been praised</i>

309. These tenses are the *easiest* of the Latin verb because they are composed of forms which you already know.

THE VERB

They are made up of the *fourth principal part of the verb and tenses of the verb sum*. Hence these tenses are called *compound tenses*.

The form **laudātus** is really an *adjective*, and is declined like the adjective **lātus**. You must be very careful to make the adjective **laudātus** correspond in *gender and number* with the *gender and number of the subject of the verb*, as

homō laudātus est,

fēmina laudāta est,

carmen laudātum est,

hominēs laudātī sunt,

fēminae laudātae sunt,

carmina laudāta sunt.

310. Translate these forms for rapidity: 1. Amātus es, ōrnātī sunt, parātae estis. 2. Mōnstrāta erant, mūtātae erimus, creātum erit.

311. Translate: 1. Ā meīs filiābus amātus sum. 2. Perīcula ab hostibus creāta erunt. 3. Bella Gallica ab omnibus cīvibus optimīs memorāta erant. 4. Ubi sunt litterae? 5. Nōmen lēgis mūtātum est. 6. Fēminae in lūce sōlis stābant. 7. Mōns altissimus in fīnibus hostium stat. 8. Itaque agricolae ex agrīs ēmigrāvērunt.

312. Translate: 1. Toil brings fame to many men. 2. In time of war we give aid to our friends. 3. Their house is burning, and the slaves are bringing water. 4. Have we been praised by the soldiers? 5. The names of evil men are never mentioned by good citizens. 6. The enemy stood at the head of the bridge.

313. Explain the uses of the ablative in these sentences. Review all the English derivatives of first conjugation verbs.

APPLIED LATIN

314.

dēleō,	dēlēre,	dēlēvī,	dēlētus,	<i>to blot out, destroy.</i>
flōreō,	flōrēre,	flōruī,	—,	<i>to bloom.</i>
fulgeō,	fulgēre,	fulsī,	—,	<i>to glow, flash.</i>
lūceō,	lūcēre,	lūxī,	—,	<i>to give light, beam.</i>
rīdeō,	rīdēre,	rīsī,	rīsum,	<i>to laugh (at).</i>
caveō,	cavēre,	cāvī,	cautus,	<i>to beware, be on one's guard.</i>
torqueō,	torquēre,	torsī,	tortus,	<i>to twist.</i>
studeō,	studēre,	studuī,	—,	<i>to attend to, be eager (followed by the dative).</i>
spondeō,	spondēre,	spōndī,	spōnsus,	<i>to promise.</i>
placeō,	placēre,	placuī,	placitus,	<i>to please (followed by the dative).</i>
faveō,	favēre,	fāvī,	fautus,	<i>to favor, aid (followed by the dative).</i>

Learn these second conjugation verbs.

315. WORD STUDY.—Let us see what words are derived from the verbs above:

- dēleō, delete, indelible.
- flōreō, flower, flourish, Florence, efflorescence, florist.
- fulgeō, refulgent, effulgent.
- lūceō, Lucy, lucent, translucent, lurid, elucidate.
- rīdeō, deride, derision, risible, ridicule.
- caveō, caution, precaution, cautionary.
- torqueō, extort, contort, distort, torture, torment.
- studeō, study, studious, student.
- spondeō, spouse, respond, sponsor, despond, irresponsible, correspond.
- placeō, please, displease, complacent, complaisance, pleasant, pleasure, placid.
- faveō, favorite, favor, disfavor, favorable.

316. EXAMPLES OF THESE DERIVATIVES IN ENGLISH.—

1. We have indelible pencils.
2. The florist sells flowers.
3. The polished shield was refulgent in the sunlight.
4. Very fine china through which light can shine is said to be translucent; glass through which the eye can see objects very

THE VERB

clearly is called transparent. 5. A lurid flame lighted up the heavens. 6. Do not deride people who take precautions. 7. By means of torture evidence was extorted from the slave. 8. An irresponsible person is a bad companion for young people. 9. May fortune favor the brave.

317. HABEŌ.—Passive Voice—Indicative Mood

SINGULAR		Present Tense	PLURAL
1. habeor, <i>I am held (had)</i>		1. habēmur, <i>we are held (had)</i>	
2. habēris, <i>you are held (had)</i>		2. habēmini, <i>you are held (had)</i>	
3. habētur, <i>he (she, it) is held (had)</i>		3. habentur, <i>they are held (had)</i>	
		Imperfect Tense	
1. habēbar, <i>I was held (had)</i>		1. habēbāmur, <i>we were held (had)</i>	
2. habēbāris, <i>you were held (had)</i>		2. habēbāmini, <i>you were held (had)</i>	
3. habēbātur, <i>he (she, it) was held (had)</i>		3. habēbantur, <i>they were held (had)</i>	
		Future Tense	
1. habēbor, <i>I shall be held (had)</i>		1. habēbimur, <i>we shall be held (had)</i>	
2. habēberis, <i>you will be held (had)</i>		2. habēbimini, <i>you will be held (had)</i>	
3. habēbitur, <i>he (she, it) will be held (had)</i>		3. habēbuntur, <i>they will be held (had)</i>	

Practise these tenses, using the verbs given in Paragraph 314.

318. Translate: 1. Placētur, spondēmur, torquēris, favētur, dēlentur. 2. Iubēbātur, tenēbāris, terrēbāmur, vidēbāmini, habēbantur. 3. Studēbitur, torquēbimus, dēlēbuntur, tenēbimini, habēberis.

319. Translate: 1. Memoria periculōrum graviōrum novīs calamitātibus dēlētur. 2. Aestāte silvae flōruērunt. 3. Fortūna fortibus favet. 4. Captīvī ā militibus habentur. 5. Ignis ingēns in colle fulgēbat. 6. Per nūbēs dēnsās sōl nōn semper lūcet. 7. Legiōnēs victōriā risērunt et clāmāvērunt. 8. Nōnne iram Caesaris cavēmus? 9. Silvae vehementibus

hiemis ventis torquentur. 10. Hūmānitātī et libertātī cīvēs Rōmānī studēbant. 11. Dōna amicis propter cūram diligētiāque eōrum spopondimus. 12. Opera militum duci placent.

320. Translate: 1. We are moved by the dangers of the war. 2. The streets of the town were filled by the shouts of the wayfarers. 3. The taxes are increased because of the lack of grain. 4. Their sons and daughters will be taught by the poet. 5. The labor of years was destroyed by the flames.

XXIII. THE PRONOUN. REFLEXIVE

321. You have already learned the personal pronouns of the first, second, and third persons.

In such sentences as *I praise myself* or *you love yourself* or *he strikes himself*, a special kind of personal pronoun is used for the objects **myself**, **yourself**, and **himself**. This pronoun is called the *reflexive personal pronoun*.

322. The **reflexive pronouns** of the *first* and *second* persons are the *same in form as the personal pronouns ego and tū*.

I praise myself,	mē laudō.
You praise yourself,	tē laudās.
We praise ourselves,	nōs laudāmus.
You praise yourselves,	vōs laudātis.

There is a **special reflexive pronoun** for the *third* person:

	THIRD PERSON REFLEXIVE PRONOUN	
Nom.	—	
Gen.	sui,	of himself, herself, itself.
Dat.	sibi,	to or for himself, herself, itself.
Acc.	sē,	himself, herself, itself.
Voc.	—	
Abl.	sē,	with, from, in, or by himself, herself, itself.

THE PRONOUN. REFLEXIVE

The plural of this pronoun has the same forms as the singular. The meanings of the plural cases are of *themselves, to or for themselves*, etc.

323. The following **possessive adjectives** are formed from the personal pronouns:

meus, mea, meum, my or mine.	noster, nostra, nostrum, our.
tuus, tua, tuum, your (singular).	vester, vestra, vestrum, your (plural).
suus, sua, suum, his, her, its.	suus, sua, suum, their.

These adjectives are declined like **lātus**. The *nominative singular masculine* of **noster** and **vester** are exceptional (**ager**, Paragraph 46). All the other forms of these two adjectives follow **lātus** exactly. **Suus** is reflexive. If his, her, etc., denotes possession by the subject of the verb, use **suus**; if possession by someone other than the subject, use the *genitive* of **is** (**eius, eōrum, eārum**).

324. TRANSLATE

TRANSLATE

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Meus servus sē laudābit. | 1. The king's sister looks at her own image. |
| 2. Nōs vestris corōnīs ōrnāmur. | 2. We know ourselves. |
| 3. Mē in aquā videō. | 3. Our sun shines with its own light. |
| 4. Rēgēs sē nōn semper rēxērunt. | 4. Men love their own sons. |
| 5. Caput tuum ad occāsum sōlis vertēbās. | 5. The woman is led by her own daughters. |
| 6. Ars per sē valēbit. | 6. Caesar will be praised by his own leaders. |
| 7. Poēta suum carmen nārrāvit. | 7. Your sons have loved me always. |
| 8. Nostris labōribus semper laudābimur. | 8. Your (<i>singular</i>) daughters give gifts to the sailor. |
| 9. Noster avis eōrum vōcēs audīverat. | 9. Our horses often remain in the fields. |
| 10. Vōs nōs vestibus tegitis. | 10. Where are your (<i>plural</i>) weapons? |

XXIV. THE VERB. SECOND AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS

325. HABEŌ.—Passive Voice—Indicative Mood

SINGULAR	Perfect Tense	PLURAL
1. habitus (a, um) sum, <i>I have been held (had)</i>	1. habiti (ae, a) sumus, <i>we have been held (had)</i>	
2. habitus (a, um) es, <i>you have been held (had)</i>	2. habiti (ae, a) estis, <i>you have been held (had)</i>	
3. habitus (a, um) est, <i>he (she, it) has been held (had)</i>	3. habiti (ae, a) sunt, <i>they have been held (had)</i>	

Pluperfect Tense

1. habitus (a, um) eram, <i>I had been held (had)</i>	1. habiti (ae, a) erāmus, <i>we had been held (had)</i>
2. habitus (a, um) erās, <i>you had been held (had)</i>	2. habiti (ae, a) erātis, <i>you had been held (had)</i>
3. habitus (a, um) erat, <i>he (she, it) had been held (had)</i>	3. habiti (ae, a) erant, <i>they had been held (had)</i>

Future Perfect Tense

1. habitus (a, um) erō, <i>I shall have been held (had)</i>	1. habiti (ae, a) erimus, <i>we shall have been held (had)</i>
2. habitus (a, um) eris, <i>you will have been held (had)</i>	2. habiti (ae, a) eritis, <i>you will have been held (had)</i>
3. habitus (a, um) erit, <i>he (she, it) will have been held (had)</i>	3. habiti (ae, a) erunt, <i>they will have been held (had)</i>

Practise these tenses, using the verbs given in Paragraph

314.

326. Translate: 1. Iūssus sum, territa es, vīsum est, placitum est, dēlēta sunt, spōnsī sumus. 2. Dēlētum erat, tortī erant, iūssī erāmus, habitae erātis. 3. Vīsum erit, placitum erit, territī eritis, iūssī erunt.

327. Translate: 1. Captīvus in supplicio aeternō habitus sum. 2. Virī suīs calamitātibus mōtī erant. 3. Num sōl sē movet? 4. In fābulis poētārum multa sunt falsa. 5. Leō atrōx sē in clārā flūminis aquā spectābat. 6. Omnis exercitus in suō locō manēbat. 7. Frāter sorōrem suam dūxit. 8.

THE VERB

Caput, frōns, dentēs, manūs sunt partēs corporis. 9. Nātūra hominum vestibis bonīs nōn mūtātur. 10. Cōsulēs clāmōribus cīvium territī erunt.

328. Translate: 1. The swift birds were seen in the forest. 2. Life is short and time is fleeting. 3. Above the pathless forests the sun shines. 4. Over the river there was a frail bridge. 5. The sad mother touched the face of her son with her hand. 6. I am considered a citizen of many states. 7. The bird was seen at the edge of the spring.

Review all the English derivatives of second conjugation verbs.

329.

caedō,	caedere,	cecīdī,	caesus,	<i>to cut, kill.</i>
crēdō,	crēdere,	crēdidī,	crēditus,	<i>to trust, believe.</i> (followed by dative)
claudō,	claudere,	clausī,	clausus,	<i>to close.</i>
crēscō,	crēscere,	crēvī,	crētus,	<i>to increase.</i>
flectō,	flectere,	flēxī,	flexus,	<i>to bend.</i>
fluō,	fluere,	flūxī,	fluxum,	<i>to flow.</i>
frangō,	frangere,	frēgī,	frāctus,	<i>to break.</i>
solvō,	solvere,	solvī,	solūtus,	<i>to loosen, free.</i>
struō,	struere,	strūxī,	strūctus,	<i>to build.</i>
vincō,	vincere,	vīcī,	victus,	<i>to conquer.</i>

Learn these third conjugation verbs.

330. WORD STUDY.—Can you pick out the Latin bases and define the English meanings of these words? Suicide, seclusion, flux, resolve, substructure, convince, reflector, credit, flow, fraction, instruct, conviction, solve, decide, conclude, fluent, insolvent, obstruct, destroy, deflect, creed, fluid, fraction, soluble, structure, fracture, concise, include, flue, resolute, convict, destructive, flexible, credulity, affluent,

solvent, victor, dissolute, infringe, incision, conclude, confluence, invincible, construct, fragment, inflection, incredible, influential, victim, superstructure, dissolve, fragile, precise, fluctuate.

Write English sentences containing these derivatives.

331. DŪCŌ.—Passive Voice—Indicative Mood

SINGULAR	Present Tense	PLURAL
1. dūcor, <i>I am led</i>	1. dūcimur, <i>we are led</i>	
2. dūceris, <i>you are led</i>	2. dūcimini, <i>you are led</i>	
3. dūcitur, <i>he (she, it) is led</i>	3. dūcuntur, <i>they are led</i>	
<i>Imperfect Tense</i>		
1. dūcēbar, <i>I was led</i>	1. dūcēbāmur, <i>we were led</i>	
2. dūcēbāris, <i>you were led</i>	2. dūcēbāmini, <i>you were led</i>	
3. dūcēbātur, <i>he (she, it) was led</i>	3. dūcēbantur, <i>they were led</i>	
<i>Future Tense</i>		
1. dūcar, <i>I shall be led</i>	1. dūcēmur, <i>we shall be led</i>	
2. dūceris, <i>you will be led</i>	2. dūcēmini, <i>you will be led</i>	
3. dūcētur, <i>he (she, it) will be led</i>	3. dūcentur, <i>they will be led</i>	

Practise these tenses, using the verbs of Paragraph 329.

332. Translate: 1. Caedor, crēditur, crēscitur, flectimur, frangiminī, struuntur. 2. Vincēbar, solvēbāris, claudēbātur, crēdēbātur, caedēbantur. 3. Crēdētur, flectēris, crēscētur. 4. Caedēmur, vincēmini, struentur.

333. Translate: 1. Aedificium ingēns in colle altissimō struēbātur. 2. Manum meam cecidī. 3. Ibi flūmen nōbile fluit. 4. Portae urbis clauduntur et omnēs militēs terrōre tacent. 5. Cursus aquae ab agricolā flectēbātur. 6. Labor omnia vincit. 7. Calamitatibus necessitatibusque docēmur. 8. Captivī in oppidum dūcuntur. 9. Dentēs leōnis gladiō servī frangentur. 10. Hieme frīgus crēscit sed

aestāte clārō sōlis lūmine vincitur. 11. Fābula fallācis captīvī ab omnibus lēgātīs crēdēbātur.

334. Translate: 1. Love laughs at all restraint. 2. Broad rivers flow from the mountains into the sea. 3. The gates of the city are closed against the enemy. 4. Caesar built a wall around the town. 5. We believe in virtue and nobility. 6. The rush of the wind was overcome by the high hills. 7. A fleet was constructed for the famous consuls.

XXV. THE PRONOUN. DEMONSTRATIVE

335.

hic, haec, hōc, *this, or this man, woman, thing, according to the gender.*

iste, ista, istud, *that (of yours), or that man, woman, thing, according to the gender.*

ille, illa, illud, *that, or that man, woman, thing, according to the gender.*

336. These three words are **pronouns** because they *replace* nouns. They are called **demonstrative** because they *point out* (**dēmōnstrō**) or *call attention* to special persons, places, or things.

Examples as pronouns:

1. **Ille est bonus homō.** *That is a good man.*

2. **Haec est mea māter.** *This is my mother.*

Hic, iste, and ille when used in agreement with nouns are demonstrative adjectives.

Examples as adjectives:

1. **Hic homō est imperātor noster.** *This man is our commander.*

2. **Ista filia est sapiēns.** *That daughter of yours is wise.*

These three words are, consequently, **sometimes demonstrative pronouns, sometimes demonstrative adjectives.**

APPLIED LATIN

337. **Hic** is sometimes called a pronoun of the *first person* because it *always refers to some one close beside the speaker*.

Iste is sometimes called a pronoun of the *second person* because it *refers to some one a little removed from the speaker, that is, over beside you*.

Ille is sometimes called a pronoun of the *third person* because it *refers to some one at a considerable distance from the speaker*.

338. Learn the declension of **hic**.

SINGULAR					
<i>Nom.</i>	hic,	haec,	hōc,	<i>this,</i>	<i>he, she, it.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	hūius,	hūius,	hūius,	<i>of this,</i>	<i>of him, her, it.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	huic,	huic,	huic,	<i>to or for this,</i>	<i>to him, her, it.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc,	hanc,	hōc,	<i>this,</i>	<i>him, her, it.</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—,	—,	—,	—,	—.
<i>Abl.</i>	hōc,	hāc,	hōc,	<i>with, etc., this.</i>	<i>him her, it.</i>
PLURAL					
<i>Nom.</i>	hī,	hae,	haec,	<i>these,</i>	<i>they.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	hōrum,	hārum,	hōrum,	<i>of these,</i>	<i>them.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	hīs,	hīs,	hīs,	<i>to or for these,</i>	<i>them.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	hōs,	hās,	haec,	<i>these,</i>	<i>them.</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—,	—,	—,	—,	—.
<i>Abl.</i>	hīs,	hīs,	hīs,	<i>with, etc., these.</i>	<i>them.</i>

339. The pronoun **hic** is constantly used as an **adjective**, and when so used is a **demonstrative adjective**.

340. Translate: 1. **Hic** (homō) equum in agrō vīdit, sed domum nōn dūxit. 2. Militēs hīs gladiīs caedem atrōcem facient. 3. Omnēs (virī) mātrem Caesaris amant. 4. **Hī** (servī) domī sunt. 5. Rosaene aestāte flōrent? 6. **Haec** (perīcula) multōs fortēs terruērunt, sed legiōnēs imperātōris numquam fūgērunt. 7. **Hōc** (carmen) saepe laudātum est. 8. **Hāc** in prōvinciā cōsul sapienter rēxit. 9. **Hunc** lēgā-

THE VERB

tum dē pāce statim mīsimus. 10. Nunc bellum atrōcissimum est in Eurōpā. 11. Trāns flūmen lātum Germānī castra posuērunt. 12. Hīs (rēbus) sociī territī sunt.

341. Translate: 1. These men were dragging that anchor from the water. 2. I am giving a gift to that son (of yours). 3. The leader of this legion saw that river and those bridges. 4. Do you favor those nations? 5. With this hope the minds of the soldiers were filled. 6. That house (of yours) in the valley is burning. 7. There stood the standard of Caesar. 8. We favor this law.

XXVI. THE VERB. THIRD CONJUGATION

342. DŪCŌ.—Passive Voice—Indicative Mood

SINGULAR	<i>Perfect Tense</i>	PLURAL
1. ductus (a, um) sum, <i>I have been led</i>	1. ductī (ae, a) sumus, <i>we have been led</i>	
2. ductus (a, um) es, <i>you have been led</i>	2. ductī (ae, a) estis, <i>you have been led</i>	
3. ductus (a, um) est, <i>he (she, it) has been led</i>	3. ductī (ae, a) sunt, <i>they have been led</i>	

<i>Pluperfect Tense</i>		
1. ductus (a, um) eram, <i>I had been led</i>	1. ductī (ae, a) erāmus, <i>we had been led</i>	
2. ductus (a, um) erās, <i>you had been led</i>	2. ductī (ae, a) erātis, <i>you had been led</i>	
3. ductus (a, um) erat, <i>he (she, it) had been led</i>	3. ductī (ae, a) erant, <i>they had been led</i>	

<i>Future Perfect Tense</i>		
1. ductus (a, um) erō, <i>I shall have been led</i>	1. ductī (ae, a) erimus, <i>we shall have been led</i>	
2. ductus (a, um) eris, <i>you will have been led</i>	2. ductī (ae, a) eritis, <i>you will have been led</i>	
3. ductus (a, um) erit, <i>he (she, it) will have been led</i>	3. ductī (ae, a) erunt, <i>they will have been led</i>	

Practise these tenses, using the verbs given in Paragraph 329.

APPLIED LATIN

343. Translate these forms: 1. *Caesus sum, crēditum est, clausum est, flexī sumus, frācta sunt.* 2. *Solūtus erās, strūctum erat, victī erātis, caesī erant, ductae erāmus.* 3. *Petītus erō, positae erunt, rēctī erimus, pressī eritis, scrīptae erunt.*

344. Translate: 1. *Dentibus hūius leōnis caesus erō.* 2. *Ex hāc prōvinciā celeriter pulsī erāmus.* 3. *Frīgus ignibus plūrimīs premētur.* 4. *Scientia artis ūtilis omnibus honōrem dat.* 5. *Aqua ē flūmine ad urbem dūcētur.* 6. *Auxilia ā Caesare missa erunt.* 7. *Litterae recenter scrīptae erant.* 8. *In manibus nūntī māgna pecūnia posita est.*

345. Translate: 1. The enemy quickly sought peace. 2. He was called emperor by a happy throng. 3. At the beginning of the fight the line of battle was broken. 4. However, the legions easily retained their places and then the enemy was driven from the camp. 5. The leader's standard was being carried before the marching troops.

Review all the English derivatives of third conjugation verbs.

THE STORY OF LATER ROME

The Republican form of government lasted till the time of the great general, **Julius Caesar**, who brought about the changes which turned the **Roman Republic** into an **Empire**. **Caesar** lived just a little while before the time of **Christ**, and the republic which he ended had lasted about five hundred years. The early years of the republic were occupied with the struggles of the **Patricians** and **Plebeians**, and of both with the tribes surrounding Rome.

THE STORY OF LATER ROME

The rising **Roman** power next came into conflict with the **Carthaginians**, who possessed a great naval empire, with a base at **Carthage**, in **Africa**. After the **first war** with this nation, Rome gained control of **Sicily**. The **second war** brought into history **Hannibal**, one of the world's greatest commanders. Starting from **Spain**, **Hannibal** made a wonderful passage over the **Alps**, overwhelmed the **Romans** in **North Italy**, advanced toward **Rome**, and made his camp at **Capua**. For months he remained in **Magna Graecia**, proving a terror to the people of Rome. Roman mothers quieted their children by telling them that **Hannibal** "would get them if they didn't watch out." Finally he was forced to return to **Carthage** because of troubles at home. The **third war** saw the complete destruction of **Carthage** by Roman armies led by **Scīpiō Africānus**. The supremacy of **Rome** over the **Western Mediterranean** followed the victory of **Scīpiō**. At the same time **Roman** armies conquered **Greece**, thus extending their power over the **Eastern Mediterranean**.

At last the task of governing the whole world became too great for the citizens of **Rome**. The ordinary Roman citizen could not cope with the problems of imperial control. Men of genius began to see an opportunity for seizing imperial power. Bloody **civil wars** became the fashion in Rome. **Marius**, **Sulla**, **Pompey**, and **Julius Caesar** followed one another in quick succession. **Caesar** was at last successful, after a terrible period of civil war. But he was assassinated soon after securing control. His successor, **Augustus**, during a long peaceful reign, established the

Empire, which spread abroad **Roman** laws, customs, and government throughout **Europe** and **Western Asia**.

XXVII. THE PRONOUN. DEMONSTRATIVE

346. Learn the declension of **ille**.

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	ille,	illa,	illud,	<i>that,</i>	<i>he, she, it.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	illius,	illius,	illius,	<i>of that,</i>	<i>him.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	illi,	illi,	illi,	<i>to or for that,</i>	<i>him, her, it.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	illum,	illam,	illud,	<i>that,</i>	<i>him, her, it</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—,	—,	—,	—,	—.
<i>Abl.</i>	illō,	illā,	illō,	<i>with, etc., that,</i>	<i>him, her, it.</i>

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	illi,	illae,	illa,	<i>those,</i>	<i>they.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	illōrum,	illārum,	illōrum,	<i>of those,</i>	<i>them.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	illis,	illis,	illis,	<i>to or for those,</i>	<i>them.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	illōs,	illās,	illa,	<i>those,</i>	<i>them.</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—,	—,	—,	—,	—.
<i>Abl.</i>	illis,	illis,	illis,	<i>with, etc., those,</i>	<i>them.</i>

347. The declension of **iste**, *that (of yours)*, *he*, corresponds exactly in endings to the declension of **ille**.

348. Like **hic**, **ille** and **iste** are often used in agreement with nouns. When thus used these **pronouns** become **demonstrative adjectives**. **Ille** is sometimes used in the same sentence with **hic** to indicate a contrast, as **ille**, *the former*; **hic**, *the latter*.

349. Translate: 1. *Illud vīnum pessimum erat.* 2. *Illō bellō istī milītēs territi sunt.* 3. *Iste filiū imperātōrem suū amat.* 4. *Illa calamitās civitātem fēlicem superāvit.* 5. *Nōs clāmōrem māgnam in illō templō saepe facimus.*

6. Ubi ille pōns in flūmine lāto fuit? 7. Caesarem et Galbam vidēmus; ille imperātor, hīc agricola est.

350. Translate: 1. We see the swift motion of that river. 2. That army was led across the bridge into the territories of the enemy. 3. The fragrance of roses is pleasing to all men. 4. The color of the garment had been destroyed by the light of the sun. 5. The great war has destroyed the laws of nations. 6. In these days we seek peace not war.

Certain Irregular Adjectives

351. Certain adjectives in Latin resemble *ille* and *iste* in declension, especially in the *genitive* and *dative singular*. When used alone, these adjectives become pronouns.

352. Learn this declension: *tōtus, tōta, tōtum, all, whole*.

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	tōtus	tōta	tōtum	tōtī	tōtae	tōta
<i>Gen.</i>	tōtius	tōtius	tōtius	totōrum	tōtārum	tōtōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	tōtī	tōtī	tōtī	tōtis	tōtis	tōtis
<i>Acc.</i>	tōtum	tōtam	tōtum	tōtōs	tōtās	tōta
<i>Voc.</i>	tōte	tōta	tōtum	tōtī	tōtae	tōta
<i>Abl.</i>	tōtō	tōtā	tōtō	tōtis	tōtis	tōtis

353. Learn the following irregular adjectives:

ūnus, ūna, ūnum, <i>one, alone.</i>	sōlus, sōla, solum, <i>alone, only.</i>
ūllus, ūlla, ūllum, <i>any.</i>	alius, alia, aliud, <i>other, another.</i>
nūllus, nūlla, nūllum, <i>none, no.</i>	alter, altera, alterum, <i>the one,</i>
uter, utra, utrum, <i>which (of two).</i>	<i>the other (of two); Genitive</i>
neuter, neutra, neutrum, <i>neither</i>	<i>singular, alterius.</i>
<i>(of two).</i>	
uterque, utraque, utrumque, <i>each</i>	
<i>(of two) both.</i>	

354. Translate: 1. Aliī cōsulēs māiōrēs prōvinciās ha-

bent. 2. Tōtum carmen amāmus. 3. Nūllī puerōs malōs laudant. 4. Aliud flūmen in mare fluit. 5. Nōs sōlī imperātōrēs sumus.

WORD STUDY.—Explain these English words and use them in sentences of your own: Unit, alternate, sole, alien, neuter, union, total, alternately, soliloquy, neutrality, annul, unify, in toto, null, solo, once, uniform.

XXVIII. THE VERB. THIRD CONJUGATION IN -IŌ

355. Review Paragraphs 224-231.

356. Learn the conjugation of the following tenses of the passive voice of verbs in -iō.

CAPIŌ.—Passive Voice—Indicative Mood

SINGULAR	Present Tense	PLURAL
1. capior, <i>I am taken</i>	1. capimur, <i>we are taken</i>	
2. caperis, <i>you are taken</i>	2. capimini, <i>you are taken</i>	
3. capitur, <i>he (she, it) is taken</i>	3. capiuntur, <i>they are taken</i>	
<i>Imperfect Tense</i>		
1. capiēbar, <i>I was taken</i>	1. capiēbāmur, <i>we were taken</i>	
2. capiēbāris, <i>you were taken</i>	2. capiēbāmini, <i>you were taken</i>	
3. capiēbātur, <i>he (she, it) was taken</i>	3. capiēbantur, <i>they were taken</i>	
<i>Future Tense</i>		
1. capiar, <i>I shall be taken</i>	1. capiēmur, <i>we shall be taken</i>	
2. capiēris, <i>you will be taken</i>	2. capiēmini, <i>you will be taken</i>	
3. capiētur, <i>he (she, it) will be taken</i>	3. capientur, <i>they will be taken</i>	

357. The verb **facio** does not possess these three tenses of the passive voice. Instead of them the Latins used tenses of **fiō**, an irregular verb to be taken up later.

358. The **perfect**, **pluperfect**, and **future perfect** tenses of

these verbs *do not differ* in conjugation from the same tenses of **dūcō**.

Conjugate **captus sum, captus eram, captus erō**.

359. Practise these tenses, using the other seven verbs given.

360. For rapidity translate these forms: 1. **Capior, iaceris, specitur.** 2. **Rapimur, cupīminī, quatiēbar.** 3. **Capiēbāris, rapiēbātur, iaciēbāminī.** 4. **Cupiēbāmur, rapiar.** 5. **Capiēris, speciētur, iaciēmur.** 6. **Cupiēminī, quatientur.** 7. **Iactus sum, cupīta es, quassī erāmus, factae erātis, rapta erunt.**

361. Translate: 1. **Praeda ab hostibus rapiēbātur.** 2. **Tēla in flūmen iacta erant.** 3. **Mūrus māgnus ā mīlitibus capiētur.** 4. **Mōns altus ventīs vehementibus quassus erit.** 5. **Māgna pecūnia ab omnibus hominibus nōn cupitur.** 6. **Dē vāllō tēla in dēnsam turbam accūrātē iaciēbantur.**

362. Translate: 1. The great town in the valley will be captured. 2. This town was recently captured by the brave soldiers. 3. Extensive provinces are desired by the king. 4. The whole temple had been shaken by the hands of a god. 5. In what direction had the captives fled?

QUIZ.—Can you recall some of the English derivatives of **-iō** verbs given before? What must you remember about the passive voice of **faciō**? Pick out in your English reader some (1) personal pronouns; (2) possessive adjectives; (3) reflexive pronouns; (4) demonstrative pronouns; (5) demonstrative adjectives. Can you decline the personal pronouns of the first and second persons in English?

XXIX. THE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE.
INTERROGATIVE

363. The interrogative adjective *quī, quae, quod*, *which* or *what*, is declined as follows:

SINGULAR				
	M.	F.	N.	
Nom.	quī,	quae,	quod,	<i>which or what.</i>
Gen.	cūius,	cūius,	cūius,	<i>of which.</i>
Dat.	cūī,	cūī,	cūī,	<i>to or for which.</i>
Acc.	quem,	quam,	quod,	<i>which or what.</i>
Voc.	—,	—,	—,	—.
Abl.	quō,	quā,	quō,	<i>with, from, in, or by which.</i>
PLURAL				
Nom.	quī,	quae,	quae,	<i>which or what.</i>
Gen.	quōrum,	quārum,	quōrum,	<i>of which.</i>
Dat.	quibus,	quibus,	quibus,	<i>to or for which.</i>
Acc.	quōs,	quās,	quae,	<i>which or what.</i>
Voc.	—,	—,	—,	—.
Abl.	quibus,	quibus,	quibus,	<i>with, from, in, or by which.</i>

364. When this interrogative adjective is used without any noun in agreement, it becomes an *interrogative pronoun* and is slightly different in declension and meaning.

365. The singular of the interrogative pronoun has but *two terminations*, one for both the masculine and feminine and one for the neuter. Learn its declension.

SINGULAR			
	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	quis,	quid,	<i>who or what.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	cūius,	cūius,	<i>whose.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	cūī,	cūī,	<i>to or for whom or what.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	quem,	quid,	<i>whom, what.</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—,	—,	—.
<i>Abl.</i>	quō,	quō,	<i>with, from, in, or by whom or what.</i>

366. The plural is declined *exactly like the plural of quī, quae, quod*, having separate forms for all genders.

367. The pronoun **quis, quid**, and the interrogative adjective **quī, quae, quod**, are regularly used to *introduce interrogative sentences*.

368. Translate: 1. Quod aliud flūmen ex monte vidēmus? 2. Flūmen Rhēnum clārē vidēmus. 3. Quis vīnum haurit? 4. Quā in urbe rēx mānsit? 5. Quae fēminae corōnam in templum portāvērunt? 6. Quī equum parvum vīnxērunt? 7. Cūius rosam puer habet? 8. Ā quibus sociīs illud bellum parātum est? 9. Quibus virīs sōlīs cōsul favēbat? 10. Quod perīculum ūnum cavēmus? 11. Quārum vestēs servī cūriōsī in aquā posuērunt? 12. Quid quaerēbas? 13. Quō in procēliō cīvēs nūper superātī sunt?

369. Translate: 1. In what building were the women? 2. Whom do we see in the field? 3. To what man is the fragrance of roses pleasing? 4. With what sword was the soldier's hand cut? 5. The ship was drawn from the sea without injury. 6. Whose crown is covered by the garment? 7. In this recent battle was another messenger killed?

QUIZ.—Describe the uses of the interrogative adjective and pronoun. How do they differ in forms? How can you tell when the form **cūius** is used as a pronoun? How can you tell when it is used as an adjective? What kind of words must introduce interrogative sentences? What other words have you learned which can introduce interrogative sentences?

XXX. THE VERB. FOURTH CONJUGATION

370.

aperiō,	aperire,	aperuī,	apertus,	<i>to open.</i>
cūstōdiō,	cūstōdire,	cūstōdivī,	cūstōditus,	<i>to guard.</i>
moliō,	mollire,	mollivī,	mollitus,	<i>to soften.</i>
reperiō,	reperire,	repperī,	reperitus,	<i>to find.</i>
saliō,	salire,	saluī,	saltus,	<i>to jump.</i>
saeviō,	saevire,	saevivī,	saevitus,	<i>to rage.</i>
stabiliō,	stabilire,	stabilivī,	stabilitus,	<i>to make steady.</i>
vestiō,	vestire,	vestivī,	vestitus,	<i>to clothe.</i>

Learn these fourth conjugation verbs.

371. WORD STUDY.—Can you tell the Latin root words from which these derived words are formed: Custody, mollify, aperture, sally, stability, vest, result, insult, stabilizer, assail, vesture, exult, investments, assault, emollient, aperient, custodian, salient, vestment, resilience?

372. EXAMPLES OF THE USE OF THESE DERIVATIVES.—1. If you are in the custody of an irate policeman, do not try to mollify him with tears. 2. From an aperture in the wall a sally was attempted. 3. What inventor can discover a stabilizer for an aeroplane? 4. The Russian salient at Warsaw was soon broken by the Germans. 5. Let us not exult in the results of our investments. 6. Cold cream is an emollient. What is an aperient? 7. Resilience is the bouncing property in rubber. 8. He was arrested on a charge of assault and battery. 9. As custodian of the Seal he was vested with great authority. 10. Do you not admire stability of character?

Do you know any more derivatives of these verbs?

THE VERB

373. **AUDIŌ.—Passive Voice—Indicative Mood**

SINGULAR	<i>Present Tense</i>	PLURAL
1. audior, <i>I am heard</i>		1. audimur, <i>we are heard</i>
2. audiris, <i>you are heard</i>		2. audimini, <i>you are heard</i>
3. audītur, <i>he (she, it) is heard</i>		3. audiuntur, <i>they are heard</i>
<i>Imperfect Tense</i>		
1. audiēbar, <i>I was heard</i>		1. audiēbāmur, <i>we were heard</i>
2. audiēbāris, <i>you were heard</i>		2. audiēbāmini, <i>you were heard</i>
3. audiēbātur, <i>he (she, it) was heard</i>		3. audiēbantur, <i>they were heard</i>
<i>Future Tense</i>		
1. audiar, <i>I shall be heard</i>		1. audiēmur, <i>we shall be heard</i>
2. audiēris, <i>you will be heard</i>		2. audiēmini, <i>you will be heard</i>
3. audiētur, <i>he (she, it) will be heard</i>		3. audientur, <i>they will be heard</i>

374. Translate for practice: 1. Audiris, impediōr, mūnītur, serviuntur, vincimur, sepelīminī. 2. Aperiēbātur, vestiēbar, impediēbantur, serviēbāris, vinciēbāminī. 3. Vestiēmur, pūniēminī, mūnientur, audiētur, finiētur.

375. Translate: 1. Uter servus loquāx pūniētur? 2. In fossā māgnā militēs sepelientur. 3. Lēx bona ab omnibus sancītur. 4. Tōtum templum ā virīs fortissimīs cūstōdiēbātur. 5. Quis glōriam fāmamque amat? 6. Glōria fāmaque ab omnibus sapientibus amantur. 7. Ā quō pāx petīta erit? 8. Quis hōc in locō sepelītur? 9. Ad aliud oppidum veniēbant.

376. Translate: 1. The voice of the consul will be heard in the midst of the shouts of the citizens. 2. In the forests the lions and fierce animals rage. 3. The sailors leaped from the ship. 4. The slave was guarded by the soldiers. 5. The cause of the outcries was easily found. 6. The anger of

Caesar was softened by the sad voices of the people. 7. The women will be clothed in elegant garments. 8. A road was opened by the legion through the mountains. 9. What tale has been told by the messenger?

XXXI. THE PRONOUN. DEMONSTRATIVE

377. The two demonstrative pronouns **īdem** and **ipse** are also called *intensives*, because they are especially emphatic. Like **hic**, **ille**, **iste**, they are often used in agreement with nouns as **demonstrative adjectives**. They may be, then, either **pronouns** or **adjectives**.

378. **Idem** and **Ipse** are declined as follows:

īdem, the same				
SINGULAR				
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	īdem,	eadem,	idem,	<i>the same (man, woman, thing).</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	eiusdem,	eiusdem,	eiusdem,	<i>of the same.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	eīdem,	eīdem,	eīdem,	<i>to or for the same.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	eundem,	eandem,	idem,	<i>the same.</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—,	—,	—,	—.
<i>Abl.</i>	eōdem,	eādem,	eōdem,	<i>with, etc., the same.</i>
PLURAL				
<i>Nom.</i>	{ eīdem, iīdem,	eaedem,	eadem,	<i>the same.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	eōrundem,	eārundem,	eōrundem,	<i>of the same.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	{ eīsdem, iīsdem,	eīsdem, iīsdem,	eīsdem, iīsdem,	<i>to or for the same.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	eōsdem,	eāsdem,	eadem,	<i>the same.</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—,	—,	—,	—.
<i>Abl.</i>	{ eīsdem, iīsdem,	eīsdem, iīsdem,	eīsdem, iīsdem,	<i>with, etc., the same.</i>

THE PRONOUN. DEMONSTRATIVE

379. *Ipsē, self (himself, itself, etc.)*

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
<i>Gen.</i>	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius
<i>Dat.</i>	ipsi	ipsi	ipsi
<i>Acc.</i>	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	ipsi	ipsae	ipsa
<i>Gen.</i>	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
<i>Acc.</i>	ipsos	ipsas	ipsa
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

380. Translate: 1. Eīsdem, ipsis, eārundem, eīdem. 2. Ipsōrum, ipsam, idem. 3. Ipsi, eādem, ipsā, eadem.

381. Translate: 1. Ipsi (hominēs) eandem (fēminam) amant. 2. Quis filiam poētae laudat? 3. Nōs omnēs hanc fēminam laudāmus. 4. Ab imperātōre (ipsō) aliī militēs ductī sunt. 5. Ubi domus Caesaris est? 6. Altera domus in monte Palātīnō nunc stat. 7. Locum ipsum cūstōdīmus.

382. Translate: 1. The same servants serve the same commander. 2. These same sailors leaped from the ship. 3. We slept on the same couch. 4. The body of Caesar was buried in the temple itself. 5. Those same men will establish peace. 6. The steps of the consul were suddenly hindered by a throng of men.

XXXII. THE VERB. FOURTH CONJUGATION

383. AUDIŌ.—Passive Voice—Indicative Mood

SINGULAR	<i>Perfect Tense</i>	PLURAL
1. audītus (a, um) sum, <i>I have been heard</i>		1. audītī (ae, a) sumus, <i>we have been heard</i>
2. audītus (a, um) es, <i>you have been heard</i>		2. audītī (ae, a) estis, <i>you have been heard</i>
3. audītus (a, um) est, <i>he (she, it) has been heard</i>		3. audītī (ae, a) sunt, <i>they have been heard</i>

Pluperfect Tense

1. audītus (a, um) eram, <i>I had been heard</i>	1. audītī (ae, a) erāmus, <i>we had been heard</i>
2. audītus (a, um) erās, <i>you had been heard</i>	2. audītī (ae, a) erātis, <i>you had been heard</i>
3. audītus (a, um) erat, <i>he (she, it) had been heard</i>	3. audītī (ae, a) erant, <i>they had been heard</i>

Future Perfect Tense

1. audītus (a, um) erō, <i>I shall have been heard</i>	1. audītī (ae, a) erimus, <i>we shall have been heard</i>
2. audītus (a, um) eris, <i>you will have been heard</i>	2. audītī (ae, a) eritis, <i>you will have been heard</i>
3. audītus (a, um) erit, <i>he (she, it) will have been heard</i>	3. audītī (ae, a) erunt, <i>they will have been heard</i>

Learn these tenses. Practise them, using other fourth conjugation verbs.

384. Translate: 1. Audītum est, finīta sunt, impeditī estis, mūnīta est. 2. Sēnsū erat, reperta erant, pūnītī erant. 3. Sānctum erit, sepelītus eris, cūstōdītī erunt, vestītus eris.

385. Translate: 1. Frīgus hiemis lūmine sōlis mollītum erat. 2. Lūdus novus ā puerīs repertus est. 3. Militēs aquā

THE HEART OF ROME

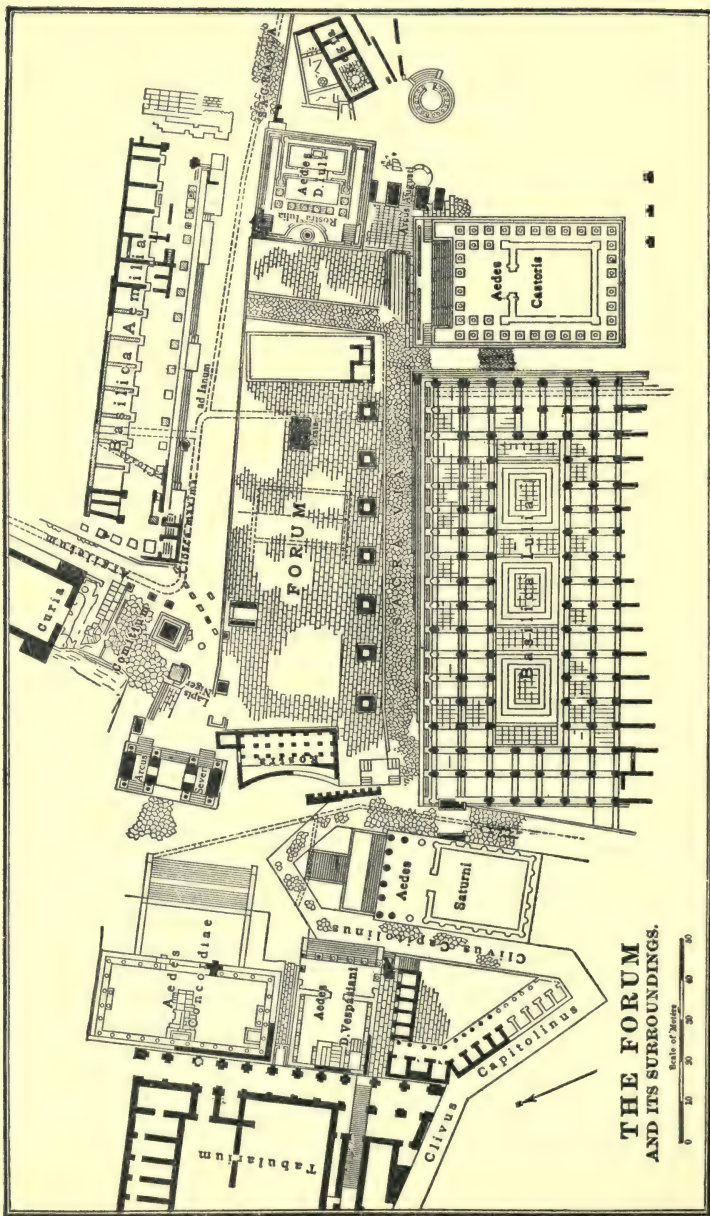
impediti sunt. 4. Labor diēi longi finitus est. 5. Praeda ab exsulibus sepelita erat. 6. Socii ad oppidum vērunt sed in pūgnā nostrī vicērunt.

386. Translate: 1. Has any city been fortified by a wall? 2. The laws have been established by the people. 3. In winter a wise woman is well clothed. 4. Flames leaped from the fire. 5. All the leaders perceived the same thing. 6. Who will punish the treacherous envoys?

QUIZ.—Can you mention some of the English derivatives of fourth conjugation verbs?

THE HEART OF ROME

The heart of **Rome** was the **Roman Forum**, situated between the **Palatine** and **Capitoline Hills**. In that small space the history of the world was made for centuries. There the common people of **Rome** fought for **suffrage**, and marked out the course later followed by the common people of **England** and **France**, a course now being followed by the **Social Democrats** of **Germany**, a course which has produced the **Republican Government** of the **United States**. There **Roman Religion** had its central shrine, and **Roman Law**, the basis of **modern law**, was brought to perfection. There **Cato** thundered his denunciation of **Carthage**; **Marius** and **Sulla** shook the foundations of the **Republic** with civil war; **Cicero**, **Rome's** greatest orator, reached the utmost heights of eloquence, and **Julius Caesar** held the destinies of the world in his power. To that spot the victorious **Roman** generals returned from their foreign conquests, and ambas-



THE FORUM
AND ITS SURROUNDINGS.

Scale of Meters

0 10 20 30 40 50

SUMMARY

sadors from the ends of the world came to talk peace with the invincible Republic. Within its limits were the offices of bankers who controlled the money markets of the ancient world. Crowds of people from every quarter of the **Mediterranean** thronged its narrow passages, elbowing and jostling, mixing their foreign languages with the native Latin. There tarried the great Roman **poets** who loved to dwell on the achievements of **Rome**. That was the spot which had so great an attraction for **Cicero** that in his banishment he could hardly endure life away from **Rome**. In the **Forum** were centered all those joys of living whose loss through banishment destroyed the genius of so great a poet as **Ovid**. The **Forum** was the **heart of Rome**, and the **heart of the ancient world**.

SUMMARY. FOR THE STUDENT

Before proceeding further consider carefully the following summary of what you should have acquired by this time in your study of the relation of Latin and English.

In the field of **Grammar** you should know—

1. The Parts of Speech (except the Interjection).
2. The Sentence: Simple and Compound. Declarative and Interrogative.
3. The Declension of Regular Nouns and Adjectives.
4. The Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs.
5. The Conjugation of Regular Verbs in the Indicative Mood, Active and Passive.
6. The Conjugation of the verb **Sum** in the Indicative.
7. The Agreement of Adjectives with Nouns.

8. The Agreement of Verbs with their Subjects.
9. The Agreement of Predicate Nouns and Adjectives.
10. The Meanings and Uses of Prepositions.
11. The Following Case Constructions:

The Nominative as the Subject. The Genitive expressing Possession. The Partitive Genitive. The Dative of the Indirect Object. The Accusative of the Direct Object. The Accusative of Place to Which. The Accusative of Duration of Time and Extent of Space. The Ablatives of Means, Cause, Accompaniment, Manner, Comparison, Agent, Time when or within Which, Place in Which and Place from Which.

Besides these definite acquisitions in the field of Grammar you should by now have a clear and enthusiastic appreciation of the **close dependence of English upon Latin**. You should be able to make out the meaning of many English nouns without the aid of an English dictionary. You should have acquired the habit of breaking up unfamiliar compound English words into their various parts and of bringing to bear upon each part the information which this study of Latin has given you.

Your study of the material presented in the **interchapters** should have given you a wider knowledge of the facts of **ancient geography and history**. You should feel now that the connection between the ancient and the modern world is after all *very close*, that acquaintance with the facts of modern times only is but a partial education, and that what exists to-day is but the latest development of movements which started many centuries ago.

XXXIII. THE SENTENCE. COMPLEX

A. IN ENGLISH

387. In the first part of this book the sentences you met were either **Simple**, as "*I saw the beautiful garden of the queen*"; or **Compound**, as "*The general gave the command and the soldiers charged.*" You are now ready to consider the third type of sentence, the **Complex**.

As has been said, the **Simple sentence** is the form used by young children; the **Compound**, by older children who have begun to link simple sentences together. The **Complex** sentence is used by those who have been well educated and have trained minds. Someone has said that the extent of a man's education can be measured by his ability to use the complex sentence *correctly*.

388. **The Complex Sentence.**—*A Complex sentence is one that contains one independent (principal) statement or clause and one or more dependent (subordinate) statements or clauses.*

389. **Clause.**—*A Clause is a group of words (containing a subject and a predicate) that forms part of a sentence. It may be Principal or Subordinate.*

390. Examine the following English complex sentences and note especially the italicized parts which mark the dependent clauses.

1. *Why he went away* has never been found out.
2. I asked *what he had seen*.
3. Mr. Jones called *while I was out*.
4. We study Latin *to give us greater mastery of English*.
5. Caesar was so great a military genius *that we forget his extraordinary political ability*.

Each of these sentences is **Complex**. Each contains *one*

main statement and one subordinate (dependent) statement. The dependent statement may precede or follow the main statement, and contains *a subject and a predicate of its own.*

Kinds of Dependent Clauses

391. A dependent clause may take the place of a *noun* (**noun clause**): I hear *that he has gone*; or of an *adjective* (**adjectival clause**): The hat *which I am holding* is mine; or of an *adverb* (**adverbial clause**): *When the captain started* the soldiers followed.

Adverbial clauses are very frequent in English. The following words usually precede them:

In order that, that, to (**purpose**). I look to (**in order that I may**) see.

That (**result**). He ran so hard **that he fell down**.

Because, since (**cause**). The picnic was postponed **because it rained**.

If, if not, unless (**condition**). **If we win, we shall be happy.**

Though, although, even if (**concession**). **Although we failed** we were not discouraged.

After, before, since, until, till (**temporal**). **After the war began** all the nations were involved.

Adjectival clauses are about as common as adverbial clauses. They are introduced in English by these words:

Who, which, what, and that (**relative pronouns**). The hat **which I hold** is mine.

Where, when, whence, why, whither, while (**conjunctive adverbs**). I know the place **where the violets grow**.

Noun clauses for the most part follow verbs of *saying, knowing, thinking, and perceiving*. They are introduced by

THE SENTENCE. COMPLEX

the conjunctions—that, I say **that** *the day is fair*; whether, He asked **whether** *we were going to town*; if, I shall wait to see **if** *they cross the river*.

You should have little trouble in telling the kinds of dependent clauses in English sentences, for at the beginning of each clause there regularly stands one of the above **introductory words** which serves to identify the clause.

QUIZ.—What is a Complex sentence; a clause? How can you tell the different kinds of clauses in English? What are the several kinds of adverbial clauses? In your English reader pick out a number of Complex sentences and identify each clause. Write some complex sentences of your own.

392. Study the following sentences. Tell which are **Simple**, which **Complex**, and which **Compound**. Point out the **Subordinate Clauses**. Tell which **Part of Speech** each word is.

1. It was often difficult to believe that the day was so near at hand. 2. Is not the Star Spangled Banner inspiring when we hear it played? 3. We started early because we were to visit the mill. 4. In order to reach the town the cavalry made a *détour*. 5. A merchant must know his neighborhood before he buys his stock. 6. Throw the ball; I will catch it. 7. Our first objective was Troy, which lay to the north. 8. As I entered the main street I saw what froze my heart. 9. So deep was the silence that it seemed menacing. 10. Unless the war is speedily ended the nations will be bankrupt. 11. I know his name and the house in which he lives. 12. The physician came late in the day to see his patient. 13. If the river were a little higher, our pasture land would be under water. 14. Go and may God

bless you. 15. Let justice be done even if the Heavens fall. 16. I continued to bathe while the others were watching the shark. 17. Ask him to wait until all are ready. 18. Before I congratulate the gentleman, I must know whether he will accept the appointment. 19. The Mayor's statement shows that he is alive to his responsibilities, though his words are none too reassuring. 20. When a friend is telling us anything except what is very short and simple, we understand most easily if he gives us one step at a time.

B. IN LATIN

393. In the first part of this book the Latin sentences were either **Simple**, as **Caesar aciem spectat**, *Caesar looks at the battle line*; or **Compound**, as **Caesar aciem spectat et milītēs laudat**, *Caesar looks at the battle line and praises the soldiers*. You are now ready for the **Complex sentence**.

394. As in English, so in Latin, a **Complex sentence** contains *one independent (principal) statement or clause and one or more dependent (subordinate) statements or clauses*.

In Latin as in English **dependent statements** are called **subordinate clauses**. *Clauses have their own subjects and predicates*, and may take the place of nouns (**noun clauses**), adjectives (**adjectival clauses**), or adverbs (**adverbial clauses**).

395. Examine these Complex sentences in Latin and note the underscored words which mark subordinate clauses.

1. **Puerum ad flūmen dūcimus ut aquam spectet.** (Purpose clause.) *We lead the boy to the river that he may see the water.*
2. **Hostēs tam celeriter veniunt ut Rōmānī fugiant.** (Result clause.) *The enemy come so quickly that the Romans flee.*

3. Dum est vīta spēs est. (Time clause.) *While there is life there is hope.*

Kinds of Dependent Clauses

396. The kinds of dependent clauses in Latin complex sentences are not difficult to identify, for they can be distinguished in two ways: (1) by the **word which introduces them**; (2) by the **mood of their main verb**. In dependent clauses the verb is usually a form not of the indicative but of the **Subjunctive** mood. The introductory words and the subjunctive mood combine to render the identification of most dependent clauses easy.

Adverbial clauses in Latin are introduced as follows:

PURPOSE clauses: **ut**, *in order that*, **nē**, *in order that—not, lest*. Venīmus ut spectēmus. *We come to (that we may) look.*

RESULT clauses: **ut**, *so that*; **ut nōn**, *so that—not*. **Caesar impetum tam celeriter fēcit ut hostēs fugerent.** *Caesar made the attack so quickly that the enemy fled.*

TEMPORAL clauses: **postquam**, *after*, **cum**, *when*, **dum**, *while, until*, **priusquam**, *before, until*.

Dum est vīta spēs est. *While there is life there is hope.*
Vēnimus priusquam hostēs tēla iacerent. *We came before the enemy could throw their weapons.*

CONDITIONAL clauses: **sī**, *if*, **nisi**, *if not*.

Brūtus, sī Caesarem caedat, rēgnum capiat. *If Brutus should slay Caesar he would usurp the kingdom.*

CAUSAL clauses: **quod**, *because*, **cum**, *since*.

Proelium vīdimus quod ā Galbā missī erāmus. *We saw the battle because we had been sent by Galba.*

Quae cum ita sint, cōsulem laudāmus. *Since these things are so, we praise the consul.*

CONCESSIVE clauses: quamquam, although, cum, although. Quamquam hanc fābulam audīvit, tacēbat. *Although he heard this story, he was silent.*

Cum clāmāret, avem nōn terruit. *Though he shouted, he did not frighten the bird.*

Adjectival clauses in Latin are introduced by the relative pronoun, quī, quae, quod, who, which, that.

Servus quī equum dūcēbat cūriōsissimus erat. *The slave who was leading the horse was very inquisitive.*

Oppidum quod hostēs tenēbant facile cēpimus. *We easily captured the town which the enemy were holding.*

Noun clauses will be taken up in Paragraphs 763–800.

Study the words which introduce dependent clauses so that you may be able to identify the clauses quickly. Let these introductory words be your **signals**.

QUIZ.—Name the kinds of dependent clauses in Latin. How can you tell them apart? Name the introductory words and the clause which should follow each one.

XXXIV. THE VERB. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. CLAUSES OF PURPOSE AND RESULT. SEQUENCE OF TENSES

397. In the earlier paragraphs of this book you met forms of the **Indicative** mood only because the Latin sentences were all **statements of fact**. For such sentences the Indicative (the mood of **fact**) is the proper mood in all languages. In **Complex** sentences the main statement of fact (principal clause) takes its verb in the Indicative and the dependent (weaker) clause takes its verb usually in the **Subjunctive**

THE VERB

mood. Since the Subjunctive mood (Paragraph 78) lacks the *firmness*, *frankness*, and *assurance* of the Indicative, it is *naturally* used in most dependent (weaker) clauses.*

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

398. The Subjunctive mood has all the tenses of the Indicative except the future and future perfect. The *endings* of the Subjunctive in all four conjugations *are similar*, tense for tense. The endings of all present tenses (except in the first conjugation) are alike. All imperfect tenses have similar endings. When, then, you have learned the Subjunctive of one conjugation you have learned the Subjunctives of practically all conjugations, for *the present subjunctive of the First conjugation* alone presents difficulties.

399. LAUDŌ and HABEŌ.—Active Voice—Subjunctive Mood

<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>
SINGULAR		SINGULAR	
1. laudem	laudārem	habeam	habērem
2. laudēs	laudārēs	habeās	habērēs
3. laudet	laudāret	habeat	habēret
PLURAL		PLURAL	
1. laudēmus	laudārēmus	habeāmus	habērēmus
2. laudētis	laudārētis	habeātis	habērētis
3. laudent	laudārent	habeant	habērent

400. Learn the conjugation of the present and imperfect subjunctive of the English verb *find* in Paragraph 824.

The Translation of the Subjunctive Mood

401. For the Latin forms which you have just learned we have added no English meanings, for the Latin Subjunctive, with a few exceptions, is translated into English

*Occasionally the Subjunctive mood is used as the main verb in independent statements. Compare paragraphs 522-535.

exactly like the Indicative. In the English verb *find* (Paragraph 824) you saw that the Subjunctive in English is made up of a **main verb** *find*, **combined with the auxiliary verbs** *may*, *might*, etc. The Subjunctive in English *regularly* employs these auxiliary verbs, but in Latin they are used in the translation of *purpose* clauses and of one or two *conditional* clauses only. Unless specially directed to the contrary, translate the present subjunctive in Latin like the present indicative, the imperfect subjunctive like the imperfect indicative, etc.

402. Identify and translate these verb forms, using in translation the *corresponding* tenses of the indicative:

1. Amem, clāmāret, habeās, tacērent, ōrnārem, lūcēret. 2. Vocent, valeātis, portārēs, augērēmus, creārent, spondeāmus.
3. Spectēs, maneat, superet, docērem, mūtētis, cavērēs. 4. Fīrmēmus, dēleam, errārētis, favērētis, darēmus, studeant.

403. Practise the forms of present and imperfect tenses, using the verbs given in Paragraph 402.

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF PURPOSE IN ENGLISH AND LATIN

404. A. Examine these English sentences:

1. I go to school *that I may learn (to learn) to live nobly.*
2. He swims powerfully *that he may not be overwhelmed.*
3. We worked hard *that we might not be (not to be) defeated.*

The italicized words in these sentences compose adverbial **purpose** clauses. Purpose clauses call attention to something which is aimed at or desired. No. 1 above is affirmative; Nos. 2 and 3 are negative. Notice in these English purpose clauses the auxiliary verbs *may*, *might*, etc. Con-

struct some sentences containing Adverbial clauses of Purpose. Pick out some in your English reader.

405. B. Examine these Latin sentences:

1. **Puerum ad flūmen dūcimus ut aquam spectet.** *We lead the boy to the river that he may see (to see) the water.*
2. **Galba omnia parat nē hostēs exercitum superent.** *Galba makes every preparation that the enemy may not defeat the army.*
3. **Caesar oppidum mūnivit ut hostēs terrēret.** *Caesar fortified the town that he might terrify (to terrify) the enemy.*
4. **Lēgātus castra mōvit nē silvestrī in locō manēret.** *The lieutenant moved camp that he might not remain in a wooded place.*

The dependent clauses of these Latin sentences denote **purpose**. Nos. 1 and 3 are affirmative, shown by the particle **ut**; Nos. 2 and 4 are negative, shown by the particle **nē**. Note that the auxiliary verbs *may* and *might* are employed in translating Latin purpose clauses into English.

406. RULE.—**Adverbial Clauses of Purpose.**—*Purpose clauses are introduced by ut, that (affirmative), and nē, that not (negative), and have their verbs in the present and imperfect subjunctive.*

407. Learn the present and imperfect subjunctives active of the other regular conjugations in Paragraphs 827–8–9. These tenses are similar to those of **habeō**, Paragraph 399. Practise them, using the verbs given in Par. 200, 224, 253.

408. Translate these sentences containing Purpose clauses:

1. **Exercitum māximum parāmus ut orbem terrārum vincāmus.**
2. **Cīvēs portās clausērunt nē hostēs oppidum sine**

proeliō caperent. 3. Hīc servus ad cōsulem ductus est ut fābulam nārrāret. 4. Pontem graviōribus ancoris firmābām nē aquae flūminis eum frangerent. 5. Itaque fēminae quoque rosās portāvērunt ut templum ōrnārent. 6. Servi diligentēs in cōspectū Galbae mīlitibus bene serviēbant, ut sē laudāret. 7. Omnēs barbarī fossās altās fēcērunt nē Caesar terram fertilem suam caperet. 8. Nē impetus aquārum nāvem frangat, nautae ancoram in mare iaciunt. 9. Et dux et legiō eius fūgērunt nē hostēs tōtum exercitum dēlerēt. 10. Novīs rēbus (a revolution) studēmus ut imperātōrēs nostrōs caedāmus.

409. Translate: 1. At Corinth the army fought courageously to capture the city. 2. We will bind the treacherous envoy that he may not escape. 3. Are you shouting so that the ravenous birds may be afraid? 4. A wise general provides an ample supply of grain that his soldiers may be victorious. 5. The women brought light garments that they might cover the body of the illustrious commander.

QUIZ.—What is the nature of the subjunctive mood? What are the meanings of the tenses? Pick out some purpose clauses in Paragraph 392. How is purpose expressed?

410.

absentia, -ae, *absence*, f.
 abundantia, -ae, *plenty*, f.
 āra, -ae, *an altar*, f.
 carrus, -ī, *a cart*, m.
 aurum, -ī, *gold*, n.
 bīduum, -ī, *two days*, n.
 beneficium, -ī, *service*, n.
 arbor, arboris, *a tree*, f.
 arx, arcis, *a citadel*, f.
 augur, auguris, *a prophet*, m.
 altitūdō, altitūdinis, *height*, f.
 arcus, -ūs, *bow, arch*, m.
 cliēs, clientis, *a retainer*, m.
 canis, canis, *a dog*, m. and f.

centuriō, centuriōnis, *a centurion, military officer*, m.
 adventus, -ūs, *arrival, coming*, m.
 acerbus, -a, -um, *bitter*.
 adversus, -a, -um, *unfavorable*.
 aliēnus, -a, -um, *strange, foreign*.
 amicus, -a, -um, *friendly*.
 angustus, -a, -um, *narrow*.
 ācriter, *sharply, keenly*.
 aliquandō, *some time, at length*.
 audācter, *boldly*.
 adhūc, *up to this time*.
 celeriter, *swiftly, quickly*.

THE VERB

Study and learn these words. Practise the declensions of the nouns and adjectives. Compare the adverbs.

411. WORD STUDY.—Give the meaning of the following derivatives. Use them in sentences. Add others.

absence	carryall	altitude	oriole	abundant
amity	beneficial	arc	arboretum	acerbity
accelerate	arch	auspicious	adverse	client
alienate	advent	benefice	alias	beneficent
adventitious	inaugurate	benefit	inaugural	adversity
celerity	alien	cart	alienist	canine
acid	car	enmity	amiable	carriage

QUIZ.—Tell something about the augur, cliēns, centuriō.

SEQUENCE OF TENSES IN ENGLISH AND LATIN

412. A. In a Complex sentence there are at least **two** parts: an **independent** statement or clause and a **dependent** statement or clause. A Complex sentence must then contain at least **two verbs**: one the *main* verb, the other the *dependent* verb. In well-written English Complex sentences care is always taken to have the tenses (time) of these two verbs related to each other in a way that produces *sense*; that is, the main verb is always followed by that tense of the dependent verb which, combined with it, will produce a sensible sentence.

413. Examine these English sentences:

1. He *entered* because he *had paid* for his ticket. 2. We *ran* because a soldier *followed* us. 3. If we *should see* an accident we *would not laugh*.

In each of these sentences the main verb is followed by a tense of the dependent verb which produces sense. Replace the verb *had paid* by *pays*, *ran* by *run*, *would not laugh* by

laugh. The sentences now are *meaningless*. These new tenses of the dependent verbs do not produce sense, for when the main verb is in the *present* tense, the dependent verb should also be in a *present* tense; and when the main verb is in a *past* tense, the dependent verb should be in a *past* tense. This relation of the tenses in complex sentences is called **Sequence of tenses** (*sequor, to follow*).

414. *In Latin also you must be very careful to see that the tenses of the main and the dependent verbs are properly related.* In Latin as well as in English a main verb in present or future time is followed by a dependent verb in a tense that denotes the *same* time or time *later* than that of the main verb, and a main verb in past time by a tense that shows the *same* point in past time as the main verb or time *more remote*. Tenses that denote present or future time are called **primary**, those that denote past time, **secondary**.

PRIMARY AND SECONDARY TENSES

415. In the Indicative mood (the mood of the main verb) the **primary** tenses are the *present*, *future*, and *future perfect*; the **secondary** tenses are the *imperfect*, *perfect*, and *pluperfect*.

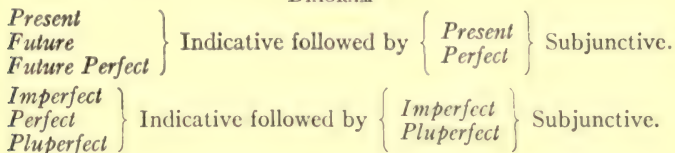
In the Subjunctive mood (the mood of the dependent verb) the **primary** tenses are the *present* and the *perfect*; the **secondary** tenses are the *imperfect* and the *pluperfect*.

416. **RULE.—Sequence of Tenses.**—When the main verb is present, future, or future perfect indicative, a dependent subjunctive must be put in the *present* tense if it *shows continued action at the same time or time later than that of the main verb*, or in the *perfect* tense *to express completed action*.

THE VERB

When the main verb is in the imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect indicative, a dependent subjunctive must be put in the *imperfect* tense to express continued action in past or future time, or in the *pluperfect* tense to express completed action in past time.

DIAGRAM



417. Examine the Latin sentences in Paragraph 408 which contain purpose clauses. All the dependent verbs in those sentences are in the *present* or the *imperfect* subjunctive. These dependent verbs illustrate the rule for the sequence of tenses. As the idea of purpose can refer only to actions in *future* time, the present and the imperfect tenses of the subjunctive only can be used in purpose clauses.

418. Translate: 1. In the broad field were tall trees. 2. The soldiers of Caesar brought plenty of grain to the city that they might hinder the enemy for two days. 3. At length the envoy came to the citadel with the wagons. 4. There was an altar between the arch of victory and the bridge. 5. Who is running quickly to see the approach of the centurion? 6. That dog of yours is in the narrow road. 7. Strange dogs are not always friendly. 8. Up to this time the legion has not moved camp. 9. The king's retainers guarded the narrow place between the town and the forest.

QUIZ.—What is meant by the Sequence of Tenses? Name the primary and secondary tenses of the Indicative and

Subjunctive. What do the tenses of the Subjunctive imply in dependent clauses? What special rule applies to adverbial clauses of purpose?

419. LAUDŌ and HABEŌ.—Passive Voice—Subjunctive Mood

<i>Present</i>		<i>Imperfect</i>		<i>Present</i>		<i>Imperfect</i>	
SINGULAR				SINGULAR			
1. lauder	laudārer			habear	habērer		
2. laudēris	laudārēris			habeāris	habērēris		
3. laudētur	laudārētur			habeātur	habērētur		
PLURAL				PLURAL			
1. laudēmur	laudārēmur			habeāmur	habērēmur		
2. laudēmini	laudārēmini			habeāmini	habērēmini		
3. laudentur	laudārentur			habeantur	habērentur		

420. Learn these forms. Practise the tenses, using the verbs in Paragraphs 294, 314. Note specially *the present subjunctive passive of Laudō*.

421. The Present and Imperfect tenses of the Third and Fourth Conjugations are similar to those of **Habeō**, rather than those of **Laudō**. Learn them in Paragraphs 827–8–9. Practise their forms, using the verbs given in Paragraphs 224, 329, 370.

422. For rapidity in identification translate these forms:

1. Amer, clāmārētur, superārētur, caveātūr, ōrnārer.
2. Vocenter, habeāris, portārēris, augērēmur, creārentur.
3. Spectēris, spondeātur, mūtēmini, docērer, firmēmur.

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF RESULT IN ENGLISH AND LATIN

423. A. Examine the following English sentences:

1. He talks so fast *that I cannot follow him*.
2. His army was so large *that the enemy fled*.
3. The city was so well fortified *that it escaped assault*.

In these sentences the italicized words compose clauses

unlike the kind you have already considered. These clauses indicate **result**, not purpose. The dependent clause in No. 1 is negative; in Nos. 2 and 3, affirmative. You may feel a little uncertain at first about being able to distinguish between purpose and result clauses, but if you will remember that *result clauses are regularly concerned with something which has taken place and purpose clauses with something which is desired to take place*, your trouble will disappear. Further, in English complex sentences which contain result clauses the word **so** (compare the preceding sentences) usually acts as an indicator or signal of the approach of a result clause. Get into the habit of looking for this word *so* when you are asked to pick out result clauses.

424. Compose some English complex sentences containing adverbial clauses either of purpose or of result. Review the conjugation of the Indicative mood of the verb *to find* in Paragraph 824. Ask your teacher to explain the meaning of the terms *simple*, *progressive*, and *emphatic*.

425. B. Examine these Latin sentences:

1. **Tam celeriter hostēs veniunt ut Rōmānī terreantur.**

The enemy come so quickly that the Romans are terrified.

2. **Bellum tam terribile fuit ut tōtae nātiōnēs dēlērentur.**

The war was so terrible that whole nations were blotted out.

3. **Flūmen est tam lātum ut impetum barbarōrum nōn timeāmus.**

The river is so broad that we do not fear the attack of the barbarians.

4. **Meus servus tam accūrātus erat ut nōn errāret.**

My slave was so careful that he did not make mistakes.

The words in the Latin sentences that are underscored compose **result** clauses; the first two being affirmative, the last two negative. Note that the dependent verbs in these clauses are forms of the *present* and the *imperfect* tenses of the subjunctive mood. The introductory particles are **ut**, *that*, for affirmative result, and **ut nōn**, *that not*, for negative result. **Ut** and **nōn** are frequently separated by one or more words.

426. Just as there appears in English sentences the word *so* to call attention to the coming of result clauses, in Latin sentences also certain words meaning *so* (or the like) appear with equal effect. These words are:

tam, *ita*, **sic**, *so*. **tantus**, **-a**, **-um**, *so great*. **tālis**, **tāle**, *of such a kind*.

These words generally precede result clauses but *never* purpose clauses. Make use of them, especially when identifying affirmative purpose or affirmative result clauses. As the introductory particles preceding negative purpose and negative result clauses are *different* (**nē** against **ut nōn**), negative clauses should not trouble you.

427. **RULE.—Adverbial Clauses of Result.**—*Result is expressed by the subjunctive, usually the present or the imperfect, introduced by the particles ut (affirmative) and ut nōn (negative). These tenses of the subjunctive are used in accordance with the rule for the sequence of tenses.*

428.

aequō,	aequāre,	aequāvī,	aequātus,	<i>to make equal.</i>
locō,	locāre,	locāvī,	locātus,	<i>to place, locate.</i>
probō,	probāre,	probāvī,	probātus,	<i>to prove, approve.</i>
privō,	privāre,	privāvī,	privātus,	<i>to deprive.</i>
pūgnō,	pūgnāre,	pūgnāvī,	pūgnātus,	<i>to fight.</i>
properō,	properāre,	properāvī,	properātus,	<i>to hasten.</i>
turbō,	turbāre,	turbāvī,	turbātus,	<i>to disturb.</i>
vāstō,	vāstāre,	vāstāvī,	vāstātus,	<i>to lay waste, ravage.</i>

THE ROMAN FORUM

429. Translate: 1. Dux castra tam angustō in locō posuit ut militēs oppidum nōn vidērent. 2. Centuriōnēs virtūtem fortūnā aequant ut Caesar vincat. 3. Servī meī tam bene mihi serviunt ut eōs semper liberem. 4. Tam celeriter militēs ad prōvinciam properāvērunt ut finēs nōn vāstārentur. 5. Clāmor hostium tantus erat ut ad arcem fugerēmus. 6. Bīdum in oppidō mānsimus ut lēgātī cum cōpiīs suīs venīrent. 7. Adhūc bellum tam terribile fuerat ut tōtae nātiōnēs dēlērentur. 8. Aurum augurī aliēnō datum est ut cīvēs fātum urbis audīrent. 9. Manūs-ne captīvī vincītis ut eum aurō suō prīvētis? 10. Rēs militāris in absentīā Caesaris sic turbāta est, ut ab omnibus cīvibus domum ex Āfricā vocārētur.

1. At length we saw the citadel and the high altar. 2. There were so many carts in the town that the roads were closed. 3. The immortal gods do not approve the gifts of men so evil that they have no friends. 4. Who hastened to the city to bury the body of his friend? 5. Lest the roses be broken by the heavy winds, the maidens covered them with light garments.

QUIZ.—What does the word *result* mean? Name one point of difference between the ideas of purpose and result. How can you distinguish between the particles which introduce purpose and result?

THE ROMAN FORUM

Let us take a little closer view of the **Heart of Rome**. The plan of the Forum shows only a number of black lines lying in a rather narrow enclosure. These lines mark the sites of buildings which were once the joy of all citizens of the

Roman Republic. If you were to take a walk through the Forum to-day you would see a mass of ruins that would mean but little to you unless you were acquainted with the story that goes with each of the fallen structures. The impression you would gain would be one of disappointment at the ruins rather than of exaltation at their former grandeur. To-day, however, you would see a great deal more of the Forum than was visible in the Middle Ages, for in those days the dirt and the débris of the centuries following the fall of Rome in 476 A. D. covered the Heart of Rome. While Italy was under the control of foreign kings and Rome no longer the imperial city, the famous buildings of the Forum became the prey of men who used the marble to construct new buildings or burned it for the sake of the lime it contained. So, in those years many of the old buildings absolutely disappeared and of the others only a few walls and columns remained standing. The Roman of the Middle Ages walked across the Forum, caring little for the ruined buildings and fallen columns. His principal street followed the line of the **Sacra Via**. All sorts of traffic passed under the **Arch of Severus**. When interest began to be taken in this spot once more, the dirt of the centuries was removed. What was left of the ruins was carefully treasured and as far as possible was returned to its former condition. As you go through the Forum to-day these ruins appear on every side, and with difficulty can you imagine the grand buildings that once filled the area.

NOTE.—See page 152, and illustration facing page 310.

THE VERB

XXXV. THE VERB. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. CLAUSES OF TIME. COMPOUND VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

430. LAUDŌ and HABEŌ.—Active Voice—Subjunctive Mood

<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>
SINGULAR		SINGULAR	
laudāverim	laudāvissem	habuerim	habuissem
laudāveris	laudāvissēs	habueris	habuissēs
laudāverit	laudāvisset	habuerit	habuisset
PLURAL		PLURAL	
laudāverimus	laudāvissēmus	habuerimus	habuissēmus
laudāveritis	laudāvissētis	habueritis	habuissētis
laudāverint	laudāvissent	habuerint	habuissent

For the forms above no English meanings are added. Translate them as if they were forms of the indicative mood.

431. Learn also the same tenses of the other regular conjugations in Paragraphs 827–8–9. Practise these tenses, using the verbs in Paragraphs 68, 114, 200, 224, 253.

432. For rapidity in identification name and translate the following forms of the subjunctive mood:

vāstāverint	pūgnāverit	locāvissem	pūgnāvissēmus
cāvisset	fāvissent	pāruerimus	auxerim
probāverim	prīvāvisset	turbāvisset	properāverimus

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF TIME IN ENGLISH AND LATIN. TEMPORAL CLAUSES IN PAST TIME

433. A. Examine these English Complex sentences:

1. *After the stranger arrived*, the news spread abroad. 2. *When the train stopped*, we got off. 3. *When the parade had passed by*, the spectators went home.

In these sentences the italicized words compose **Temporal** (time) clauses. You should have little difficulty in recognizing temporal clauses because the words which intro-

duce them *clearly* indicate time, as, *when* or *after*. The clauses above are all laid in *past* time; *cf.* dependent verbs.

434. Construct some English sentences containing Temporal clauses in past time. Notice what introductory particles you use. Pick out the Temporal clauses in Par. 392.

435. B. Examine these Latin sentences:

1. Postquam exercitum vīdimus imperātōrem laudāvimus.

After we saw the army we praised the commander.

2. Cum Caesar Gallōs superāvisset Rōmānī prōvinciam

multōs annōs habēbant. *When Caesar had overcome the Gauls the Romans held the province for many years.*

Each of these Latin complex sentences contains a *temporal clause in past time*. Such clauses are regularly introduced by the words **postquam**, *after*, and **cum**, *when*. **Postquam** is followed by the **indicative** mood, usually in the *perfect* tense. **Cum** is followed by the **subjunctive** mood in the *imperfect* or the *pluperfect* tenses. Notice that the action implied in the temporal clauses above is completed *before* the action of the main verb begins.

436. RULE.—**Adverbial Clauses of Time (Past).**—*Temporal clauses in past time are introduced by the words postquam, after, and cum, when. The perfect indicative usually follows postquam, the imperfect or the pluperfect subjunctive follows cum.*

437. Translate: 1. Postquam carrus ad flūmen trāctus erat exsulēs aurum in nāvī posuērunt. 2. Cum Caesar Rōmae bīdium mānsisset cōpiaie cōsulum vērunt. 3. Quis virginem laudābat cum rosās in agrō lātō peteret?

4. Iste filius, centuriō,* bene pūgnābat cum imperātor suus vidēret. 5. Postquam arbor nōbilis cecidisset, arcum victōriae strūximus. 6. Postquam dux, Galba,* multōs diēs mānsit ut legiōnēs venīrent, sic territus est ut castra in locum adversum movēret. 7. Cum fēminae, rēgis filiae, portam urbis peterent, omnēs civēs ad collem properāvērunt. 8. Tam clāra vōx cōsulis fuit ut per viās lātās audirētur. 9. Captivōs dīligentius cūstōdīmus nē fugiant. 10. Cum clientēs vēnissent cōsul illūstris calamitātem recentem nārāvīt.

*NOTE.—In Nos. 4, 6, and 7 are instances of **Apposition**. The nouns *centuriō* and *Galba* refer to the same persons as the nouns *filius* and *dux*. *Centuriō* and *Galba* are in the same cases as the nouns *filius* and *dux* and serve to explain them. Such nouns are said to be in *apposition* with the nouns they explain.

438. RULE.—Apposition.—*A noun which explains or identifies another noun and refers to the same person or thing is put in the same case with the noun it explains.*

439. Translate: 1. When Caesar, the consul, had overcome the enemy the Romans built a huge arch of victory. 2. Did the slave guard the gold, after he had put it in the tree? 3. When we were looking at the sunset we did not perceive the approach of our friends. 4. Sailors were dragging the heavy anchor to the sea that they might throw it into the water. 5. We love horses so much that we never frighten them.

QUIZ.—What particles introduce temporal clauses in past time? Give several examples of apposition in English.

440.

āla, -ae, *a wing (of a bird)*, f.
avāritia, -ae, *greed*, f.
adolēscētia, -ae, *youth*, f.
cibus, -i, *food*, m.
biennium, -i, *two years' time*, n.
bracchium, -i, *an arm*, n.
castellum, -i, *a redoubt*, n.
cohors, *cohortis*, *a cohort, troop*, f.
comes, *comitis*, *a companion*, m., f.
coniunx, *coniugis*, *a consort, usually a wife*, f.
cōsuētūdo, *consuētūdinis*, *a custom*, f.
commūtātiō, *commūtātiōnis*, *a change*, f.

condiciō, *condiciōnis*, *a condition, terms*, f.
cupiditās, *cupiditātis*, *desire*, f.
ascēsus, -ūs, *an ascent*, m.
cantus, -ūs, *a song*, m.
apertus, -a, -um, *open*.
argenteus, -a, -um, *of silver*.
aureus, -a, -um, *of gold*.
beātus, -a, -um, *blessed*.
cārus, -a, -um, *dear*.
laetus, -a, -um, *happy*.
certe, *certainly*.
circiter, *about*.
continenter, *continually*.
cotidiē, *daily*.

Study and learn these words. Practise the declension of the nouns and adjectives. Compare the adverbs.

WORD STUDY.—Explain the meaning of these English derivatives. Use them in sentences of your own. Add others.

avarice	cupidity	conjugal	castle	adolescence
incantation	comity	cohort	commuter	certain
recant	commutation	ascendant	biennial	commutator
concomitant	charm	castellated	chant	cupid
count	ascent	cherish	caress	condition

441. LAUDŌ and HABEŌ.—Passive Voice—Subjunctive Mood

PERFECT—SINGULAR

1. laudātus (a, um) sim	habitus (a, um) sim
2. laudātus (a, um) sis	habitus (a, um) sis
3. laudātus (a, um) sit	habitus (a, um) sit

PERFECT—PLURAL

1. laudātī (ae, a) simus	habiti (ae, a) simus
2. laudātī (ae, a) sitis	habiti (ae, a) sitis
3. laudātī (ae, a) sint	habiti (ae, a) sint

PLUPERFECT—SINGULAR

1. laudātus (a, um) essem	habitus (a, um) essem
2. laudātus (a, um) essēs	habitus (a, um) essēs
3. laudātus (a, um) esset	habitus (a, um) esset

PLUPERFECT—PLURAL

1. laudātī (ae, a) essēmus	habiti (ae, a) essēmus
2. laudātī (ae, a) essētis	habiti (ae, a) essētis
3. laudātī (ae, a) essent	habiti (ae, a) essent

THE VERB

These tenses are formed by combining the perfect passive participles **laudātus** and **habitus** with two tenses of the subjunctive of the verb **sum**.

The perfect subjunctive of a regular verb contains the present tense of the subjunctive of **sum**: the pluperfect subjunctive contains the imperfect subjunctive of **sum**. You should find these two compound tenses as easy as were the compound tenses of the indicative (Paragraph 308). While you are learning these two tenses learn also the separate conjugation of these two tenses of **sum** (Paragraph 831).

442. The Perfect and Pluperfect subjunctives of the other regular conjugations are formed like the tenses given above. Learn them in Paragraphs 827–8–9.

Practise these tenses, using the verbs in Paragraphs 68, 114, 200, 224, 257.

For rapidity in identification name and translate:

armātī sīmus	firmātus sīs	mūtāta sit	sepultī sint
terrītī essētis	doctae sītis	impeditus essēs	datum sit
mōnstrātum esset	auditum sit	trāctī essētis	plētum sit

ADVERBIAL CLAUSE OF TIME (CONTEMPORANEOUS) IN ENGLISH AND LATIN

443. A. Examine these English sentences:

1. *While there is life* there is hope. 2. Let us remain at peace *as long as we can*.

The italicized words in these sentences mark **temporal** clauses. In each case the action of the dependent verb is **contemporaneous** with, that is, takes place at the same time as that of the main verb.

444. B. Examine these Latin sentences:

1. Dum est vīta spēs est. *While there is life there is hope.*
2. Dum flūmen altum erat in castrīs manēbāmus.
While the river was high, we remained in camp.
3. Dum cōsulēs dūcēbant milītēs fortēs erant.
While the consuls were leading, the soldiers were brave.

In the sentences above the underscored words mark **contemporaneous** temporal clauses. The introductory word which regularly begins such temporal clauses is **dum**, *while*. There are two constructions with **dum**, and **dum** has a separate meaning for each construction.

Dum means (1) *as long as* (*all the time that*), and connects two periods of time of *equal length*. **Dum est vīta spēs est.** *As long as (all the time that) there is life there is hope*

Dum means (2) *while*, and indicates a space of time *within which* an action takes place, which action does not occupy the *whole* time indicated by the dependent verb.

Dum milītēs in Galliā pūgnābant Caesar Rōmam vēnit.

While the soldiers were fighting in Gaul Caesar reached Rome.

Note the difference between these two meanings and uses of the word **dum**. When **dum** means *as long as*, the dependent verb may be in *any* tense of the indicative, but when **dum** means *while*, its verb must stand in the *present* indicative.

445. RULE.—**Contemporaneous Temporal Clauses.**—A temporal clause introduced by **dum**, *as long as*, takes its verb in any tense of the indicative mood. **Dum**, *while*, indicating a space of time during which the action of the main verb takes place, has its verb in the *present* indicative only.

446. Translate: 1. Dum cornū exercitūs fugit Caesar cohortēs suās in hostēs mīsit. 2. Avāritia est cupiditās aurī. 3. Virī māgnā cum virtūte pūgnant dum cibum bonum habent. 4. Dum apertīs in campīs erant, comitēs ducis auream arborem petēbant. 5. Arbor autem in silvā dēnsā apud fontem stetit. 6. Dum virginēs deīs beātīs serviēbant semper in templō manēbant. 7. Dum exercitus Rōmānus in Āfricā est, Caesar castella multa cēpit. 8. Commūtātiōnem fortūnae nōn cupiēbāmus dum nostrae cohortēs superābant. 9. Quae condiōnēs pācis erunt? 10. Eandem cōsuētūdinem biennium tenēbās.

447. 1. In the silvery water of the fountain the maiden saw her face. 2. While youth remains, hope is continually fresh. 3. Certainly I will do the task. 4. While the lion was standing near the tree, the maiden fled into an open field. 5. What song do we hear daily?

QUIZ.—What is the meaning of the word *contemporaneous*? Explain the difference between the two types of temporal clauses you have had. Explain castellum, cohorts. What can you find out about the Roman army?

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF TIME (FUTURE) IN ENGLISH AND LATIN

In the preceding paragraphs you have met with complex sentences containing dependent clauses (temporal) both in past and in contemporaneous time. There is still a further class of temporal clauses, those referring to **future** time.

448. A. Examine these English sentences:

1. We waited *until the parade appeared*. 2. He remained at home *until the messenger could return*. 3. *Before they could recover from flight*, they were attacked by Caesar.

In each of these sentences there is a **temporal** clause, the time of which is *later* than the time of the main verb. In the first sentence the action implied in the dependent verb *actually* takes place; in the second there is an *expectation* that the action will take place but the sentence does not state whether or not it did take place. In the third sentence the action of the dependent verb is anticipated or expected but it *never* actually takes place, being prevented or forestalled by the rapidity of Caesar's attack.

449. B. Examine these Latin sentences:

1. Manēbō dum mē vocābis. *I shall remain until you call me.* 2. Manēbis-ne dum tē vocet? *Will you wait until he calls you?* 3. Oppidum mūnīvī priusquam hostēs vērunt. *I fortified the town before the enemy came.* 4. Legiōnēs prius fūgērunt quam Caesar auxilium mitteret. *The legions fled before Caesar could send aid.* 5. Impetum nōn fēcīt priusquam nūntius venīret. *He did not make the attack until the messenger could come.*

In these Latin sentences the action of the dependent verb takes place or is expected to take place at a **time** later than that of the main verb. These temporal clauses, then, are laid in **future** time. In Nos. 1 and 3 the action *actually* takes place. This is shown by the use of the *Indicative* mood. In No. 2 there is an *expectation* that the action will take place but no assurance that it does; in Nos. 4 and 5 the action which is anticipated *never* takes place. In such sentences as 2, 4, and 5 the idea of expected action or anticipated action is shown by the *Subjunctive* mood. The introductory particles are **dum**, *until*, and **priusquam**, *until* or *before*.

450. RULE.—Temporal Clauses in Future Time.—*Temporal clauses in which the action of the dependent verb takes place or is expected to take place at a time later than that of the main verb are introduced by the particles **dum**, until, and **priusquam**, until or before. When the action really takes place, the indicative mood is used; when the action is expected or anticipated (especially if we know that it was prevented from taking place), the subjunctive is used, **dum** being followed by the present or the imperfect tenses, **priusquam** usually by the imperfect.*

In temporal sentences like those above the subjunctive is often translated with the English auxiliaries *can* and *could*. *Priusquam* may be separated into two parts; cf. sentence 4.

451. Translate: 1. Lēgātum nōn vocāvī priusquam Caesar vēnit. 2. Centuriōnēs ipsī sine imperātōre castellum cēpērunt priusquam hostēs auxilia mitterent. 3. In templō aureō cotīdiē sedēbimus dum nūntius nōs vocābit. 4. Hostēs pācem prius petīvērunt quam oppida sua mūnīrent. 5. Comitēs fortēs rēgis sē armāvērunt priusquam ille eōs in hostēs dūxit. 6. Canēs celerēs nōn mānsērunt dum leō venīret. 7. Militēs captivum in castellō cūstōdiunt dum exercitus hostium superābitur. 8. Cīvēs portās oppidī nōn clausērunt priusquam adventum equōrum audīvērunt. 9. Proelium atrōx finītum est priusquam dux auxilia vocāret. 10. Quis vir ceber leōnem rapācem cecīdit priusquam virginem parvam caperet.

1. I will remain there until you come. 2. You called the slave before he drove away the dog. 3. They fortified the town before they asked for liberty. 4. Who fled before the fire destroyed the house? 5. That ship was broken by the winds before the anchor could be thrown into the water.

QUIZ.—How can you distinguish temporal clauses in future time from the other types of temporal clauses? How may *priusquam* be otherwise written?

COMPOUND VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

452. In the acquisition of any language, whether ancient or modern, there are two things absolutely essential: an **extensive vocabulary** and **rapidity** in its use. Think how dull would be the study of English if your knowledge of English words were limited and you were constantly driven to the use of the English dictionary. Your progress would be *so slow* that all interest in your work would rapidly vanish.

In the building of an extensive vocabulary there are *two* elements to be considered, the **noun** and the **verb**. Of these, the *verb* is the *more important*. It has been said that a student who has completely mastered a thousand verbs has already secured a working knowledge of a new language. This statement grows out of the fact that the meaning of a new noun may *often* be made out from the meaning of the words which surround it, especially from the meaning of the verb with which it is associated. In other words the *context* (surrounding words) often reveals the meaning of new nouns. The acquisition of great lists of nouns is consequently of less importance than the learning of many verbs.

Though the learning of a large number of verbs is a serious task, there are ways by which the labor involved may be lightened. Many verbs are compounded of a *simple verb* and a *prefix* (preposition). The meaning of a compound

THE VERB

verb will be easy for you to make out without consulting a dictionary if you know (1) *the meaning of the simple verb* and (2) *the meaning of the prefix employed*. In Paragraphs 30 and 40 you met with the most common prefixes used in the making of compound verbs. Review them carefully at this time. In the following pages there will be lists of compound verbs based on the simple verbs which you have learned.

453. Review the first conjugation verbs in Par. 68, 294.

454. Learn these compound verbs:

The Clāmō, Dō, and Parō Groups

<i>clāmō, clāmāre, clāmāvī, clāmātus, to shout</i>		
conclāmō (1) *	exclāmō (1)	reclāmō (1)
<i>cry aloud</i>	<i>shout out</i>	<i>cry out against</i>
 <i>dō, dare, dedī, datus, to give</i>		
addō (3)	abdō (3)	condō (3)
<i>add</i>	<i>hide</i>	<i>put together, found (city)</i>
circumdō (1)	dēdō (3)	perdō (3)
<i>surround</i>	<i>surrender</i>	<i>lose</i>
prōdō (3)	reddō (3)	dōnō (1)
<i>betray</i>	<i>give back</i>	<i>present</i>

Note that **dare** changes to **dere** when the compound verb belongs to the third conjugation. **Circumdare** is an exception.

<i>parō, parāre, parāvī, parātus, to prepare</i>		
comparō (1)	praeparō (1)	sēparō (1)
<i>provide, get ready</i>	<i>get ready beforehand</i>	<i>prepare apart, separate</i>

The prefix *sē* found in *sēparō* means apart, aside.

455. Translate: 1. Cum urbs ā militibus capta esset, omnēs civēs māgnō clāmōre conclāmāvērunt. 2. Exsulēs in dēnsās silvās sē abdidērunt ut poenās fugerent. 3. Māgnā in insulā urbem condidit nē ā cōpiis pedestribus caperētur. 4. Hanc urbem fossā circumdedit. Itaque dux fortis num-

* Note that the numeral following each verb indicates the conjugation to which the verb belongs.

quam sē dēdidit. 5. Quae cōpiae nostrās mūnitiōnēs perdunt? 6. Prōditī sumus ā lēgātīs ipsīs. 7. Caesar pecūniam captīvīs reddēbat. 8. Frūmentum cotīdiē parāmus. 9. Adhūc omnia comparāta sunt. 10. Coniunxne tibi cibum dedit? Certē. 11. Cum cōsul ōrātiōnem habuisset, cīvēs irātī reclāmāvērunt. 12. Omnia mihi addita sunt.

456. WORD STUDY.—Explain these derivatives. Use them in sentences of your own.

claim	compare	apparel	proclaim	data
clamor	separate	preparation	reclamation	preparedness
reclaim	donor	apparatus	render	condition
condiment	donation	perdition	date	declaim
proclamation	condone	acclaim	addition	irreparable
add	repair	surrender	prepare	disclaim

457. Select some English verb, as *claim*, and give as many compound derivatives of it as you can.

QUIZ.—What two things are essential in language study? Discuss some ways of learning vocabulary.

458. The Portō, Stō, and Vocō Groups

portō, portāre, portāvī, portātus, to carry

comportō (1) <i>bring together, collect</i>	dēportō (1) <i>carry off, lay waste</i>	exportō (1) <i>carry away, export</i>
importō (1) <i>carry in, import</i>	reportō (1) <i>carry back</i>	trānsportō (1) <i>carry over, transport</i>

stō, stāre, steti, stātum, to stand

existō (3) <i>stand forth</i>	cōsistō (3) <i>take position, consist</i>	dēsistō (3) <i>desist from, stop, cease</i>
resistō (3) <i>resist</i>	statuō (3) <i>set up, resolve</i>	cōstituō (3) <i>establish, determine</i>
institūō (3) <i>establish, determine</i>	restituō (3) <i>restore, reestablish</i>	exstō (1) <i>stand out, appear</i>

vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus, to call, summon

advocō (1) <i>call to, summon</i>	āvocō (1) <i>call away</i>	convocō (1) <i>call together</i>
ēvocō (1) <i>call out, challenge</i>	prōvocō (1) <i>challenge</i>	revocō (1) <i>call back, recall</i>

THE PRINCIPAL BUILDINGS IN THE ROMAN FORUM

459. Translate: 1. In absentiā Caesaris abundantia frūmentī comportāta erat. 2. Sē suaque omnia in vicīna oppida dēportābānt. 3. Ex Britannīa cibis importābātur. 4. Cōpiae hostium nūper in Galliam transportātae sunt. 5. Multōs eōrum ducēs convocāvī nē auxilium adinimicōs mitterent. 6. Militēs ab opere ad castellum revocātī sunt. 7. Tam celeriter hōc bellō dēstitimus ut cīvēs domī terrērentur. 8. Frātre tuum in locum grātiae et honoris restituēbāmus. 9. Centuriōnēs legiōnis impetum fēcērunt ut hostibus resisterent. 10. Multī virī fortēs nōminātim ēvocātī erant.

460. WORD STUDY.—Explain these English words. Use them in sentences of your own.

portable	convoke	institution	portico	existence
resistance	vocative	extant	advocate	evoke
restitution	irrevocable	porter	exporter	transportation
obstacle	consistence	imports	opportunity	vocabulary
vocation	statute	constant	insist	comport
provocation	porch	persistence	desist	reporter
stability	superstition	avocation	constitution	equivocal
constable	deportation	revocation	vowel	distant

THE PRINCIPAL BUILDINGS IN THE ROMAN FORUM

As you look at the map you notice at the left the **Tabularium**, the building in which were kept the state records of the Republic. From this spot, which is rather high, a view of the whole Forum can be had. On the left across the Forum appear the **Arch of Severus**, the **Rostra**, the ruins of the **Temple of Concord**, the remains of the **Forum**, the **Sacra Via**, the huge arches of the **Basilica Aemilia**, the site of the temple erected to **Julius Caesar**, the **Regia**, and the site of the **Temple of Vesta**. On the right appear the columns which mark the **Temple of Saturn**, the ruins of the **Basilica Iulia**, and the site of the **Temple of Castor**. Beyond the limit

of the map were the **Arches of Constantine** and **Titus** and the famous **Colosseum**. Here and there in the Forum were streets leading from the center to the outer parts of the city. Of these, the most famous was the **Sacra Via**, along which the triumphal processions of the Roman generals took their winding course to the **Temple of Jupiter** on the **Capitoline Hill**. Through the Forum ran the great sewer, **Cloaca Maxima**, which drained the low lying valley of the Forum. You must not think that the Forum and its buildings were all constructed at one time. On the contrary, the Forum had a gradual development, buildings being added at various times. The early buildings were made of any material which could be easily obtained; the later buildings were faced with marble, giving much splendor to the Forum.

XXXVI. THE VERB. SUBJUNCTIVE OF SUM. CLAUSES OF CONDITION AND CAUSE. COMPOUND VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION

461. THE VERB SUM.—The Subjunctive Mood

SINGULAR			
<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>
sim	essem	fuerim	fuissem
sis	essēs	fueris	fuissēs
sit	esset	fuerit	fuisse
PLURAL			
sīmus	essēmus	fuerimus	fuissēmus
sītis	essētis	fueritis	fuissētis
sint	essent	fuerint	fuisissent

Learn these four tenses. You have already met the first two in Paragraph 441. The perfect subjunctive of **sum** is the same as the future perfect indicative except in the first person singular. The pluperfect has the endings of the imperfect **essem** with change of *e* to *i* before *s*.

THE VERB

The same caution is to be taken regarding the translation of the different subjunctive forms of **sum** as of the subjunctive forms of the regular verbs. Use as meanings of the subjunctive forms of **sum** the meanings of the corresponding tenses of the Indicative unless specially directed otherwise.

462. For rapidity of identification name and translate:

1. *Fueris, sīmus, fuissent, essent, fuissēs, sītis, fuerit.*

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES CONTAINING A CONDITION IN ENGLISH AND LATIN

A. With the Indicative Mood

463. A. There are many occasions in speaking and writing when we express an idea about which we have some doubt or which can be true only under certain *conditions* or *circumstances*. Sentences which contain statements whose truth is affected by some circumstance or other are called **conditional sentences**. Examine the following English sentences:

1. *If we are well* we are happy. 2. *If we were well* we were happy. 3. *If we shall be well* we will be happy.

The italicized words indicate the two parts of these sentences, one a statement of fact and the other a clause containing a condition or circumstance affecting the truth of the main statement. Each of these dependent clauses is introduced by the word *if*. Clauses so introduced are **conditional clauses**. The **main statement** in a sentence containing a conditional clause is called the **conclusion**.

Remember, then, that all conditional sentences are made up of two parts, the *condition* and the *conclusion*. The conditional clause may appear either before or after the con-

clusion. You will have no trouble in identifying a conditional clause if you will always look for the introductory word *if* or its negative *if not* or *unless*.

464. B. In Latin as well as in English there are many occasions for the use of conditional sentences. Look at the following examples:

1. Sī valēmus laetī sumus. *If we are well we are happy.*
2. Sī valēbāmus laetī erāmus. *If we were well we were happy.*
3. Sī valēbimus laetī erimus. *If we shall be well we will be happy.*

In these sentences, which are Latin translations of the English sentences above, there are two parts, the *condition* (underscored) and the *conclusion*. Each of the sentences is named from the kind of condition which it contains. The first is called a *Simple Present* condition because the condition and conclusion are in *present time* (*present indicative*). The second is called a *Simple Past* condition because both its parts are in *past time* (*imperfect indicative*). The third is called a *More Vivid Future* condition because both its parts are in *future time* (*future indicative*). Most conditional sentences in Latin take their verbs in the *indicative* mood. You will have no difficulty with conditions which employ the indicative if you translate the *tenses* of the indicative accurately.

465. RULE.—**Simple Conditions.**—*Simple conditions in Latin are introduced by the particle sī, if (negative nisi, if not or unless). In both condition and conclusion the verbs are in the indicative mood.*

THE VERB

466.

cūrō,	cūrāre,	cūrāvi,	cūrātus,	<i>to care for, provide for.</i>
cremō,	cremare,	———,	———,	<i>to burn.</i>
impetrō,	impetrāre,	impetrāvī,	impetrātus,	<i>to gain a request.</i>
pācō,	pācare,	pācāvī,	pācātus,	<i>to pacify.</i>
pūrgō,	pūrgāre,	pūrgāvī,	pūrgātus,	<i>to clean, purify.</i>
iaceō,	iacēre,	iacuī,	———,	<i>to lie, recline.</i>
mereō,	merēre,	meruī,	meritus,	<i>to deserve, merit.</i>
lateō,	latēre,	latuī,	———,	<i>to lie hidden.</i>
dēterreō,	dēterrēre,	dēterrui,	———,	<i>to frighten off.</i>
pendeō,	pendēre,	pependi,	———,	<i>to hang, be suspended.</i>

Learn these verbs.

467. Translate: 1. Arborēs multās altāsque cremāmus nē leōnēs in silvīs dēnsīs lateant. 2. Augurne aurum dīlīgenter cūrāvit dum filia sua venīret? 3. Cum nūntius fābulam longam nārrāvisset, ā cōnsule impetrāvit. 4. Nisi Caesar in Galliā pūgnābit, illa prōvincia omnis numquam pācābitur. 5. Sī equus nunc in campō lātō est, sub arbore iacet. 6. Multīs beneficiīs honōrem amplum merēbat. 7. Sī Galba laetus erat, cōsulēs Rōmānī quoque erant laetī. 8. Sī post aedificium angustō in locō latēbimus, comitēs nōs ibi numquam petēbunt. 9. Quis Rōmae reget sī Caesar caesus erit? 10. Nisi ancora de nāvī ingentī pendēbit, ventī vehementēs nāvem movēbunt.

468. 1. If we shall shout we shall frighten the birds from the trees. 2. The horse was certainly in the field if the gate was shut. 3. I took care of the golden gift while the prophet was cleaning the altar. 4. What shall we deserve if you pacify the nation with our help? 5. When we shall have gained our request from Caesar, we will destroy the letter.

469. WORD STUDY.—Explain these derivatives and use them in sentences of your own.

curious	curator	procure	impend	cremation
purgative	deter	pacify	latent	curate
sinecure	demerit	purge	pensive	secure
suspend	independence	meritorious	adjacent	crematory

B. With the Subjunctive Mood

470. Beside simple conditions with the indicative there are some in Latin which make use of the **subjunctive** mood in *both* the *condition* and the *conclusion*. Study the following examples:

1. Sī valeāmus laetī sīmus.

If we should be well we would be happy.

2. Sī valērēmus laetī essēmus.

If we were well we would be happy.

3. Sī valuissēmus laetī fuissēmus.

If we had been well we would have been happy.

These conditional sentences bear the following names: No. 1 is called a *Less Vivid Future* condition; No. 2 a *Contrary to Fact* condition in *Present* time; No. 3 a *Contrary to Fact* condition in *Past* time.

The *Less Vivid Future* condition is merely a weaker form of the *Simple Future* condition (*cf.* Paragraph 464). Instead of using the auxiliary verbs **shall** and **will** in the condition and the conclusion, this condition uses the weaker forms **should** and **would**. Both verbs are in the *present* subjunctive.

Contrary to Fact conditions contain statements which would be true under just the *opposite* (*contrary*) circumstances to those given in the conditional clause. For example, "*If we were now well, we would be happy,*" really means *we are not now happy because we are not well*. "*If we had been well we would have been happy,*" really means *we were not happy because we were not well*. As you see by reversing the translation "*we are not happy because we are not well,*" the time of the condition is really *present*, though

the tense of the subjunctive used in Latin is *imperfect*. “*We were not happy because we were not well*” shows that the time of the condition is *past* though the tense of the subjunctive used in Latin is *pluperfect*. Consequently the conditions are called *present* and *past* contrary to fact.

471. RULE.—Conditions Requiring the Subjunctive Mood.
—*Less Vivid Future conditional sentences take the present subjunctive in both condition and conclusion. Present Contrary to Fact conditional sentences take the imperfect subjunctive, and Past Contrary to Fact the pluperfect subjunctive in both the condition and the conclusion.*

472. Translate: 1. *Sī fortūna bona sit rēx sim.* 2. *Nisi beneficiis māgnis honōrem merērem, hōc in lōcō nunc nōn essem.* 3. *Sī frīgus hiemis grave sit, ingentem ignem cūrem.* 4. *Sī cōpia frūmentī comportāta esset, milītēs cibum certē habuissent.* 5. *Omnis Gallia facile celeriterque pācāta esset sī Caesar primō dux fuisset.* 6. *Hīc servus ex manibus meis nōn fūgisset nisi dormivissem.* 7. *Hae rosae dē ārā antiquā semper pendēbunt nisi ventī eōs frangent.* 8. *Extrā oppidum milītēs latēbant dum ab hostibus petēbantur.* 9. *Nisi nūbēs dēnsae fuissent, sōl clārē lūxisset.* 10. *Portās cotidiē claudēmus dum auxilium ā Caesare mittātur.*

473. 1. If the ditch had been wide the horses would never have escaped. 2. The women would adorn the temple with roses if the day should be clear. 3. We will praise the general that he may be happy. 4. The task was so easy that we did it in two days. 5. If we were in Gaul we would now be leading our armies against the enemy.

QUIZ.—Describe the conditional sentences explained in these paragraphs. Make up a number of similar sentences.

APPLIED LATIN

474.

culpa, -ae, *a fault*, f.
domina, -ae, *a lady, mistress*, f.
epistula, -ae, *a letter*, f.
dolus, -ī, *a trick, stratagem*, m.
concilium, -ī, *a council*, n.
caelum, -ī, *the sky*, n.
deditiō, deditiōnis, *surrender*, f.
dēprecātor, dēprecātōris, *inter-*
cessor, m.
dolor, dolōris, *grief*, m.
dictātor, dictātōris, *a dicta-*
tor, m.
eques, equitis, *a knight*, m.

exīstimātiō, exīstimātiōnis, *opin-*
ion, judgment, f.
explōrātor, explōrātōris, *a scout*, m.
cēnsus, -ūs, *a rating, census*, m.
circuitus, -ūs, *circuit*, m.
cōnātus, -ūs, *an attempt*, m.
cōnfertus, -a, -um, *crowded*.
cotidiānus, -a, -um, *daily*.
cūctus, -a, -um, *all together*.
cupidus, -a, -um, *desirous*.
diligenter, *diligently*.
diū, *a long time, long*.
facile, *easily*.

Study and learn these words. Practise the declension of all the nouns and adjectives. Compare the adverbs.

475. WORD STUDY.—Give the meaning of the following derivatives. Use them in sentences. Add others.

council	conative	census	circuitous	ceiling
condolence	facile	domineer	domestic	dominion
diary	equipage	equestrian	diligent	deprecate
esteem	estimation	difficult	dolorous	explorer
censor	cerulean	culpable	dominate	circuit
dictate	dictatorial	censure	doleful	reconcile

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF CAUSE IN ENGLISH AND LATIN

476. A. In the following English sentences the words italicized mark a clause expressing **cause**.

1. I looked at the picture *because you told me to*.
2. *Since you have come so early* let us now take a walk in the garden.
3. *As the sun has already risen* there is nothing to delay us.

There are **three** words commonly used in English to introduce dependent clauses which express **Cause**. These are **because** (which contains the word *cause* itself), **since**,

* NOTE.—Comparison diū, *long*, diūtius, diūtissimē.

THE VERB

and **as**. These words should aid you in picking out causal clauses. Read the main statements in the sentences above. Does not each one seem to demand an explanation? As you read you expect to find out why *I looked at the picture* and how it happens *we can now walk in the garden* and why *nothing now delays us*. When some *explanation or reason* seems to be demanded by the meaning of the main statement be on the lookout for a dependent clause of cause.

477. B. The same facts are true of Latin sentences containing causal clauses. Examine these sentences:

1. **Celeriter vĕnī quod poenam timūī.**

I came quickly because I feared the penalty.

2. **Caesar, cum hostēs eum terrērent castra mōvit.**

Since the enemy frightened Caesar, he moved his camp.

The underscored words in these sentences compose **causal** clauses. In Latin as in English there are introductory words which serve to identify causal clauses. These are commonly **quod**, *because*, and **cum**, *since*. The dependent verb following **quod** is regularly in the *indicative* mood; the dependent verb after **cum**, *since*, is in the *subjunctive*.

In Latin as in English the main statement often seems to demand an explanation or reason before the sentence can be considered complete. To emphasize this demand and to get us ready for a causal clause the Latins often inserted in the main statement one of the following expressions:

Hāc dē causā, *for this reason*, **quā dē causā**, *for this reason*, **quam ob rem**, *for this reason*.

EXAMPLE: **Hāc dē causā Caesar impetum fēcit quod**

hostēs dormiēbant. *Caesar made an attack (for this reason) because the enemy were asleep.*

478. RULE.—Causal Clauses.—*Dependent clauses expressing cause are introduced by the particles quod, because, and cum, since. After the word quod the indicative mood is used; after cum, the subjunctive. When the verb is in the subjunctive, the tenses used follow the regular rule for Sequence.*

479. Translate: 1. Servī dominam nōn laudābant quod culpās multās habēbat. 2. Hāc dē causā epistolam nōn scripsimus quod dolum cīvium scīvimus. 3. Quod dēprecātor vir nōbilis fuit, Caesar oppidum nōn dēlēvit. 4. Cum hī virī omnēs libertātis cupidī essent, dictātōrī ācriter resistēbant. 5. Cōsul, cum pecūniam cīvītātī dedisset, ab omnibus cīvibus diū amābātūr.

480. 1. The horsemen led the captives about the town in a long circuit because they feared the attacks of the citizens. **2.** We shall conquer easily because the gods will send us aid. **3.** We made the ascent quickly because the scouts had shown us the way. **4.** What is the judgment of the council? **5.** The consuls made a census of the city in order that they might punish the evil citizens.

QUIZ.—Pick out some causal clauses in your English reader. Tell how you identify them in English and Latin.

Compound Verbs of the Second Conjugation The Habeō, Maneō, and Moveō Groups

481. habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus, to have, hold

adhibeō (2) <i>have at hand, apply, use</i>	prohibeō (2) <i>restrain, prevent</i>	dēbeō (2) <i>not to have, owe, dē-habeō</i>
praebeō (2) <i>have ready, furnish</i> <i>prae-habeō</i>	habitō (1) <i>inhabit</i>	dēbilitō (1) <i>weaken, dē-habil-itō</i>

Note that in compound verbs **habeō** changes to **-hibeō**.

THE VERB

maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūm, to remain

permaneō (2)	remaneō (2)
<i>to last through, remain</i>	<i>remain</i>

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus, to move

āmoveō (2)	commoveō (2)	ēmoveō (2)
<i>move away, remove</i>	<i>move thoroughly, disturb</i>	<i>move out</i>
removeō (2)	prōmoveō (2)	
<i>move back, withdraw</i>	<i>move forward</i>	

Learn these compound verbs.

482. Translate: 1. Nē oppidum caperētur, cīvēs dolōs multōs adhibuērunt. 2. Virī fortissimī illōs equitēs ab angustā viā* prohibēbant. 3. Glōriam honōremque dictātōrī dēbēmus quod cōpiam māgnam cibī nōbīs dedit. 4. Cōsulēs cēsum cīvium imperātōrī praebruērunt ut virī malī dē urbe pellerentur. 5. Exsulēs in insulā habitābant. 6. Cōnātibus dolisque lēgātōrum cohortēs dēbilitātae sunt. 7. Caesar castra ex angustō locō* inter montēs amōvit. 8. Clāmōribus captīvōrum hāc dē causā facile commōtī sumus, quod cūctī pācem diligenter petēbant. 9. Aurum ē carrō* remōvī ut in aedificiō pōnerem. 10. Cum hostēs militēs nostrōs ab oppidō prohibērent, Caesar aciem prōmōvit.

483.* In sentences 2, 7, 9, 10, are instances of the ablative with **ab**, **dē**, or **ex** expressing the idea of *removal* or *separation*. This construction is common after verbs signifying removal or separation.

484. RULE.—The Ablative of Separation.—*The ablative with ab, dē, or ex is used with verbs signifying separation or removal to express separation.*

485. Study these English derivatives. Use them in sentences of your own.

debilitated	permanent	promotion	habit	motor
inhabitant	manse	removal	remainder	emotion
prohibition	mobile	prohibitive	manor	remote
momentum	commotion	mob	remnant	automobile

APPLIED LATIN

The Pleō, Sedeō, and Teneō Groups

486.

pleō, plēre, plēvī, plētus, *to fill*

compleō (2)
fill completely

repleō (2)
fill up again

suppleō (2)
fill up, supply

sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessum, *to sit, be settled*

circumsedeō (2)
sit around, surround

obsideō (2)
sit against, besiege

possideō (2)
possess

praesideō (2)
preside over, watch over

resideō (2)
remain seated, remain

supersedeō (2)
refrain from

Note that **sedeō** becomes **-sideō** in many compounds. In some it appears as **-sīdō** (*assīdō, sīdere, sēdī, —*) and these verbs belong to the third conjugation.

teneō, tenēre, tenuī (*tentus*), *to hold*

abstineō (2)
abstain from

contineō (2)
contain, limit, bound

distineō (2)
hold apart

obteneō (2)
hold, obtain

pertineō (2)
pertain, have to do with

retineō (2)
hold back, retain

sustineō (2)
hold up, sustain

temptō (1)
try, attempt

Note that **teneō** becomes **-tineō** in most compounds.

Learn these compound verbs.

487. Translate: 1. Carrōs frūmentō complēvī ut multītūdō cīvium cibum habēret. 2. Tam multī equitēs viās obsēdērunt ut legiōnēs nostrās ab oppidō prohibērent. 3. Galba māgnam partem prōvinciae possidēbat. 4. Lēgātī quod cōpiās hostium in montibus vīdērunt proeliō abstinuērunt. 5. Fossa aquā complēta est nē equitēs Rōmānī impetum facerent. 6. Pars māgna Galliae flūminibus lātissimīs montibusque altiōribus continētur. 7. Nostrī finēs ad montēs pertinent et ad occāsum sōlis spectant. 8. Caesar Galbam, socium suum, in conciliō retinuit. 9. Diū impetūs barbarōrum mākīmā cum virtūte sustinēbantur. 10. Quod viās per prōvinciam explōrātōrēs nōn scīvērunt, hostēs fortunam bellī nōn temptāvērunt.

THE USES OF THE BUILDINGS IN THE FORUM

488. Study these English derivatives. Use them in sentences of your own.

complete	replete	pertain	residuary	continence
sustain	detain	implement	supersede	attempt
entertainment	retention	obsession	continent	supply
assessor	resident	insidious	impertinent	contention
retentive	expletive	obtain	continuance	session
abstain	reside	temptation	assizes	president
complement	besiege	possessor	supplement	subside

THE USES OF THE BUILDINGS IN THE FORUM

Now that you have become acquainted with the names of the chief buildings, you should learn something about their uses. As was said, the **Tabularium** contained the records of the Republic and later of the Empire. The **Arch of Severus** was erected to recall the glories of the family of Severus which gave to the Empire two important emperors. The **Rostra** was the platform from which many of the great Roman orators delivered speeches to the Roman people assembled in the open space before it. As there were no newspapers like ours at Rome, if the ordinary citizen wished to know what was going on, he hurried down to the Forum and there listened to speeches from the Rostra and discussed the news with his fellow-citizens. Before the Roman Senate voted on important policies of the government, some leading member of the administration often addressed the people from the Rostra. Thus the citizens were early informed of the debates which were to follow inside the senate house. The two **Basilicas (Aemilia and Iulia)** were the centers of the law courts. In them the legal magistrates of the city used to hold court, and the decisions

handed down were not only important at that time, but exist today embedded in the laws of many modern nations. Because these speeches were delivered in the Forum they were called *forensics*, a term still employed.

XXXVII. THE SENTENCE. COMPLEX. CLAUSES OF CONCESSION. TYPES OF RELATIVE CLAUSES. COMPOUND VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF CONCESSION IN ENGLISH AND LATIN

489. In the following English sentences there are examples of **Concessive** or **Adversative** Clauses. As you read over each sentence, notice that the idea contained in the italicized clauses contradicts or opposes that contained in the main statement. If the clause is true, the main statement must be false. If the main statement is true, how can the facts in the dependent clause be set aside? In such sentences the **adverse** facts of the dependent clause are passed over (**conceded**). The main statement is considered true, with certain **concessions**.

1. *Although the day was cloudy*, still we went on a picnic.
2. The dog is faithful, *although his master abuses him*.

In the first sentence you would expect to remain at home on cloudy days and you certainly would not go on a picnic. In the second you hardly expect a dog whose master abuses him to be faithful. These adverse or contrary facts must be conceded before the main statements are true.

In English, Concessive clauses are shown by the use of the introductory words **although** or **though**. Often, the

words **still** or **nevertheless** are found in the main statement, when the sentence contains a concessive clause.

490. These Latin sentences contain concessive clauses:

1. Quamquam puer saepe clāmāvit tamen agricolae nōn vērunt.

Although the boy often cried out, the farmers did not come.

2. Cum multa tēla iaceret, avem nōn terruit.

Though he threw many missiles, he did not frighten the bird.

3. Cum opus longum sit tamen epistulam scribam.

Though the task is a long one, nevertheless I will write the letter.

As you read these sentences you note that each one contains a clause, which is opposed to the main statement. You expect the farmers to come; one stone usually frightens a bird; long tasks are often left undone. Such clauses must be conceded (**concessive**). They are introduced in Latin by the words **quamquam**, *although*, and **cum**, *although*. The indicative mood (usually the perfect tense) follows **quamquam**, the subjunctive (tense according to the sequence of tense rule) follows **cum**. **Tamen**, *nevertheless*, often appears in the main statement.

491. RULE.—**Concession**.—*Concession is expressed in Latin by the indicative (usually the perfect tense) introduced by **quamquam** or the subjunctive (tense according to the regular rule for sequence) introduced by **cum**.*

492. Translate: 1. *Quamquam puerī omnēs conclāmāvērunt avēs nōn territī sunt.* 2. *Servum nōn pūnīvimus cum dolī eius pessimī fuissent.* 3. *Cum nūbēs dēnsae in caelō*

essent, sōl tamen lūcēbat. 4. Caesar prōvinciam Galliae superāvit cum illī virī ācerrimē pūgnāvissent. 5. Quamquam carmina laudāvistis tamen poētae aurum nōn dedistis. 6. Cum urbs bene mūnīta esset, Galba eam māximō impetū cēpit. 7. Quamquam militēs pācem post dēditiōnem petīvērunt, tamen nōn impetrāvērunt. 8. Cum canēs prō portā iacērent fēmina cibum nōn iacuit. 9. Nautae nōn commōtī sunt cum mare ventīs continenter crēsceret. 10. Quamquam servus saepe clāmāvit equus domum ex agrō nōn vēnit.

493. 1. We did not emigrate from the province though fertile fields were shown to us. 2. Though we served our commander well he never praised us. 3. The runaway slave was caught though he had fled into the mountains. 4. Desire for gold does not now overcome the scout though in youth he indulged this fault. 5. When he had related the terms of peace the Romans sent him to Caesar.

QUIZ.—What English words are used to introduce clauses of concession, cause, time, purpose, result?

494.

figūra, -ae, a figure, shape, f.

gemma, -ae, a gem, f.

incola, -ae, an inhabitant, m.

dominus, -ī, a master, m.

collum, -ī, the neck, n.

exemplum, -ī, example, n.

facultās, facultātis, capacity, f.

fortitūdō, fortitūdinis, bravery, f.

flōs, flōris, a flower, m.

furor, furōris, rage, m.

foedus, foederis, a treaty, n.

formidō, formidinis, fear, f.

gubernātor, gubernātōris, a pilot, m.

exitus, -ūs, a, going out, end, m.

cōnsēnsus, -ūs, consent, m.

dexter, dextra, dextrum, right.

fēgregius, -a, -um, remarkable.

ferāx, ferācis, fertile.

finitimus, -a, -um, neighboring.

fēliciter, happily, fortunately.

ferē, almost, nearly.

forte, perhaps.

fortiter, bravely.

frūstrā, in vain.

Study and learn these words. Practise the declensions of the nouns and adjectives. Compare the adverbs.

THE SENTENCE. COMPLEX

495. WORD STUDY.—Give the meaning of the following English derivatives. Use them in sentences. Add others.

faculty	figured	gem	collar-bone	infuriated
federal	governor	inflorescence	ambidextrous	formidable
configuration	egregious	florist	frustrate	furor
exemplary	consensus	government	dexterous	florid
flourish	floral	exit	fortitude	confederacy

TYPES OF RELATIVE CLAUSES

496. Up to the present time in the treatment of the Complex sentence you have been dealing only with subordinate clauses which have modified the main verb (adverbial clauses). There are, however, complex sentences in which the subordinate clause is *not adverbial* (does not modify the main verb) but is **adjectival** (modifies some noun in the main sentence). Such clauses are called **adjectival clauses**. They are introduced by the Relative pronoun *who, which, that*. This relative pronoun serves to connect or relate the clause which it introduces with some noun in the main sentence. This noun is called the **antecedent** of the clause.

Relative Clauses in English and Latin

497. A. Examine these English sentences:

1. The man *who wore the black hat* was the President.
2. We respect the boy *who is honest*.
3. Caesar sent soldiers *who were to cross the bridge*.
4. There are some men *who think that all they hear is true*.

In these sentences the italicized words compose *relative clauses*, introduced by the relative pronoun **who, which, and that**. This pronoun resembles other pronouns in that it stands *for a noun*; it differs slightly in that usually it *immediately* follows its antecedent.

APPLIED LATIN

The relative pronoun in English is thus declined:

Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter—Singular and Plural
Nominative, who. Genitive, whose. Accusative, whom.

The relative clauses in the English sentences above are not all of the same kind. In sentences 1 and 2 they merely take the places of adjectives (adjectival relative clauses). They add bits of description to their antecedents which could have been done by the use of a *single* adjective, if there had existed in the language an adjective which meant what the entire clause means. No. 3 not only describes, but also adds an idea of *purpose* to the antecedent (relative clause of purpose); No. 4 expresses a *trait* or *characteristic* of the antecedent (relative clause of characteristic).

Construct some English sentences containing relative clauses. In your reader pick out some relative clauses.

498. B. Examine these Latin sentences:

1. **Servus quī equum dūcēbat erat cūriōsissimus.**

The slave who was leading the horse was very inquisitive.

2. **Caesar oppidum quod hostēs tenēbant facile cēpit.**

Caesar easily took the town which the enemy were holding.

Complex sentences containing relative clauses are *very frequent* in Latin. As in English, such clauses may (1) simply modify their antecedent as adjectives or may (2) add an idea of purpose or characteristic. These two types of relative clauses can be readily distinguished in Latin by the *mood of their verbs*. Simple adjectival clauses regularly take the *indicative* mood; the other adjectival clauses take the *subjunctive* mood.

499. Learn the declension of the relative pronoun **quī, quae, quod, who, which, that.**

THE SENTENCE. COMPLEX

SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.	
Nom.	quī,	quae,	quod,	who.
Gen.	cuius,	cuius,	cuius,	whose.
Dat.	cui,	cui,	cui,	to or for whom.
Acc.	quem,	quam,	quod,	whom.
Voc.	—,	—,	—,	—.
Abl.	quō,	quā,	quō,	with, etc., whom.

PLURAL

	M.	F.	N.	
Nom.	quī,	quae,	quae,	who.
Gen.	quōrum,	quārum,	quōrum,	whose.
Dat.	quibus,	quibus,	quibus,	to or for whom.
Acc.	quōs,	quās,	quae,	whom.
Voc.	—,	—,	—,	—.
Abl.	quibus,	quibus,	quibus,	with, etc., whom.

500. While considering relative clauses we must take up the **agreement of the relative with its antecedent**. In sentence 1 the relative *quī* is masculine singular to agree (as adjective) with its antecedent *servus*. It is nominative not because *servus* is nominative, but because *quī* is the subject of the clause (*quī* : . . . *dūcēbat*) in which it (*quī*) stands. In sentence 2 *quod* is neuter singular in agreement with its antecedent *oppidum*. It is accusative in case because it is the direct object of the verb *tenēbant*, the verb of the clause (*quod* . . . *tenēbant*) in which the *quod* stands.

501. **RULE.—Simple Adjectival Relative Clauses.**—*Relative clauses which simply add facts of description to their antecedents are introduced by the relative pronoun quī, quae, quod, and take their verbs in the indicative mood.*

502. **RULE.—Agreement of the Relative Pronoun.**—*The relative pronoun must agree with its antecedent in gender and number. Its case depends upon its use in its own clause.*

503.

cernō,	cernere,	crēvī,	crētus,	<i>to discern, distinguish.</i>
colō,	colere,	coluī,	cultus,	<i>to till, cherish, dwell in.</i>
dividō,	dividere,	dīvisi,	dīvīsus,	<i>to separate, divide.</i>
fundō,	fundere,	fūdī,	fūsus,	<i>to pour forth.</i>
gerō,	gerere,	gessi,	gestus,	<i>to bear, carry on, wage.</i>
prēndō,	prēndere,	prehendī,	prehēnsus,	<i>to seize, grasp.</i>
ruō,	ruere,	ruī,	rūtus,	<i>to fall down, tumble down.</i>
sternō,	sternere,	strāvī,	strātus,	<i>to strew, spread out.</i>
tollō,	tollere,	sustulī,	sublātus,	<i>to lift up, remove.</i>
tribuō,	tribuere,	tribuī,	tribūtus,	<i>to assign, allot.</i>
relinquō,	relinquere,	reliquī,	relictus,	<i>to leave, abandon.</i>
discō,	discere,	didicī,	—,	<i>to learn.</i>

Learn these verbs.

504. Translate: 1. Militēs quī bellum gerēbant exemplum ēgregium fortītūdinis praebebant. 2. Num rosās prō portā templī illius deī quī auxilium urbī misit frūstrā strāvimus? 3. Virgō quae ex furōre leōnis fūgerat dextram meam prēndēbat. 4. Ventī gubernātōrem quī caelum spectābat in mare iēcērunt. 5. Quis fortiter sed frūstrā pūgnābat? 6. Agricola agrōs ferācēs, flōrēs, et flūmen finitimum amat et colet. 7. Sine cōsēnsū sociōrum numquam petīvī condiōnēs pācis quāe mē ā patriā dīvīsērunt. 8. Forte incolae gemmās sub arbore altā abdidērunt. 9. Ventī vēlōcēs domum quam incolae in insulā strūxerant ferē strāvērunt. 10. Vīnum, quod servī in aedificiō condiderant, in flūmen dominus fūdīt.

505. 1. The outcome of the battle took away all hope of surrender. 2. The tree which recently fell broke the dog's neck. 3. In youth we learned many poems which related the fate of our city. 4. By means of a treaty we made peace with the Romans. 5. Fortunately we saw the general who had completed the war.

506. WORD STUDY.—Explain these English derivatives. Use them in sentences of your own.

THE SENTENCE. COMPLEX

discern	decree	inculcate	derelict	ruin
reprehend	relinquish	prostrate	colony	prize
relic	discreet	retribution	tributary	comprehend
effusion	profuse	disciple	tribute	prison
street	confusion	cult	dividend	delinquent
foundry	secretary	consternation	gesture	division
apprehend	fund	stratum	diffuse	discipline

QUIZ.—What are the types of relative clauses in English?
What is meant by the agreement of the relative?

507.

<i>iānua</i> , -ae, <i>a door</i> , f.	<i>lapis</i> , <i>lapidis</i> , <i>a stone</i> , m.
<i>īnsānia</i> , -ae, <i>madness</i> , f.	<i>cōsulātus</i> , -ūs, <i>the consulship</i> , m.
<i>iūstitia</i> , -ae, <i>justice</i> , f.	<i>conventus</i> , -ūs, <i>a meeting</i> , m.
<i>humus</i> , -ī, <i>the ground</i> , m.*	<i>frigidus</i> , -a, -um, <i>cold</i> .
<i>ferrum</i> , -ī, <i>iron</i> , n.	<i>impudēns</i> , <i>impudentis</i> , <i>shameless</i> .
<i>hospitium</i> , -ī, <i>hospitality</i> , n.	<i>incrēdibilis</i> , <i>incrēdibile</i> , <i>unbelievable</i> .
<i>hērēs</i> , <i>hērēdis</i> , <i>an heir</i> , m.	<i>inermis</i> , <i>inermis</i> , <i>weaponless</i> .
<i>iūdex</i> , <i>iūdicis</i> , <i>a judge</i> , m.	<i>inferus</i> , -a, -um, <i>low</i> .†
<i>iter</i> , <i>itineris</i> , <i>a journey</i> , n.	<i>graviter</i> , <i>heavily</i> .
<i>interpres</i> , <i>interpretis</i> , <i>an interpreter</i> , n.	<i>hodiē</i> , <i>to-day</i> .
<i>lāc</i> , <i>lactis</i> , <i>milk</i> , n.	<i>interdum</i> , <i>meanwhile</i> .
<i>nēmō</i> , <i>nēmīni</i> , <i>no one</i> , m.†	<i>item</i> , <i>likewise</i> .

Study and learn these words. Practise the declension of the nouns and adjectives. Compare the adverbs.

508. WORD STUDY.—Explain the meaning of the following derivatives. Use these derivatives in sentences. Add others.

hospitable	host	hotel	<i>lapis lazuli</i>	sane
justiciary	lapidary	humidity	exhume	humiliate
insanity	consulate	inheritance	heredity	inhumation
frigidity	itinerant	janitor	judiciary	humble
humor	item	impudent	refrigerator	itinerary
lactic	convention	dilapidated	credulous	gravity
judge	itemize	interpret	inferior	gravitate

* Note: Locative of *humus*, *humī*, *on the ground*.

† Note: *Nēmō* usually lacks the genitive and ablative singular. For them *nūllīus* and *nūllō* are used.

‡ Note: Comparison of *inferus*: *inferus*, *inferior*, *īnfimus*, or *īmus*.

RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE AND CHARACTERISTIC

509. Examine these Latin sentences:

1. **Caesar milītēs quī pontem frangerent ad flūmen mīsīt.**
Caesar sent soldiers who should (to) break down the bridge.
2. **Nōn idōneus erit quī ad illud oppidum mittātur.**
He will not be the proper man (who should be sent) to send to that walled town.

These two sentences illustrate types of relative clauses which take their verbs in the *subjunctive* mood. No. 1 contains a clause of purpose; No. 2, a clause of characteristic. Of these the relative clause of purpose is more common.

Relative clauses of purpose are the *same* in form as the ordinary clauses of purpose except that the relative pronoun is used in place of the introductory particle **ut**. The tenses of the subjunctive employed are the *present after primary tenses, the imperfect after secondary tenses*.

510. RULE.—Relative Purpose Clauses.—*Relative clauses of purpose are introduced by the relative pronoun quī, quae, quod, who, which, that, and take their verbs in the present and the imperfect subjunctive, according to the rule for sequence in purpose clauses. The negative is nōn.*

511. A relative clause of characteristic is used in Latin to call attention to some *trait* or *characteristic* of its antecedent. The second sentence above illustrates such a clause. Ordinarily clauses of characteristic follow these words:

dignus, -a, -um, <i>worthy.</i>	sunt quī, <i>there are those who.</i>
indignus, -a, -um, <i>unworthy.</i>	nēmō est quī, <i>there is no one who.</i>
idōneus, -a, -um, <i>suitable, proper.</i>	quis est quī, <i>who is there who?</i>
sōlus, -a, -um, <i>alone, only.</i>	ūnus (sōlus) est quī, <i>he is the only one who.</i>

When these words precede a relative clause you may be *sure* that the clause is one of characteristic. The verb in such a clause will be in the subjunctive mood and the tense will follow the regular rule for the sequence of tenses.

512. RULE.—Relative Clauses of Characteristic.—*Relative clauses of characteristic are introduced by the relative pronoun quī, quae, quod, who, which, that, and take their verbs in the subjunctive mood according to the rule for sequence.*

513. Translate: 1. Interdum servī quī aedificia nova struerent ā dominō rūrī relictī sunt. 2. Sociī inermēs nōn idōneī sunt quī ducī fortī tribuantur. 3. Quis est quī pecūniam māgnam nōn amet? 4. Hominem quaesivimus quī viam inferiōrem mōnstrāret. 5. Sunt quī cōsulātum propter iūstitiam mereant. 6. Item legiōnēs quae ā prōvinciā hostēs dēterrērent hodiē missae sunt. 7. Ille indignus erat quī impetrāret. 8. Quis fābulam incrēdibilem in conventū nārrāvit? 9. Nēmō est quī vel lāc frīgidum vel aquam fontis frīgidī aestāte nōn laudet. 10. Militēs quī in prōvinciam iter fecērunt lapidēs humī vidērunt.

514. 1. Today we are seeking the hospitality of the judge. 2. This heir is the only one who gives money to his friends. 3. Who is there who would carry on a war in vain? 4. We drove away the men who were to make the attack. 5. I will give my iron and gold to no one.

QUIZ.—How can you tell the difference between ordinary relative clauses and those of purpose and characteristic?

Pick out some examples of each kind in your English reader.

APPLIED LATIN

Compound Verbs of the Third Conjugation

515. The Agō, Cadō, and Claudō Groups

agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, to set in motion, drive

cōgō (3)	exigō (3)	redigō (3)
<i>drive together, force, collect (con-agō)</i>	<i>drive out, exact (taxes)</i>	<i>drive back, reduce</i>

trānsigō (3)	agitō (1)
<i>drive through, accomplish</i>	<i>move, pursue</i>

Note that **agō** becomes **-igō** in most compounds.

cadō, cadere, cecidī, —, to fall

accidō (3)	concidō (3)	excidō (3)
<i>fall, to happen</i>	<i>fall down, collapse</i>	<i>fall out</i>

Note that **cadō** becomes **-cidō** (i short) in compounds. The perfect is **-cidī**, not **cecidī**, in compounds; as **accidō, accidere, accidī, —**. **Excidō** has a fourth part, **excāsum**.

claudō, claudere, clausī, clausus, to shut, close

conclūdō (3)	exclūdō (3)	inclūdō (3)
<i>shut around, surround</i>	<i>shut out, exclude</i>	<i>shut in, confine</i>
interclūdō	praecclūdō (3)	
<i>shut off, cut off</i>	<i>shut off</i>	

Note that **claudō** becomes **-clūdō** in compounds.

516. Translate: 1. Socii Rōmānōrum nāvēs coēgērunt. 2. Eōdem ferē tempore quamquam aestās exācta est Caesar bellum cum hostibus gessit. 3. Dux illūstris cōpiās nostrās in castra redēgit. 4. Haec omnia trānsācta sunt dum Galba in Galliā est. 5. Tēla quae ex inferiōre locō iacta sunt graviter accidērunt. 6. Cum impetus flūminis māximus esset pōns necessariō concidit. 7. Annī tempore nostrae nāvēs ab apertō marī exclūdēbantur. 8. Exercitus rē frūmentāriā interclūsus est, quod cōsulēs barbarōs flūmine quō portābātur nōn prohibuērunt. 9. Explōrātōrēs leōnēs ex silvā agitābant. 10. Quae legiō idōnea est quae interpretēs et lēgātōs habeat?

517. Study these derivatives. Use them in sentences.

agitate	exact	transact	seclude	accident
actor	clause	counteract	conclusion	casual
exclusion	enact	redactor	cogent	decadent
include	conclusive	recluse	occasional	actual
deciduous	cloister	incident	exigency	preclude

518. The Cēdō, Emō, and Fluō Groups

cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessus, to make a motion

concēdō (3) <i>retire, yield</i>	dēcēdō (3) <i>go away, depart</i>	excēdō (3) <i>move out, go forth</i>
intercēdō (3) <i>go between, intervene</i>	praecēdō (3) <i>go before, surpass</i>	recēdō (3) <i>go back, recede</i>
succēdō (3) <i>go up, approach, succeed</i>	antecēdō (3) <i>go forward, surpass</i>	discēdō (3) <i>go away, depart</i>
	prōcēdō (3) <i>go forward, advance</i>	

emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptus, to take, buy

adimō (3) <i>take away</i>	eximō (3) <i>take away, remove</i>	interimō (3) <i>kill</i>
redimō (3) <i>buy back, ransom</i>	sūmō (3) <i>take on (sub-emō)</i>	cōnsūmō (3) <i>use up, consume</i>

fluō, fluere, flūxī, fluctum, to flow

cōnfluō (3) <i>flow together</i>	inflūō (3) <i>flow into</i>	prōfluō (3) <i>flow forth, arise</i>
--	---------------------------------------	--

519. Translate: 1. Caesar, cum proelium male fēcisset ab urbe concessit. 2. Tanta mīlitum virtūs fuit ut dē vāllō dēcēderet nēmō. 3. Quā dē causā Rōmānī Gallōs quoque virtūte* praecēdunt. 4. Incolae eārum regiōnum omnēs Britannōs scientiā* et cultū* et hūmānitāte* antecēdēbant. 5. Cum clādēs atrōx fuisset omnis spēs victōriae adēmpta est. 6. Dux audāx grātiam et amīcitiam mīlitum omnium pecūniā redēmit. 7. Quis cōsul cōpiās hostiū trāns flūmen ēgit cum omnia eōrum tēla cōnsūmpta essent? 8. Aquae hūius fontis in flūmen lātum influunt. 9. Hōc flūmen prōfluit ex illō monte altissimō quī in finibus sociōrum est. 10. Haec flūmina prō castellō cōnfluēbant.

520.* In sentences 3 (*virtūte*) and 4 (*scientiā, cultū, hūmānitātē*) are four instances of the ablative used to point out exactly or specify the respect in which the action of the main verb is true. This ablative is called the Ablative of Specification. It never takes an introductory preposition.

521. RULE.—Ablative of Specification.—*The ablative without a preposition is used to express that in respect to which anything is true or is done.*

522. Study these derivatives. Use them in sentences.

antecedent	fluctuate	concession	influential	sumptuous
accession	recessional	consumption	redeem	presumptive
ancestor	precedent	precede	peremptory	incessant
successor	confluence	predecessor	reflux	processional
recede	affluent	cession	fluency	superfluous
intercede	assume	coempt	exemption	exceed

THE RELIGION OF ROME

In the Forum and its vicinity were the centers of the **Religious Life** of the Romans. The chief temples were situated on the top of the Capitoline Hill. There were the **Temples of Jupiter, Juno, and Minerva**. In the Forum were the Temples of **Saturn**, which contained the Bank of the Roman Government, of **Castor**, of **Julius Caesar**, and of **Vesta**. The **Temple of Vesta** was the most important and the oldest. It was indeed the center of the religion connected with the Home. Just as every house had its particular **shrine** to the god who watched over its inhabitants and near it the **sacred fire**, so there was a similar shrine to the divinity who watched over the whole city. This divinity was the goddess **Vesta**. Her temple was a circular structure which is thought to have reproduced the form (circular) of the early Roman

THE VERB

house. In this temple labored the twelve **Vestal Virgins**, whose business it was to keep alive the sacred fire and to attend to the service of Vesta. Near by was the **Regia**, the home of the **Pontifex Maximus**, who superintended the entire religious life of the citizens. He occupied a place closely resembling the office of the Pope of the Roman Church. There were a number of **Colleges**, so called, bands of priests who attended to certain clearly defined duties in connection with religion and assisted the Pontifex Maximus. The twelve great Gods of the Romans were **Jupiter**, father of gods and king of men; **Juno**, wife of Jupiter and queen of Heaven; **Minerva**, goddess of wisdom; **Apollo**, god of music, prophecy, the sun, trade; **Diana**, sister of Apollo, goddess of the hunt; **Mars**, god of war; **Venus**, goddess of beauty; **Vulcan**, god of fire, the arts of the goldsmiths, blacksmiths, etc.; **Mercury**, messenger of the gods; **Vesta**, goddess of the hearth and of the family; **Ceres**, goddess of the harvests and crops; **Neptune**, god of the sea.

XXXVIII. THE VERB. SUBJUNCTIVE IN EXHORTATIONS AND WISHES. THE IMPERATIVE. COMMANDS AND PROHIBITIONS

523. In your study of the Subjunctive mood you have so far examined its use only in *dependent* statements or clauses. Being a mood suited to *weaker* statements, it is most frequently found in *subordinate* clauses. Still there are some **independent** statements in which the subjunctive mood is employed. Such sentences are not frank expressions of fact, but statements about whose outcome the

speaker is *uncertain*. Independent sentences of this kind comprise **Exhortations** and **Wishes**.

Exhortations and Wishes

524. A. Examine these English sentences:

1. Let us attack the town with courage. 2. Let them not praise the decision of the senate. 3. May you be happy. 4. Would that I were now in Paris. 5. Would that the Great War had never begun.

Of these sentences, Nos. 1 and 2 are *Exhortations*; Nos. 3, 4, and 5, *Wishes*. The mood employed in each is the subjunctive.

Though each makes an independent statement, there lurks about these sentences a feeling of uncertainty. In No. 1 we realize that there is some *doubt* about the attack being made *courageously*; in No. 3 we have *no assurance* that happiness will follow the wish; in Nos. 4 and 5 there is a wish for a change which can never take place.

Construct some English Wishes and Exhortations.

525. B. **Exhortations** and **Wishes** take the **subjunctive** mood in Latin also. Examine these sentences;

Exhortations

1. **Oppidum cum virtute oppugnēmus.** *Let us attack the town with courage.*

2. **Nē senātum laudent.** *Let them not praise the senate.*

Both of these sentences are **exhortations**. The present tense of the subjunctive is used and the negative is **nē**. Only the first and third persons singular or plural of the present tense are used. Ordinarily exhortations occur only in the first person plural.

THE VERB

526. RULE.—Exhortation.—*The first and third persons singular and plural (usually the first person plural) of the present subjunctive are employed to express an exhortation. The negative is nē.*

527. Translate: 1. Gubernātor nāvem diligenter cūret nē marī superētur. 2. Nē dominus servum qui bene serviit hodiē pūniat. 3. Colāmus semper libertātem hūmānitātemque et nostrī finitimī nōs laudābunt. 4. Nē omnēs cupidī aurī sint. 5. Cum calamitātēs veniant virtūtem firmam fortitūdinemque retineāmus. 6. Clientēs laetī beneficia Caesaris semper laudent. 7. Adversīs in rēbus audāx sim. 8. Altitūdine montis nē terreāmur. Ascēsus facilis est. 9. Acerbum vīnum aquā bonā mīsceāmus. 10. Leōnēs cum furōre saeviant.

528. 1. Let the maidens adorn the walls of the temple with roses. 2. If the general has made a mistake let him move his camp. 3. Let us carry on the war courageously. 4. May the winds quickly drive away the clouds. 5. Let the nations of the world seek peace with honor.

QUIZ.—When may the subjunctive mood be used in independent statements?

529. Study and learn these words. Practise the declension of the nouns and adjectives.

industria, -ae, *industry*, f.
lūna, -ae, *the moon*, f.
nota, -ae, *a spot, mark*, f.
medicīna, -ae, *remedy*, f.
medicus, -ī, *a doctor*, m.
institūtum, -ī, *a custom*, n.
intervāllum, -ī, *an interval*, n.
iūdicium, -ī, *a judgment*, n.
laus, laudis, *praise*, f.
lātītūdo, lātītūdinis, *width*, f.
latus, lateris, *a side, flank*, n.
lēnitās, lēnitātis, *gentleness*, f.
liberālītās, liberālītātis, *liberality*, f.

mēnsis, mēnsis, *a month*, m.
iuuenis, -is, *a young man*, m.
mercātor, mercātōris, *a merchant*, m.
cultus, -ūs, *civilization*, m.
equitātus, -ūs, *cavalry*, m.
inīquus, -a, -um, *unequal, unfair*.
invītus, -a, -um, *unwilling*.
māgnificus, -a, -um, *grand, magnificent*.
mātūrus, -a, -um, *early, ripe*.
liber, libera, liberum, *free*.
libenter, *gladly*.

530. WORD STUDY.—Explain the meanings of the following English derivatives. Use them in sentences of your own. Add any other derivatives that you can.

latitude	youthful	cult	iniquity	industrious
junior	laud	mature	lateral	interval
collateral	lunar	merchandise	illiberal	medicinal
remedy	magnificent	market	mercantile	institute
merchant	lunatic	medicated	judicious	culture
laudable	magistrate	notation	equilateral	premature
lenient	commerce	juvenile	prejudice	master

Wishes

531. The following sentences express *simple wishes in present time*.

1. **Valeās.** *May you be well.* 2. **Diēs clārus sit.** *May the day be fair.* 3. **Nē Gallī Rōmānōs superent.** *May the Gauls not conquer the Romans.*

These wishes are all made in **present** time with the hope that they may come to pass in the **future**. There is no assurance, however, that they will come to pass. In such wishes the subjunctive is used in the **present** tense. The negative is **nē**.

532. RULE.—**Simple Wishes.**—*The present tense of the subjunctive mood is used to express a simple wish. The negative is nē.*

533. The following sentences express wishes which the speaker knows can *never be fulfilled*; which, in other words, are *hopeless*.

1. **Utinam nātiōnēs pācem nunc facerent.**

Would that the nations were now making peace.

2. **Utinam rēgem vīdissēmus.**

Would that we had seen the king.

3. **Utinam nē Gallī in Germāniā essent.**

Would that the Gauls were not in Germany.

4. **Utinam nē dominus servum pūnīvisset.**

Would that the master had not punished the slave.

The wishes in these sentences are called *Contrary to Fact*. They can *never* be fulfilled. All the facts are against them. For instance, one could wish that the nations were now making peace, but they are not doing so; or that he had seen the king, when he has not. Contrary to Fact (*hopeless*) wishes in *present* time take the imperfect subjunctive (Nos. 1 and 2); in *past* time the pluperfect subjunctive (Nos. 3 and 4). They are regularly introduced by the word **utinam**, *would that*.

534. RULE.—Contrary to Fact (hopeless) Wishes.—*The imperfect subjunctive introduced by utinam, would that, is used to express a hopeless wish in present time; the pluperfect subjunctive with the same introductory word to express a hopeless wish in past time. The negative is nē.*

535. Translate: 1. Mercātor sapiēns, laetus sīs industriā māgnificā. 2. Utinam nē haec proelia cotīdiāna cultūs nātiōnum dēlerēt. 3. Utinam lūna clāra nunc lūcēret. 4. Domine, utinam nē tam ācerrimē servum pūnīvisēs. 5. Utinam artem medicīnae in adolēscentiā accūrātē didicissēmus. 6. Servus bonus et ūtilis multōs annōs sīs. 7. Utinam explōrātor viam in silvā apertam nōbīs mōnstrāvisset. 8. Utinam laudēs medicīs hōc in bellō libenter darentur. 9. Utinam nē ā cōpiīs hostium prōvincia tām lātē dēlēta esset. 10. Rōma, fāmam māximam glōriamque habeās.

536. 1. Would that the cavalry were now victorious. 2.

Would that the body had been buried with honor. 3. May you be free and diligent, dear companion. 4. May the moon shine with clear light. 5. Would that the enemy had not waged an unfair war.

QUIZ.—Construct some Simple and Contrary to Fact wishes in English.

The Sentence. Imperative

537. There are three kinds of sentences: the *declarative*, the *interrogative*, and the *imperative*. Declarative sentences state **facts**; interrogative sentences ask **questions**; imperative sentences voice **commands**. For imperative sentences there is a *special* mood of the verb called the **Imperative**.

The Imperative in English and Latin

538. The following English sentences are imperative:

1. Lead the troops against the enemy. 2. Come all ye faithful. 3. Lift up your hearts.

Learn the imperative mood of the English verb **to find** in Paragraph 824. Give the imperatives of the English verbs *see, bring, help, do*. Write some commands in English.

539. LAUDŌ and HABEŌ.—Imperative Mood—Active and Passive

PRESENT		ACTIVE		PRESENT	
<i>Singular</i>				<i>Singular</i>	
2.	laudā, <i>praise (thou)</i>			2.	habē, <i>have (thou)</i>
<i>Plural</i>				<i>Plural</i>	
2.	laudāte, <i>praise (ye)</i>			2.	habēte, <i>have (ye)</i>
		PASSIVE			
<i>Singular</i>				<i>Singular</i>	
2.	laudāre, <i>be (thou) praised</i>			2.	habēre, <i>be (thou) had (held)</i>
<i>Plural</i>				<i>Plural</i>	
2.	laudāmini, <i>be (ye) praised</i>			2.	habēmini, <i>be (ye) had (held)</i>

THE VERB

Learn the imperatives of **Laudō** and **Habeō** and also of the other regular conjugations in Paragraphs 827-8-9. Note that the present imperative passive is the same in form as the present infinitive active.

The imperative of **Sum** is **es**, *be thou*, **este**, *be ye*. ¶ 831.

540. From the paragraphs at the back of the book you see that there is also *another tense* of the imperative mood, the *future*. The future tense of the imperative is very rare, being found only in laws, treaties, and the ritual of religion. In English this tense of the imperative can be seen in the sentence, "*Thou shalt have no other gods before Me.*" The future imperative is *not* included in the work of this book.

541. For practice translate the following imperatives:

1. Cernite, *dēlē, dūc,* parā.* 2. Tribue, *es, caedite, manē.*
3. Saevite, *venī, dīc,* este.* 4. Amāte, *cape, relinque, favēte.*

Commands

542. The following Latin sentences are imperative:

1. **Portā hōc frūmentum ad urbem.** *Carry this grain to the city.* 2. **Venite laetī.** *Come ye happy ones.*

In each of these examples the imperative is used to express a **command**. Notice that the verb in each case is in the *second* person. A real command can be given only in the second person. If the first or third is used in English the expressions are mild commands or exhortations (¶ 524).

543. RULE.—**Commands** are expressed by the present imperative.

*NOTE.—The present imperatives of **dīcō**, **ferō**, **dūcō**, **faciō**, are *irregularly dīc, fer, dūc, and fac.*

Prohibitions

544. A command which is put in the negative—as, *Don't talk out loud; Boys! Don't make such a disturbance*—is called a **Prohibition** (negative command). In the expression of Prohibitions the Latins did not use the present imperative combined with the negative, as is done in English, but ordinarily used the imperative of the verb **Nōlō**, *I am unwilling* (**nōlī**, *be unwilling to or don't*, singular; and **nōlīte**, *be unwilling to or don't*, plural, followed by the present infinitive of the verb containing the command.

545. Examples of Prohibitions.

1. **Nōlī aciem turbāre.** *Be unwilling to (don't) throw the battle line into confusion.* 2. **Nōlīte dōna mala filiis vestris dare.** *Be unwilling to (don't) give your sons evil gifts.*

546. RULE.—**Prohibitions.**—*The imperative of the verb Nōlō (nōlī, singular; nōlīte, plural) followed by the present infinitive is commonly used in Latin to express a prohibition.*

547. Translate: 1. Portāte frūmentum ut cibus militibus sit.* 2. Mitte nūntium nē calamitās civitātī* sit. 3. Vocāte servōs ut aedificiō* praesidium sit. 4. Dum spēs victōriae manet, pūgnāte ācritēr. 5. Nōlī servum pūnīre quod libertātem petit. 6. Militēs, nōlīte inīquō locō pūgnāre! 7. Nautae, nōlīte lātitudinem maris timēre! 8. Date deō laudēs si auxilium mittet. 9. Cum Caesar superētur, tamen este fortēs et audācēs. 10. Nōlī pecūniam aliēnam cupīditāte tangere.

* NOTE.—The dative case is often used with the verb **sum** to indicate the **possessor**. "**Ut cibus militibus sit**" means *that the soldiers may have food (that food may be to the soldiers)*. The thing possessed is in the nominative case.

THE VERB

548. RULE.—Dative of the Possessor.—*The dative case is used with the verb sum to denote the possessor. The thing possessed is the subject of sum.*

549. 1. Galba (*dat.*) had sons and daughters. 2. Praise the industry of the careful slave. 3. Do not send the messenger to the redoubt. 4. The young man has a horse. 5. What gifts shall that son of yours have?

Compound Verbs of the Third Conjugation

550. The Currō, Dūcō, and Flectō Groups

currō, currere, cucurrī, cursum, to run

accurrō (3) <i>run to</i>	concurrō (3) <i>run together</i>	dēcurrō (3) <i>run down from</i>
occurrō (3) <i>run to meet</i>	praecurrō (3) <i>outrun, excel</i>	

Note: Some verbs, compounds of **currō**, have the perfect in **currī**, not **cucurrī**.

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, to lead

addūcō (3) <i>lead to, induce</i>	condūcō (3) <i>hire, collect</i>	dēdūcō (3) <i>lead away</i>
ēdūcō (3) <i>lead out</i>	indūcō (3) <i>lead on, influence</i>	intrōdūcō (3) <i>lead in, introduce</i>
perdūcō (3) <i>lead through, construct</i>	prōdūcō (3) <i>lead forth, prolong</i>	redūcō (3) <i>lead back, reduce</i>
subdūcō (3) <i>lead up</i>	trādūcō (3) <i>lead across, cheat</i>	

flectō, flectere, flexī, flectus, to bend

inflectō (3) <i>bend away, down</i>	reflectō (3) <i>bend back, reflect, think about</i>
---	---

551. Translate: 1. Cum signum ē tribūnālī datum esset milītēs concurrērunt. 2. Tam incrēdibilī celeritātē ad flūmen decucurrērunt ut ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine essent. 3. Clientēs omnēs quōrum māgnū numerum habēbat ad eundem locum condūxit. 4. Dēdūcāmus equōs

APPLIED LATIN

dē collibus ad oppidum. 5. Galba cum rēgnī cupiditāte inductus esset māximās cōpiās coēgit. 6. Utinam nē exercitum Rōmānum in finēs Gallōrum intrōdūxisset! 7. Nōne apud oppidum hostium fossam altam perdūcis? 8. Cum ferrum sē inflexisset, hāc dē causā sua tēla Gallōs ipsōs impedivērunt. 9. Arborēs inflectēbant ut finitimōrum equitātum impedirent sī ad eōs vēnissent. 10. Caesar suās cōpiās in collem finitimum subdūcit.

552. Study these English derivatives from the verbs above. Use them in sentences of your own.

concourse	reflex	induction	occurrence	flexible
abductor	produce	excursion	induce	occur
deduction	deflect	current	discursive	recourse
cursory	duct	course	productivity	reduction
introduction	inflection	conduct	deduce	incur
genuflection	discourse	cursive	traduce	concur
precursor	introductory	adduce	reflector	currency

553. The Caedō, Iungō, and Mittō Groups

caedō, caedere, cecidī, caesus, to cut

concīdō (3)	incīdō (3)	occīdō (3)	succīdō (3)
<i>cut down, cut to pieces</i>	<i>cut into</i>	<i>cut down, kill</i>	<i>cut down</i>

Note that **caedō** becomes **-cīdō** (ī long) and that the third principal part is **-cīdī** (not **cecīdī**) in compounds.

iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūctus, to join

adiungō (3)	coniungō (3)
<i>join to, add</i>	<i>join together, unite</i>

mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, to send

admittō (3)	āmittō (3)	committō (3)
<i>admit, commit</i>	<i>let go, lose</i>	<i>intrust, commit</i>
dēmittō (3)	dīmittō (3)	ēmīttō (3)
<i>let down, send away</i>	<i>send away, dismiss</i>	<i>send forth, let go</i>
intermittō (3)	omīttō (3)	prōmittō (3)
<i>interrupt, stop, check</i>	<i>give up, omit</i>	<i>proffer, promise</i>
permittō (3)	praemittō (3)	remittō (3)
<i>permit, allow</i>	<i>send in, advance</i>	<i>send back, relax, weaken</i>
	trāsmittō (3)	
	<i>send across, convey across</i>	

THE ROMAN HOUSE

554. Translate: 1. Nostrī māgnam partem eōrum concidērunt. 2. Altera filiārum occīsa, altera capta est. 3. Cum frūmenta succīsa essent, aedificia quoque militēs nostrī dēlēvērunt. 4. Ea loca finitimae prōvinciae adiungēmus. 5. Sī omnēs cīvēs cum lēgātī cōpiīs sē coniūnxissent, facile hostibus restitissent. 6. Quod frūmenta amissa erant; eō tempore cibus eīs domī nōn erat. 7. Caesar celeriter concilium dīmisit sed virum retinuit. 8. Cum equī ex cōspectū omnium ductī essent, proelium commisit. 9. Quod iter nūllam partem diēi intermissum est in finēs hostium celeriter vēnit. 10. Māgnum numerum captivōrum domum remittāmus.

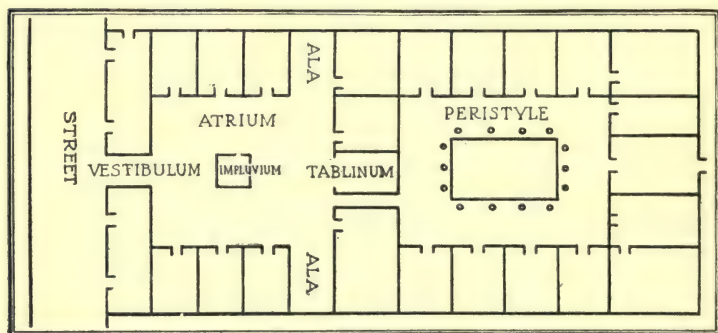
555. Study these English derivatives from the verbs above. Use them in sentences of your own.

adjoin	disjoin	excise	yoke	demise
committee	suicide	intermittent	remiss	intermission
jointure	concise	homicide	pretermitt	remission
conjugal	permission	subjoin	transmitter	admission
omission	incision	juncture	commissary	decision
promissory	decide	subjugation	demit	admittance
compromise	commission	emit	promise	joint
premise	surmise	adjunct	precise	remit

THE ROMAN HOUSE

You have seen that the Roman Forum was crowded with public buildings and temples, but as yet you have heard nothing of the ordinary house which served the average Roman. Look at the plan below. You see at once that the Roman house consisted of **two parts**. Each part surrounded a central area or court. The front part of the house was Roman and bore Latin names; the rear was adopted from the Greek houses and bore Greek names. The oldest form of the Roman house was probably like the circular **Temple**

of **Vesta**. It had a low roof with a small smoke hole. Its door was very large. To this early form of Roman house was given the name **atrium**. From it the later house developed. The hole in the roof was made larger and the door smaller. Beneath the smoke hole there was placed a basin to catch the rain water which fell through the enlarged smoke hole. There were in later houses about this basin (**impluvium**): the **vestibulum** (where one took off the sandals), guarded by the **iānitor** or door-keeper; the **atrium** or



PLAN OF A ROMAN HOUSE

large court, entered from the vestibulum; and several rooms about the atrium used as sleeping rooms or store rooms. Often the room nearest the street was let to a merchant. All connection with the house itself was then blocked up and a special entrance was made from the street. Such a shop was called a **taberna** (*tavern*). In the **ālae** (two important rooms at the back of the atrium) were placed the **wax images** of the ancestors of the family, arranged in such a way that they could be connected by a line, thus revealing

the family tree or genealogy. In funeral processions these images or masks were removed from the *ālae* and worn by different members of the family, so that the dead person was apparently escorted to the grave by his ancestors as well as his descendants.

XXXIX. THE VERB. PARTICIPLE. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. INFINITIVE. COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE

556. Besides the regular moods, indicative, subjunctive, and imperative, there are included in a complete conjugation a number of forms, as the participle, the infinitive, the gerund and gerundive, *which are partly verbs and partly nouns or adjectives*. As an example of a verb used as a noun, consider the word *running* in the following sentence: *Running is good exercise*. The word *running* is a part of the verb *to run*, but in this sentence it is used as a noun, not as a verb. In the sentence, "*The hurrying crowds passed on,*" the word *hurrying* is part of a verb used as an *adjective*.

The Participle in English and Latin

557. A. One of the important parts of the verb outside the three regular moods is the **Participle**. The Participle is in reality a *verbal adjective*. It is used in agreement with a noun like the ordinary adjective.

In the conjugation of the English verb there are *two* participles in the active voice and *two* participles in the passive voice. In the verb *to find* they are:

ACTIVE

Pres. *finding*
Perf. *having found*

Pres. *being found*
Perf. *having been found*

APPLIED LATIN

Give all the participles of the English verbs *send*, *make*, *lay*, *lend*. Pick out other instances of the participle in the English reader you are using.

558. Note the italicized words in these sentences:

1. A black horse *drawing* a light wagon won the race.
2. The wagon *drawn* by the black horse won the race.

In these two sentences the italicized words are **participles** (verbal adjectives). **Drawing** is a *present active*, **drawn** is a *perfect passive* participle. The participle being a verb may have a *direct object* (No. 1) or *adverbial modifiers* (No. 2).

559. B. In the Latin verb there are the following participles:

LAUDŌ and HABEŌ.—Participles—Active and Passive

ACTIVE VOICE			
<i>Present</i>	laudāns	(laudantis),	habēns, habentis,
	<i>praising</i>		<i>having</i>
<i>Future</i>	laudātūrus, -a, -um,	habitūrus, -a, -um,	
	<i>about to praise</i>	<i>about to have</i>	
<i>Perfect</i>	_____	_____	
PASSIVE VOICE			
<i>Present</i>	_____		
<i>Future</i>	_____ (laudandus,	(habendus, -a, -um,	
	-a, -um, <i>about to be</i>	<i>about to be had</i>)*	
	<i>praised</i>)*		
<i>Perfect</i>	laudātus, -a, -um, <i>hav-</i>	habitus, -a, -um,	
	<i>ing been praised</i>	<i>having been had</i>	

560. Learn the participles of the other regular verbs in Paragraphs 827-8-9. Of **Sum** there is only the future participle **futūrus, -a, -um, about to be**. Paragraph 831. Participles are declined like adjectives; the present active like **recēns**, the others like **lātus**.

* **Laudandus** and **habendus** are usually called Gerundives.

561. The following sentences illustrate the use of the participle as an adjective (**Attributive participle**):

1. **Puellae deum laudentēs templum ōrnābant.** *Maidens while praising the god were decorating the temple.* 2. **Rōmānī ab hostibus permōtī oppidum reliquērunt.** *The Romans having been thoroughly terrified left the town.* 3. **Equum nūper captum vīdimus.** *We saw the horse that had been lately caught.*

In these sentences the participle is used as an **attributive** (limiting) **adjective**. As part of a verb, however, it retains its verbal force, taking in the first sentence a *direct object*, in the second and third *adverbial modifiers*, **ab hostibus** and **nūper**. The participle may be used in agreement with *any noun* in a sentence. In sentences 1 and 2 it agrees with the subject, in 3 with the object.

562. Translate: 1. Oppidum dēlētum ā cīvibus amātum est. 2. Leōnem sub arbore sedentem vīdimus. 3. Num via illīs incolīs ēmigrātūrīs mōnstrāta est? 4. Nōs castellum praesidiō novō fīrmātūrī prīmō nūntium ad Caesarem mittēmus. 5. Spectāte sōlem lūcentem. Clārissimā lūce longē lātēque fulget. 6. Dōnum aquae servō territō placuit. 7. Nē illī portās clausūrī adventum legiōnis timeant. 8. Rēmī nautārum impetū maris frāctī dē nāvis latere pendēbant. 9. Dēditio post proelium facta iram Caesaris dēlēvit. 10. Quis fābulās ā fallācī augure dictās audiet?

563. 1. Let us drive out the enemy from the conquered province. 2. The laughing maiden saw her face in the water. 3. Soldiers who are about to make a charge are often overcome by fear. 4. Speak freely to the man asking the road. 5. Do not fear the victorious leader.

QUIZ.—Pick out some participles in your English reader.

mēnsa, -ae, <i>a table</i> , f.	obses, obsidis, <i>a hostage</i> , m.
mora, -ae, <i>delay</i> , f.	īctus, -ūs, <i>a stroke</i> , m.
nervus, -ī, <i>a sinew, cord</i> , m.	lāpsus, -ūs, <i>a slip</i> , m.
iugum, -ī, <i>a yoke, ridge</i> , n.	medius, -a, -um, <i>middle</i> .
maleficium, -ī, <i>a misdeed</i> , n.	mīrus, -a, -um, <i>marvelous</i> .
mātrimōnium, -ī, <i>marriage</i> , n.	nōnnūllus, -a, -um, <i>some, several</i> .
mōs, mōris, <i>a habit, custom</i> , m., pl., <i>character</i> .	nūdus, -a, -um, <i>bare</i> .
mors, mortis, <i>death</i> , f.	oppidānus, -a, -um, <i>belonging to a town</i> .
mulier, mulieris, <i>a woman</i> , f.	māne, <i>early in the morning</i> .
mūnitiō, mūnitiōnis, <i>fortifica- tion</i> , f.	male, <i>ill</i> .
nox, noctis, <i>night</i> , f.	māximē, <i>especially</i> .
	minimē, <i>least of all</i> .

564. Study and learn these words. Practise the declensions of the nouns and adjectives. Compare the adverbs.

565. WORD STUDY.—Explain the meaning of these derivatives. Use them in sentences. Add others.

moratorium	elapse	immediate	mediator	mediocrity
immortality	denuded	minimum	morality	immoral
matrimonial	miracle	relapse	admire	ammunition
mortgage	malefactor	lapse	yoke	malcontent
medium	enervate	mortuary	mortify	nerve
nocturnal	maximum	equinox	collapse	maleficent
miraculous	demoralize	malice	mortal	nude

The Ablative Absolute

566. Besides the use of the participle as an attributive adjective there is a construction in which the participle replaces the verb of a dependent clause. This construction is called the **Ablative Absolute**.

567. Examine these Latin sentences:

I. **Hīs rēbus factis, imperātor castra mōvit.**

These things having been done (when these things had been done) the commander moved his camp.

2. Hostibus atrōciōribus, milītēs impetum ācriōrem fēcērunt.

The enemy being rather fierce (because the enemy were rather fierce) the soldiers made a sharper attack.

3. Caesare duce, spēs bonās habēbimus.

Caesar being the leader (if Caesar is the leader) we shall have good hopes.

The underscored words in these sentences mark instances of the Ablative Absolute construction. This construction is composed usually of a **noun** (or pronoun) and a **participle**. It gets the name **ablative** because both the noun and the participle stand in the **ablative case**; the name **absolute** because it is not grammatically connected with any word in the rest of the sentence. It can be *dropped* from its sentence *without spoiling the sense*; its noun subject is never the same as the subject, object, or indirect object of the main sentence. From the translations given above you can see that the Ablative Absolute *replaces dependent clauses*. In No. 1 it replaces a temporal, in No. 2 a causal, in No. 3 a conditional clause. The Latins liked this construction because it enabled them to put the substance of a *long dependent clause into a very few words*.

568. The *most common* form of this construction is a *noun* (or pronoun) and a *perfect passive participle in the ablative*, as in the first sentence. In the Ablative Absolute the only other participle used was the present active. The second and third sentences show the form of this construction when the present participle of **Sum** was required. In these sentences the noun subject of the construction

stands alone, the participle of the verb **sum** (which did not exist) being understood. In No. 2 the adjective **atrōciōribus** is a *predicate* adjective; in 3 the noun **duce** is a *predicate* noun. (Compare Paragraphs 264, 265.)

569. RULE.—The Ablative Absolute.—*A noun (or pronoun) and a participle, perfect passive or present active, may be put in the ablative case to express the time, cause, condition or other circumstance of an action.*

NOTE.—*When the participle required would be the present participle of the verb **sum**, the construction consists of a noun and an adjective, or two nouns in the ablative.*

570. Translate: 1. Proeliō factō, oppidānī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt. 2. Exercitus vester ab hostibus pulsus et sub iugum missus est. 3. Equitātus sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam fēcit. 4. Hīs rēbus auditīs, Galba filiam suam Caesārī in mātirimōnium dedit. 5. Poēta mortem tristem avis parvī māgnificō carmine nārāvit. 6. Duce fallācī, mūnitiōnēs nostrae facile captae sunt. 7. Montibus altiōribus et flūminibus lātiōribus, explōrātōrēs inimicōs mūnitiōnibus nostrīs, facile prohibēbāmus. 8. Hīs rēbus nūntiātīs, obsidēs mediō in oppidō māne reliquimus et fūgimus. 9. Diū atque ācritēr pūgnābant. 10. Scūtīs ūnō ictū tēlōrum frāctīs, tamen multi nūdō corpore impetum fēcērunt.

571. 1. Let us praise the wonderful judgment of the leader. 2. I have no bad habits and least of all do I commit misdeeds. 3. The death of the woman having been announced early in the morning, her father and brother in sadness remained at home during the whole day. 4. Several of the townspeople fortified the town, though hostages had

THE VERB

been given to Caesar. 5. When the cart had been filled with gold, the slave dragged it into an open field.

QUIZ.—Explain the Ablative Absolute construction. Why did the Latins like it?

The Infinitive

572. The Infinitive is another one of those forms, included in the conjugation of regular verbs, which are *verbal nouns or verbal adjectives*. The participle which you have had was a verbal adjective; the **infinitive is a verbal noun**. As a noun it may be used as the subject or the object of a verb. As a verb it may have its own subject or object and may be limited by adverbial modifiers. It gets its name, *infinitive*, from **in**, *not*, and **finiō**, *to end or limit*. It is *unlimited* with respect to the *person* and *number* of its subject, that is, the form of the infinitive does not change whether its subject is first, second, or third person, singular or plural. The subject of an infinitive is put in the **accusative case**.

A. The Infinitive in English

573. Examine these English sentences: 1. *To see* is *to believe*. Infinitives as subject *nominative* and as predicate *nominative*. 2. *To see the sun* is a treat. Infinitive (with direct object) used as subject *nominative*. 3. The general ordered *the soldiers to take the town quickly*. Infinitive (with subject accusative and adverbial modifier) used as direct object (*accusative*). The preceding sentences show that in English the infinitive is used as a *noun* (having cases) and as a *verb* (having adverbial modifiers).

Learn the infinitives of the verb *to find*, Paragraph 824.

Give all the infinitives of the English verbs, *see*, *send*,

APPLIED LATIN

play, hope. Pick out the infinitives in the following English sentences:

1. When night came the hostages were ordered to depart.
2. If you are sent to aid the troops be sure to fight courageously.
3. He is said to have believed the guide's report.
4. We see that the soldiers are about to cross the canal.
5. Who ordered the slave to be punished?

B. The Infinitive in Latin

574. LAUDŌ and HABEŌ.—The Infinitive—Active and Passive

ACTIVE VOICE

<i>Present</i> laudāre, to praise	habēre, to have
<i>Perfect</i> laudāvisse, to have praised	habuisse, to have had
<i>Future</i> laudātūrus, -a, -um esse, to be about to praise	habitūrus, -a, -um esse, to be about to have

PASSIVE VOICE

<i>Present</i> laudārī, to be praised	habērī, to be had
<i>Perfect</i> laudātus, -a, -um esse, to have been praised	habitus, -a, -um esse, to have been had
<i>Future</i> laudātum irī, to be about to be praised	habitum irī, to be about to be had

575. Learn the forms of the infinitive in all the regular conjugations, ¶827-8-9, and of the verb **sum**, ¶831.

576. For practice translate the following forms:

1. Servīrī, parātūrus esse,* ēgisse, impeditōs esse,* sēdisse.
2. Vertī, mōtūrōs esse, pūnītum irī, iūssum esse, monēre.

*Note that the future infinitive active and the perfect infinitive passive are composed of the future active and perfect passive participles, combined with **esse**, the infinitive of the verb **sum**. These participles are really *predicate adjectives* and must agree with the accusative subject of the verb form **esse** in gender, number, and case.

Examine these Latin sentences: 1. **Vidēre est crēdere**

To see is to believe. Infinitives used as subject and predicate nominative. 2. **Sōlem vidēre est bonum.** *To see the sun is good.* Infinitive (with direct object) used as subject. 3. **Imperātor militēs oppidum celeriter oppugnāre iūssit.** *The general ordered the soldiers to attack the town quickly.* Infinitive (with subject accusative and adverbial modifier) used as direct object.

The Infinitive is often used in Latin *to complete the meaning of another verb.* When so used, the infinitive is called *Complementary*, from **compleō**, *to fill out, complete.*

The Complementary Infinitive (*Infinitive without subject*)

577. Examine this sentence: **Frūmentum ad urbem portāre cōsuēvit.** *He was accustomed to carry grain to the city.*

In this sentence the main verb *was accustomed*, taken by itself, means but little. Nobody would say, I am accustomed, without adding what he is accustomed to do. The main verb, then, must have another verb to **complete** its meaning. In this sentence the infinitive **portāre**, completing the meaning of **cōsuēvit**, is a **complementary infinitive**. A complementary infinitive does not have a subject.

578. The Complementary infinitive is often found after:

cōsuēscō,	cōsuēscere,	cōsuēvī,	cōsuētus,	<i>to become accustomed.</i>
dēbeō,	dēbere,	dēbuī,	dēbitus,	<i>to owe, ought.</i>
contendō,	contendere,	contendī,	contentus,	<i>to hasten.</i>
cupiō,	cupere,	cupivī,	cupītus,	<i>to desire.</i>
incipiō,	incipere,	incēpī,	inceptus,	<i>to begin.</i>
properō,	properāre,	properāvī,	properātus,	<i>to hasten.</i>

579. Translate: 1. Beneficia Caesaris laudāre cōsuēscēbāmus. 2. In adolēscientiā rēs magnificās facere cupimus. 3. Cum hostēs fūgissent iter per prōvinciam facere incēpi-

mus. 4. Nōnnūllī quī tēla āmiserant ad oppidum currere contendēbant. 5. Servō liberātō dōna multa dare dēbēmus. 6. Cum equitātus timeat, nōs cum virtūte pūgnāre incipiāmus. 7. Mulierēs templum deī māne ōrnāre cōnsuēscēbant. 8. Quod iuvenēs fāmam glōriamque petunt eōs laudāre dēbēmus. 9. Flūmine vehementī, imperātor castra movēre contendit. 10. Incipite fossās sine morā facere.

580. 1. We were least of all accustomed to conquer. 2. Who ought to be happy? 3. We ought not to punish our commander. 4. Who was accustomed to carry grain to the city? 5. We began to bind the captive's hands.

QUIZ.—Describe the uses of the Infinitive. Give the infinitives of the verbs in ¶578.

Compound Verbs of the Third Conjugation

581. The Premō, Petō, and Pellō Groups

premō, premere, pressī, pressus, to press, oppress

comprimō (3)	dēprimō (3)	exprimō (3)
<i>restrain, repress</i>	<i>depress, sink</i>	<i>press out, extort</i>
imprimō (3)	opprimō (3)	reprimō (3)
<i>press into, engrave</i>	<i>crush, oppress</i>	<i>press back, repress</i>

petō, petere, petivī, petitus, to seek

appetō (3)	repetō (3)	suppetō (3)
<i>seek for, strive after</i>	<i>seek again, repeat</i>	<i>be at hand, be available</i>

pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus, to drive, push

compellō (3)	dēpellō (3)	expellō (3)
<i>drive together, compel</i>	<i>drive away, avert</i>	<i>drive out, expel</i>
prōpello (3)	impellō (3)	repellō (3)
<i>drive forward, propel</i>	<i>drive on, impel</i>	<i>drive back, repel</i>
	appellō (1)	
	<i>call, name</i>	

Learn these compound verbs:

582. Translate: 1. Num Caesar exercitum quem hostēs in Galliā habent facile opprimet? 2. Oppidīs captīs, tamen fugam Gallōrum reprimere nōn cupiunt. 3. Tē cōsule, amīcitiam populī Rōmānī cupidissimē appetimus. 4. In-

THE VERB

iūriis atrōcissimīs exercitus ab hīs oppidānīs poenās bellō repetivit. 5. Māximum numerum carrōrum plēvērunt ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret. 6. Cōpiaē imperātōris celeriter ex locō, inferiōre in flūmen compulsae sunt. 7. Militēs, multīs tēlis iactīs, vāllō scūta dēpellere incipiēbant. 8. Num oppidānōs quī in illō oppidō habitābant sine morā expulistis? 9. Gallī ā ducibus impulsī bellum cum populō Rōmānō diū gerēbant. 10. Concursū et tēlis militum repulsi hōc cōnātū destitimus.

583. Study these English derivatives of the verbs above. Use them in sentences of your own.

compress	impetus	compel	expression	appetite
pressure	depression	repelling	repulsive	dispel
repress	depressing	petition	competent	competition
printer	propulsion	oppression	impulsive	express
compulsory	irrepressible	impetuous	competitor	impression
repetition	expel	appellation	compulsion	inexpressible

584. The Pōnō, Regō, and Solvō Groups

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, *to place, put*

compōnō (3)	dēpōnō (3)	dispōnō (3)
<i>put together, construct, compose</i>	<i>put aside, set aside</i>	<i>put apart, arrange, dispose</i>

expōnō (3)	impōnō (3)	interpōnō (3)
<i>put forth, explain</i>	<i>put upon, impose</i>	<i>put between, interpose</i>

praepōnō (3)	prōpōnō (3)
<i>put in charge of</i>	<i>put forward, propose</i>

regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus, *to rule, direct*

corrīgō (3)	dirīgō (3)	ērigō (3)
<i>reform, correct</i>	<i>direct, guide</i>	<i>raise up, make erect</i>

pergō (3)	surgō (3)
<i>keep straight along, go on (per-regō)</i>	<i>raise, rise (sub-regō)</i>

Note that **rego** becomes **-rigō** in compounds.

solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus, *to loosen, release*

absolvō (3)	dissolvō (3)	persolvō (3)	resolvō (3)
<i>free, acquit</i>	<i>set free, dissolve</i>	<i>return thanks, pay a penalty</i>	<i>loosen, resolve, cancel</i>

APPLIED LATIN

Learn these compound verbs.

585. Translate: 1. Impedimenta trāns flūmen dēposita sunt. 2. Hōc opere factō, praesidia dispōnāmus et castra mūniāmus. 3. Atque cōpiās hostium in omnibus collibus expositās et armātās vīdit. 4. Captīvus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus prōposuit quod antea tacuerat. 5. Haec animālia cum concidissent sē māximā cum difficultāte ērēxērunt. 6. Quā rē nūntiātā, legiōnēs ad castra mediō in colle laetae pergunt. 7. Hī prīncipēs inimīci Caesarem sine cīvium auxiliō occidērunt. 8. Ita sive cāsū sive cōnsiliō deōrum immortalium ea nātiō poenās persolvit. 9. Num nautae tantās nāvēs facile regunt? 10. Cohortibus nostrīs lātē dispositis, tamen multī barbarī post proelium fūgerunt.

586. Study these derivatives. Use them in sentences.

solvent	deposit	resurrection	repose	component
regal	opposition	dissolution	resolute	interposition
decompose	solution	incorrigible	rectangle	soluble
posture	impose	regicide	insolvent	exponent
insurgent	deposition	postpositive	opponent	indissoluble
resolution	erect	positive	preposition	insurrection
surge	proposition	absolution	composure	exposition
suppose	absolute	disposition	transpose	reign

MODERN CONVENIENCES IN THE ROMAN HOUSE

At the rear of the Roman part of the house was the **tablinum**, in which the **pater familias** (*father of the family*) held private conversations with his friends or transacted important private business. The **tablinum** was his office. Beyond the **tablinum** lay the **Greek part** of the Roman house. The land upon which this part was placed had been originally a grass plot or a garden, and the **tablinum** was perhaps the shed under which the family cattle found refuge. At any rate the **Peristyle**, or Greek part of the

MODERN CONVENIENCES IN THE ROMAN HOUSE

house, seems to have replaced such a grass plot, for in it was usually a pretty garden surrounded by Greek columns. Around this central garden (**hortus**) were a number of rooms devoted to the more intimate life of the family. Here were rooms set apart for sleeping purposes (**cubicula**), dining rooms (**cēnācula**), the kitchen (**culina**), the library (**bibliotheca**), the picture gallery (**pinacotheca**), and a number of lounging rooms. In Roman houses there were no extensive cellars and no great furnaces. The climate of Italy was such that the houses could be heated by small fires that were carried in braziers from room to room. Furnace pipes and furnaces as we know them were not in use among the Romans. There was water service in some Roman houses, for pipes for carrying water have been found in the ruins at Rome and elsewhere. Fresh water was brought from the country by great **aqueducts**, the remains of which are still to be seen in the neighborhood of Rome. Most Roman houses had but one story, though some have been found that had a second story above the atrium to which **scalae** (stairs) led. In the more thickly inhabited parts of the city a number of houses were joined together to make what resembled our tenement houses. These were called **insulae** (islands), because they were surrounded on all sides by streets as an island is by water. The upper stories of Roman houses were built of sun-dried bricks and wood. After heavy rain storms these stories were rendered so weak and insecure that they often plunged down into the narrow streets and so were constantly a menace to people in the streets.

XL. THE VERB. GERUND AND GERUNDIVE. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS. SUPINE

The Gerund in English and Latin

587. A. Among the forms included in the conjugation of a regular verb is the **Gerund**. Like the infinitive, the Gerund is a **verbal noun**. In the following sentences the italicized words are instances of the Gerund in English:

1. I prefer *reading* to *writing*, for *writing* tires me. 2. I dislike your *coming* late. 3. We learn to write by *writing*.

The forms of the Gerund are *identical* in spelling with that of the *present participle* of the active voice. Both end in the letters **-ing**. Though you may have difficulty in distinguishing between these forms, keep in mind that the participle is a *verbal adjective* and the Gerund a *verbal noun*. In the preceding sentences all the uses of the Gerund are shown. In Nos. 1 and 2 there are instances of the Gerund as *subject* and *object*; in No. 3 of the gerund as *object of a preposition*. The present participle being an *adjective* could be used in none of these constructions.

588. B. In Latin as in English the Gerund is a *verbal noun of neuter gender*. The Gerund in Latin is declined *only* in the singular and lacks the nominative case. This case is replaced by the present infinitive, a verbal noun. The Gerund is found *only* in the active voice.

589. LAUDŌ and HABEŌ.—The Gerund—Active Voice

<i>Nom.</i> ——— (laudāre), <i>praising</i>	——— (habēre), <i>having</i>
<i>Gen.</i> laudandī, <i>of praising</i>	habendī, <i>of having</i>
<i>Dat.</i> laudandō, <i>to or for praising</i>	habendō, <i>to or for having</i>
<i>Acc.</i> laudandum, <i>praising</i>	habendum, <i>having</i>
<i>Voc.</i> ———	———
<i>Abl.</i> laudandō, <i>by praising</i>	habendō, <i>by having</i>

THE VERB

590. Learn the Gerunds of the other regular verbs in Paragraphs 827-8-9.

591. For practice translate the following forms: 1. Regendī, movendō, capiendum. 2. Torquendum, serviendī, ōrnandō. 3. Pācandō, portandum, audiendī.

592. Examine these sentences:

1. Vidēre est crēdere. *Seeing is believing.* 2. Cicerō artem dicendī didicit. *Cicero learned the art of speaking.* 3. Caesar locum pūgnandō idōneum mōnstrāvit. *Caesar pointed out a place suitable for fighting.* 4. Nōs milītēs ad pūgnandum mīsīt. *We sent soldiers to fight.* 5. Galba cēdendō numquam vīcit. *Galba never conquered by retreating.*

These sentences illustrate all the cases of the Gerund. The *genitive* and the *accusative* are the most common. In No. 1 the present infinitive is used in place of the missing nominative of the Gerund.

Uses of the Gerund

593. A. The **genitive** of the Gerund is used (1) with the word **causā**, *for the sake of*, to express **purpose**.

pūgnandī causā, *for the sake of fighting.* fugiendī causā, *for the sake of fleeing.*

Note that the word **causā** is the ablative singular of **causa**, *a cause*. It *always* follows the gerund it modifies.

(2) As a simple limiting genitive following a noun.

ars dicendī, *the art of speaking (oratory).* amor habendī, *the love of having (avarice).*

B. The **accusative** of the Gerund is *very common*. It is one of the neatest ways of expressing *purpose* in Latin. This case is always introduced by the preposition **ad**, *to*.

APPLIED LATIN

ad pūgnandum, for fighting, to fight. **ad spectandum**, for looking, to look.

594. Of the other cases the **dative** is used after certain adjectives which are followed by the dative, No. 3. The **ablative** is used as an ablative of *means* or of *cause*, No. 5.

Notice that in *none* of the sentences above is the Gerund used with a direct object. When such a construction would be called for, the Latins commonly used the **Gerundive** (Paragraph 600). Keep this fact well in mind when using or translating the Gerund.

595. Translate: 1. Puerī sapientēs artem pūgnandī discere cupiunt. 2. Quis ōrātor illūstris scientiam dicendī docēre cōsuēscēbat? 3. Nōne in locō pūgnandō idōneō dux sagāx castra pōnet? 4. Dōna amōre dandī saepe dantur. 5. Puer domī dormiendī causā mānsit.

596. 1. To conquer is to overcome. 2. Some men learn to rule by obeying. 3. For the sake of learning let us be diligent. 4. By yielding Galba never defeated his foes. 5. By serving well the slave gained his request.

QUIZ.—Is the Gerund used with a direct object?

597.

ōra, -ae, *the shore*, f.
 penna, -ae, *a feather*, f.
 patria, -ae, *native country*, fath-
 erland, f.
 oceanus, -ī, *the ocean*, m.
 meritum, -ī, *a reward, merit*, n.
 mendācium, -ī, *a lie*, n.
 negōtium, -ī, *business*, n.
 obsidiō, obsidiōnis, *a siege*, f.
 occasiō, occasiōnis, *an occasion*, f.
 opiniō, opiniōnis, *an opinion*, f.
 ōrdō, ōrdinis, *rank, order*, m.
 ōs, ōris, *the mouth*, n.
 os, ossis, *a bone*, n.

Cicerō, Cicerōnis, *Cicero*, m.
 metus, -ūs, *fear*, m.
 pār, paris, *equal*.
 crēber, crēbra, crēbrum, *fre-*
 quent.
 sinister, sinistra, sinistrum, *left*,
 evil.
 parātus, -a, -um, *ready*.
 paucī, paucae, pauca, *few*.
 modo, *lately, just now*.
 mox, *soon*.
 nōndum, *not yet*.
 nōnnumquam, *sometimes*.
 ōlim, *formerly, once*.

THE VERB

598. Study and learn these words. Practise the declensions of the nouns and adjectives. Compare the adverbs.

599. WORD STUDY.—Explain the meaning of these derivatives. Use them in sentences.

pen	oral	impair	patriot	ordinance
occasional	disparage	negotiate	paucity	orifice
pencil	ordinary	parity	opinionated	peer
apparatus	ossify	meritorious	interoceanic	pair
order	par	sinister	patriotism	pinion

The Gerundive or Future Passive Participle

600. The **Gerundive** is a **verbal adjective**. It occurs only in the passive voice, and is declined like the adjective **lātus**. As a verbal adjective it is *often* included among the participles as the future passive participle. It is taken up at this point because its uses are the *same* as those of the Gerund.

The Gerundives of the regular conjugations are:

- First* laudandus, -a, -um, *to be praised.*
- Second* habendus, -a, -um, *to be had.*
- Third* dūcendus, -a, -um, *to be led.*
- “ capiendus, -a, -um, *to be captured.*
- Fourth* audiendus, -a, -um, *to be heard.*

Uses of the Gerundive

601. The common uses of the Gerundive are the *same* as those of the Gerund: (1) the genitive, either limiting or with **causā** to express purpose; (2) the accusative, with **ad** to express purpose; (3) the ablative to express means or cause. As was said in Paragraph 594, the Gerundive is regularly used in place of the *Gerund with a direct object*. In order that you may be able to use the Gerundive when-

APPLIED LATIN

ever the Gerund would take a direct object let us see how this change from the Gerund to the Gerundive works out.

GERUND

For { 1. *pācem petendī causā, to seek peace.*
 2. *ad petendum pācem, to seek peace.*
 3. *pācem petendō, by seeking peace.*

GERUNDIVE

the Latins said: { *pācis petendae causā.*
ad pācem petendam.
pāce petendā.

In the first group are examples of the Gerund with direct object, a construction which the Latins rarely used. In the second group are the uses of the Gerundive, which took the place of the Gerund. In changing from the Gerund to the Gerundive note (1) *that the Gerundive is put in the case of the Gerund it replaces*, (2) *that the direct object (of the Gerund) is made to agree with the Gerundive in case*, (3) *that the Gerundive (adjective) agrees with the direct object in gender, number, and case.*

602. Now that you have had both the Gerund and the Gerundive and have noticed how nearly alike they are you may feel a little uncertainty about being able to distinguish between them. Remember, however, that the Gerund is a *verbal noun, neuter in gender, never declined in the plural, and rarely found with a direct object*; while the Gerundive is an *adjective, has all three genders, both numbers, never stands alone, but always near the noun it modifies.*

603. Translate: 1. *Leōnēs ad flūmen ad aquam hauriendam vērērunt.* 2. *Paucī ōram Ōceanī nāvium videndārum causā petunt.* 3. *Patria ab omnibus cīvibus optimīs amātur.* 4. *Fīnēs Gallōrum ab hīs flūminibus ad montēs et eam par-*

tem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam pertinent. 5. Oppidānī omnēs ad negōtium faciendum parātī sunt. 6. Obsidiōne finītā, occāsiō pācis petendae ab incolīs capta est. 7. Cicerō ōrātionem ad populum prō lēge novā habuit. 8. Mox ossa corporis omnia discēmus. 9. Nōs ad carmina poētae audienda nōnnumquam concurrimus. 10. Cum esset Caesar in Galliā, crēbrae epistolae ad eum ā nūntiīs missae sunt.

604. 1. The mouth is one part of the face. 2. Their left hands were encumbered with shields. 3. Caesar once collected ships to destroy the fleet of the enemy. 4. Did fear take possession of the ranks of the soldiers when the signal for fighting was given? 5. They all shouted to frighten us.

605. We have not spoken of the Gerundive in English because properly the English verb has *no* Gerundive form, the Gerund being used with or without a direct object. In the following sentences the Gerund in English is used with direct object: 1. I walked abroad for the sake of seeing the country. 2. Basketball is a splendid game for testing one's endurance. 3. By sailing the boat skilfully we reached land.

QUIZ.—What replaces the Gerund with direct object? How can you tell the Gerund from the Gerundive?

The Periphrastic Conjugations

606. Before leaving the subject of the Participles and the Gerundives we should consider *two* special conjugations in which these two forms are used. The future active Participle and the Gerundive (future passive participle) combined with certain forms of the verb **sum** make up two conjugations called the *Active and the Passive Periphrastic*. Do not let this long word *periphrastic* confuse you, for it merely

APPLIED LATIN

means a *roundabout way of speaking*. The forms of these conjugations are made up of two verbs rather than of one.

The Active Periphrastic

607. The Active Periphrastic is composed of the **future active participle** combined with the verb **sum**.

LAUDŌ.—The Active Periphrastic

INDICATIVE

Pres. laudātūrus, -a, -um sum, *I am about to praise.*
Imp. laudātūrus, -a, -um eram, *I was about to praise.*
Fut. laudātūrus, -a, -um erō, *I shall be about to praise.*
Per. laudātūrus, -a, -um fui, *I was (have been) about to praise.*
Plup. laudātūrus, -a, -um fueram, *I had been about to praise.*
Futp. laudātūrus, -a, -um fuerō, *I shall have been about to praise.*

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres. laudātūrus, -a, -um sim.
Imp. laudātūrus, -a, -um essem.
Perf. laudātūrus, -a, -um fuerim.
Plup. laudātūrus, -a, -um fuissem.

INFINITIVE

Pres. laudātūrus, -a, -um esse, *to be about to praise.*
Perf. laudātūrus, -a, -um fuisse, *to have been about to praise.*

These are all the forms of the active periphrastic, there being *no imperatives, participles*, etc. This conjugation is used when one wishes to speak of an action as *about to take place*. Its underlying idea is the expression of **intention** or **futurity**.

608. Learn the other active periphrastics in Par. 830.

609. For practice translate the following forms:

captūrus erō	ōrnātūra essēs	vīsūrum fuisse
mōtūrī fuerint	victūrī fuissēmus	habitūrī fueris

Note that the participle being really a predicate adjective *must agree with the subject* of the forms of **sum**.

610. Translate: 1. Fēminae templum deī ōrnātūrae sunt.
 2. Quis servus equum captūrus est? 3. Nē tuam opiniō-

THE VERB

nem mūtātūrus sīs. 4. Epistulam scrīptūrus sum. 5. Viātōrēs viam mōnstrātūrī fuērunt.

1. Caesar was about to change his lines of battle.
2. What oration is Cicero about to deliver?

The Passive Periphrastic Conjugation

611. Just as the Future active participle was used in the formation of the Active Periphrastic, so the Gerundive (future passive participle) is used in the formation of the Passive Periphrastic conjugation. The underlying idea expressed by the forms of this conjugation is that of **obligation, necessity, or duty**.

LAUDO.—The Passive Periphrastic

INDICATIVE

Pres. laudandus, -a, -um sum, *I am to be praised, must be praised.*
Imp. laudandus, -a, -um eram, *I was to be praised.*
Fut. laudandus, -a, -um erō, *I shall have to be praised.*
Perf. laudandus, -a, -um fui, *I have had to be praised.*
Plup. laudandus, -a, -um fueram, *I had had to be praised.*
Futp. laudandus, -a, -um fuerō, *I shall have had to be praised.*

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres. laudandus, -a, -um sim.
Imp. laudandus, -a, -um essem.
Perf. laudandus, -a, -um fuerim.
Plup. laudandus, -a, -um fuisset.

INFINITIVE

Pres. laudandus, -a, -um esse, *to be about to be praised, must be praised.*
Perf. laudandus, -a, -um fuisse, *to have been about to be praised.*

612. Learn the other Passive Periphrastics in Par. 830.

613. For practice translate these forms:

laudandī fuerint	dūcendī eritis	vincendum fuerat
gerendum est	regendus sum	vocandī sumus

614. Translate: 1. Rēx iūstitiā laudandus est. 2. Via ab illis incolis* quī frūmentum portābant quaerenda fuit.

APPLIED LATIN

3. Si victūrī sumus, bellum Caesarī* cum fortitūdine gerendum est. 4. Ōrātiō prō meō amīcō Cicerōnī* habenda erit. 5. Sī negōtium bene finīverō meis amīcīs laudandus erō.

615. *RULE.—Dative of Agent.—*With the Passive Periphrastic the dative case is employed to express the personal agent instead of the ablative with ā (ab). The dative shows the person upon whom the duty or obligation rests.*

616. 1. I must praise Cicero's oration. (Cicero's oration must be praised by me.*) 2. You must love your native country. 3. He will have to punish the soldier. 4. Will the general have to change his opinion? 5. The siege will have to be given up.

QUIZ.—How are the Periphrastic Conjugations formed? What idea underlies each?

617.

potentia, -ae, *power*, f.
 pictūra, -ae, *a painting*, f.
 puella, -ae, *a girl*, f.
 oculus, -ī, *an eye*, m.
 nihil, *nothing*.†
 ōtium, -ī, *leisure*, n.
 pābulum, -ī, *fodder*, n.
 ovis, ovis, *a sheep*, f.
 palūs, palūdis, *a swamp*, f.
 pāstor, pāstōris, *a shepherd*, m.
 pondus, ponderis, *a weight*, n.
 prex, precis, *a prayer*, f.
 pudor, pudōris, *shame*, m.

pulvis, pulveris, *dust*, m.
 sūmptus, -ūs, *expense*, m.
 portus, -ūs, *a port*, m.
 plēnus, -a, -um, *full*.
 pristinus, -a, -um, *former, earlier*.
 privātus, -a, -um, *private*.
 propinquus, -a, -um, *neighboring, near*.
 pūblicus, -a, -um, *public*.‡
 partim, *partly*.
 postridiē, *next day*.
 pridīē, *the day before*.
 prope, *almost*.

618. Study and learn these words. Practise the declensions of the nouns and adjectives. Compare the adverbs.

619. WORD STUDY.—Explain the meaning of these Eng-

* Reverse the order of words in the other sentences of 616.

† Nihil is an *indeclinable* noun, that is, its form does not change to show cases. It is often followed by a partitive genitive.

‡ Rēs pūblica—the Republic, the State.

THE VERB

lish derivatives. Use them in sentences of your own. Add any others you can.

pastoral	depict	prayer	ewe	potential
publicity	approach	propinquity	impudent	pabulum
port	republic	plenary	picturesque	powder
otiose	negotiate	deprivation	pristine	privation
power	sumptuous	imprecation	impotent	pulverize
pound	annihilate	nihilist	ponderous	oculist

The Supine

620. The last of the forms included in the conjugation of a regular verb is the **Supine**. Like the Gerund, the Supine is a *verbal noun*. It was originally a *fourth declension* noun, declined like **cāsus**, Paragraph 234, but in the course of time all its forms disappeared except the accusative and the ablative singular.

621. **LAUDŌ.—The Supine—Active Voice**

Acc. laudātum, *to praise.*

Abl. laudātū, *in praising.*

Learn the supines in Paragraphs 826–7–8–9.

The Uses of the Supine in Latin

622. The **Accusative case** was used after verbs of *motion* to express *purpose*. Examine these sentences:

1. **Spectātum veniunt.** *They came to look.*

2. **Nōs mīlitem calamitātem nūntiātum mīsīmus.** *We sent a soldier to report the disaster.*

The accusative of the Supine enabled the Latins to express purpose without being forced to the constant use of a subordinate clause introduced by **ut**.

The **Ablative case** was used chiefly with certain adjectives to draw attention to a *condition* or *quality*. The Supine

was used with: **facilis**, -e, *easy*, as, **facile factū**, *easy in the doing (to do)*; **mīrus**, -a, -um, *wonderful*, as, **mīrum dictū**, *wonderful to relate*; **mīrābilis**, -e, *remarkable*, as, **mīrābile vīsū**, *remarkable to see*; **horribilis**, -e, *dreadful*, as, **horribile auditū**, *dreadful to hear*. Thus:

1. **Illī hominēs—horribile dictū—suōs filiōs occidērunt.**
Those men—horrible to relate—slew their own sons.

2. **Pāstor ingēns—mīrābile vīsū—montem tōtum quatiēbat.**
The huge shepherd—wonderful to see—was shaking the whole mountain.

623. Compound Verbs of the Third Conjugation

The Rumpō, Scribō, and Struō Groups

rumpō, **rumpere**, **rūpī**, **ruptus**, *to break, burst*

abruptō (3) <i>break off</i>	corrumpō (3) <i>corrupt</i>	ērumpō (3) <i>burst forth</i>	interrumpō (3) <i>break through</i>
--	---------------------------------------	---	---

scribō, **scribere**, **scripsī**, **scriptus**, *to write*

circumscribō (3) <i>confine, limit</i>	cōscribō (3) <i>enroll, levy</i>	dēscribō (3) <i>write down, describe</i>
--	--	--

īnscribō (3) <i>write upon, inscribe</i>	praescribō (3) <i>prescribe, direct</i>
--	---

struō, **struere**, **strūxī**, **strūctus**, *to pile up, arrange*

dēstruō (3) <i>destroy</i>	exstruō (3) <i>build up, construct</i>	īnstruō (3) <i>arrange (troops), plan</i>
--------------------------------------	--	---

obstruō (3)
build against, barricade

Learn these compound verbs.

624. Translate: 1. **Posteā signō datō ex castrīs prīstinā virtute potentiāque ērupuērunt.** 2. **Puella parva oculōs māgnōs bracciaque gracilia habuit.** 3. **Pāstōrēs ovibus nihil pabulī in palūdibus repperiunt.** 4. **Deus haec ōtia nōbīs fēcīt.** 5. **Postrīdiē legiō nova in prōvinciā ā Caesare cōscripta est.** 6. **Vidēbāsne pulverem in eā parte quam in**

THE VERB

partem militēs iter fēcerant? 7. Turri prope exstrūctō, barbari ex mūrō oppidī rīsērunt. 8. Equitātus in sinistrā parte aciēi instruēbātur. 9. Ex omnibus partibus partim castra altiōre vāllō mūnīre partim portās obstruere incipient. 10. Inter propinquās nātiōnēs Galba māgnū numerum equitātū suō sūmptū cōscribēbat.

625. Study these derivatives. Add any others you know.

abrupt	describe	disrupt	prescription	ascribe
interrupt	instrument	rupture	transcribe	scripture
inscription	subscribe	instruction	destroy	bankrupt
construction	rescript	subscriber	destruction	conscription
obstruct	corruption	circumscribe	eruption	scribe

626. The Tangō, Tendō, and Trahō Groups

tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctus, to touch

attingō (3)	contingō (3)	redintegrō (1)
<i>touch, reach</i>	<i>touch, happen (of good fortune) (dat.)</i>	<i>renew, restore (red-in-tegrō)</i>

Note that **tangō** becomes **-tingō** in most compounds. The third principal part of the **-tingō** verbs is **-tigī** (not **tetigī**).

tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentus, to stretch

contendō (3)	intendō (3)	ostendō (3)	praetendō (3)
<i>struggle with, contend, hasten</i>	<i>stretch out, strain</i>	<i>show, disclose</i>	<i>hold forth</i>

The third principal part of **tendō** compounds is **-tendī**.

trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctus, to draw

contrahō (3)	dētrahō (3)	extrahō (3)
<i>draw together, collect</i>	<i>draw off, rob (dat.)</i>	<i>draw out</i>
retrahō (3)	abstrahō (3)	
<i>draw back, recall</i>	<i>draw away</i>	

Learn these compound verbs.

627. Translate: 1. Haec terra quam nūper Gallī possidēbant finēs Rōmānōrum attingit. 2. Paucīs post diēbus portūs capiendī causā proelium redintegrāvērunt. 3. Illī ferē cotidiānis proeliis cum Gallīs contendunt quī in sociōrum

APPLIED LATIN

finibus bellum gerunt. 4. Oculis nostrorum mentibusque ad pugnam intentis, illae cohortes celeriter ad nostras munitiones pervenerunt. 5. Navēs multās in ūnum locum contrāctās lēgātis tribuit. 6. Caesar, scūtō militī dētrāctō, in proelium prōcessit. 7. Quis equum fugitīvum retrahet? 8. Omnēs oppidānī manūs ad Caesarem tendunt?

628. Study these derivatives from the verbs above.

attack	tangent	attendant	portray	distend
pretentious	detract	ostensible	tangible	attend
extend	intensive	portend	retrace	attractive
extensive	contiguous	entreaty	portentous	extract
attention	abstract	extent	intend	treaty
redintegration	subtract	contract	ostentatious	tractable
integer	contingent	intact	tractor	tension
distract	contact	intangible	trait	entire

629.

rapīna, -ae, *robbery*, f.
 rēgīna, -ae, *a queen*, f.
 rīpa, -ae, *a river bank*, f.
 pāgus, -ī, *a district*, m.
 plumbum, -ī, *lead*, n.
 pōmum, -ī, *an apple*, n.
 praemium, -ī, *a reward*, n.
 pēs, pedis, *the foot*, m.
 plēbēs, plēbis, *the common people*, m.
 possessiō, possessiōnis, *ownership*, f.
 potestās, potestātis, *power*, f.
 praetor, praetōris, *an official*,
 praetor, m.

prīnceps, principis, *a chieftain*, m.
 profectiō, profectiōnis, *a departure*, f.
 principātus, -ūs, *chieftainship*, m.
 plānitēs, -ēī, *a plain*, f.
 pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, *beautiful*.
 quālis, quāle, *of what sort*.
 quantus, -a, -um, *how much*.
 reliquus, -a, -um, *remaining*.
 quam, *than*.*
 rursus, *again*.
 repente, *suddenly*.
 satis, *enough*.†
 potius, *rather*.

630. Study and learn these words. Practise the declensions of the nouns and adjectives. Compare the adverbs.

631. WORD STUDY.—Explain the meanings of the English derivatives; use these words in sentences of your own:

* *Quam* is often used after a comparative to denote a comparison.

† *Satis* is often followed by a partitive genitive.

THE OCCUPATIONS OF THE ROMANS

rapine	riparian	pagan	plebeian	pomegranate
pedal	principle	principality	pretorian	principal
impediment	satisfy	plain	quality	relic
princess	pulchritude	plumb	rapture	premium
rapacious	quantity	plumber	possessor	plummet
quadruped	explain	insatiable	saturate	disqualify

THE OCCUPATIONS OF THE ROMANS

In the Forum men of all ranks of society met and lounged about. This spot was the favorite place in Rome for all kinds of meetings and was always crowded with people. Romans thronged the streets leading to the Forum and elbowed and jostled one another upon the Sacra Via. On the steps of the temples, in many cases broad and expansive, the loungers sat conversing or playing at games like backgammon. A great deal of business other than that connected with the government was transacted in the Forum. Along the Sacra Via were many small shops of the more expensive kinds. Here were the shops of jewelers and money changers. On the little streets leading to the Forum were shops in which almost anything desired could be purchased. Among the men who patronized these shops many trades were represented. The common people were banded into **trades unions** at an early time, and these unions or guilds made their importance felt on many occasions.* There were two groups among the working people, those whose trade required dexterity and skill, as doctors and architects, and those who did the commoner forms of labor, as carpenters, goldsmiths, fullers, shoemakers, etc. The unions of these workers were

* Compare the opening scene in Shakespeare's "Julius Caesar."

organized originally to maintain their traditions and to preserve the worship of the divinities who were the special protectors of the individual trades. No Roman citizen at first entered these professions because the pursuit of business was considered beneath his dignity and there was little respect for labor. From early times business and professional activities were carried on by slaves or freedmen; slaves who had bought their freedom or for special services had been freed by their masters. Later the Romans did enter upon such work, but there always remained the same idea that occupation in labor for which wages were paid was beneath the notice of the real Roman citizen.

XLI. THE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE. INDEFINITE

632. In the first part of this book you learned a number of pronouns, such as *hic*, *iste*, *ille*, *idem*, etc., which were called demonstrative pronouns because they pointed out definitely the person, place, or thing for which they stood. Then there came the relative pronouns, the personal pronouns, and the reflexive pronouns. Besides these there are in all languages certain pronouns which refer not to definite persons or things but to some person or thing but *slightly known, indefinite, or referred to only in a general way*. These pronouns being general are called **Indefinite Pronouns**.

The Indefinite Pronouns in English and Latin

633. Examine these English sentences:

1. *Somebody* sent me these flowers.
2. Did *anybody* ring the bell?
3. *Each* sought the first place for himself.

THE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE. INDEFINITE

The words italicized are indefinite pronouns.

Other **Indefinite Pronouns in English** are: *Some, someone, any, anyone, one, any, other, another, few, many, none, all, more, most, certain.*

Construct English sentences containing these pronouns. Be careful to note that these indefinite pronouns immediately become **indefinite adjectives** if made to modify a noun, as, *any man, few books, certain ideas.* Construct some sentences also using these words as indefinite adjectives.

Pick out some instances of the use of indefinite pronouns or adjectives in your English reader.

634. The Indefinite pronouns in Latin are:

<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>		
quis,	quid,	<i>anybody, anything (used only with sī, nisi, nē, num).</i>	
aliquis,	aliquid,	<i>someone, something.</i>	
quisquam,	quicquam,	<i>anyone, anything (no plural).</i>	
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	
quīdam,	quādam,	quiddam,	<i>a certain one or thing.</i>
quīvis,	quāvis,	quidvis,	<i>anyone (you wish), anything.</i>
quisque,	quaeque,	quidque,	<i>each one, each thing.</i>

635. When these indefinite pronouns are joined to a noun in agreement they become **indefinite adjectives**, as follows:

<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	
quī,	qua (quae),	quod,	some, any (used only after <i>sī, nisi, nē, num</i>).
aliquī,	aliqua,	aliquod,	some.
quīdam,	quādam,	quoddam,	certain.
quīvis,	quāvis,	quodvis,	any.
quisque,	quaeque,	quodque,	each.

These words, when *pronouns*, are regularly declined like the interrogative pronouns **quis, quid**; when *adjectives*, like the relative pronoun **quī, quae, quod**, except that the in-

definites **quī** and **aliquī** have **qua** and **aliqua** in the feminine singular nominative.

Learn the declensions of **quis** and **aliquis** in Paragraph 823.

636. Translate: 1. Aliquis mihi hōs flōrēs mīsit. 2. Sī quis plumbum his in montibus repperiat, Rēspūblica prae-mium det. 3. Quāle rēgnū huic rēgīnae fuit? 4. Inter Rōmānōs quīdam praetōrēs potestātem insīgnem possēd-ērunt. 5. Quisque prīnceps sibi prīncipātum petēbat. 6. Pōma ex arbore apud flūminis rīpam in aquam repente cecidērunt. 7. Quaedam plānitīes pulchra ad finēs huius pāgī pertinet. 8. Nē quisquam profectiōnem plēbis quī novīs rēbūs studet rūrsus laudet. 9. Sī quis satis frūmentī possidēbit, praetor quī cōpiam frūmentī cūrat id capiet potius quam alius quem plēbēs nōn iūssit. 10. Quid prae-mium māius quam id quod ā plēbe mihi datum est nunc cupiō?

637. 1. The rest of the fruit we will carry to the house of our chief. 2. If anyone should deprive the praetor of his power the common people would arm themselves. 3. What sort of feet has the horse? 4. Let each man take care of his own possessions rather than those of another man. 5. Some trees are higher than others.

XLII. THE INTERJECTION. NUMERALS

The Interjection in English and Latin

638. Up to the present time you have met with all the parts of speech except the **Interjection**. This part of speech is not very common; still it occurs enough times to make its acquaintance important. The Interjection, as its name shows (**inter**, between, **iaciō**, to throw), is a word inserted at some point in a sentence to produce a certain effect. Inter-

jections reveal the *feeling* of the writer or speaker. They may indicate sorrow or joy, happiness or depression. They have no grammatical connection with the sentence in which they occur, and may be dropped without spoiling the sense.

639. The commonest interjections in English are: *hurrah*, *alas*, *hollo*, *lo*, *behold*, *pst*.

In Latin the commonest interjections are: *Ō* (*oh*); *ēn* (*lo*); *ecce* (*behold*); *ehem* (*hem*); *iō* (*hurrah*); *heu* (*alas*); *heus* (*hey*); *st* (*hist*).

The Numerals

640. The **Numerals** are words which name numbers (**numerus**, *a number*). As parts of speech, numerals are either *adjectives* or *adverbs*. The following kinds of numerals exist in English and Latin: **Cardinal** numerals, as *ūnus*, *one*; *duo*, *two*; *trēs*, *three*; etc. **Ordinal** numerals, as *prīmus*, *first*; *secundus*, *second*, etc. **Distributive** numerals, as *singulī*, *one at a time*; *bīnī*, *two at a time*; etc. **Numeral Adverbs**, as *semel*, *once*; *bis*, *twice*; etc.

641. Learn the numerals given in Paragraph 822.

642. In English the numerals are *not* declined; in Latin the Cardinal numerals up to *three*, and *hundreds from two hundred up to one thousand*, are adjectives with all three genders. The Ordinals and Distributives are declined like *lātus*. Distributives are found only in the plural.

643. Learn the declensions of *ūnus*, *duo*, *trēs*, and *mille*. Paragraph 819.

644. The following numeral words are important:

APPLIED LATIN

simplex, **simplicis**, *one fold, simple*. **duplex**, **duplicis**, *two fold, double*. **triplex**, **triplicis**, *three fold, triple*. **quadruplex**, **quadruplicis**, *four fold, quadruple*. **quincuplex**, **quincuplicis**, *five fold, quintuple*.

These numeral adjectives are declined like **fēlix**.

645. Translate: 1. Tertiō diē duae cohortēs legiōnis iter tria mīlia passuum facile fēcērunt. 2. Aciē triplice instrūctā, quadringentī ex hostibus occīsī sunt. 3. Heu! Nōne leōnem rapācem inter ovēs vidēmus? 4. Ecce homō quem hūmānitāte iūstitiāque omnēs et liberī et servī amābant. 5. Iō! Trēs avēs pulcherrimās in silvā extrā urbem hodiē cēpimus. 6. Cum bīnae et ternae nāvēs singulās circumstetissent, milītēs māximā cum virtūte eās dēlēre contendērunt. 7. Lūna semel duodētrīgintā diēbus plēna est. 8. Cum servus clārē bis vocātūs esset, tamen nōn celeriter vēnit. 9. Quīnque filiī et quattuor filiae ōlim fuērunt rēgī quī nātiōnēs Britanniae regēbat. 10. Cum haec urbs in duās partes flūmine dīviderētur, alteram partem Gallīs concessit, alteram ab hīs relictam cohortibus duodecim attribuit.

646. 1. We sent the first letter today. 2. Lo! three trees were standing on the hill. 3. Hist! The Praetor is coming with forty clients. 4. When a double line of battle has been drawn up let us begin the battle. 5. Does each legion have ten cohorts?

647. Study these English derivatives.

primer	tertiary	quinquennial	bicycle	unify
unicycle	disunited	combine	second	sextet
millennium	single	simple	prime	universal
double	university	binocular	trio	duplicity
secondary	uniform	singular	duplicate	duet
quaternary	primitive	unity	quartette	mile
unique	primate	sexennial	duodecimo	dual

648.

<i>rota</i> , -ae, <i>a wheel</i> , f.	<i>scelus</i> , <i>sceleris</i> , <i>a crime</i> , n.
<i>ruīna</i> , -ae, <i>a ruin, collapse</i> , f.	<i>senex</i> , <i>senis</i> , <i>an old man</i> , m.*
<i>sententia</i> , -ae, <i>an opinion</i> , f.	<i>pariēs</i> , <i>parietis</i> , <i>a house wall</i> , m.
<i>radius</i> , -ī, <i>spoke (of wheel), ray</i> , m.	<i>meridiēs</i> , -ēī, <i>midday</i> , m.
<i>punctum</i> , -ī, <i>a point</i> , n.	<i>rūsticus</i> , -a, -um, <i>rustic, belonging to the country</i>
<i>pilum</i> , -ī, <i>a javelin, spear</i> , n.	<i>saevus</i> , -a, -um, <i>savage, cruel</i> .
<i>pretium</i> , -ī, <i>price</i> , n.	<i>summus</i> , -a, -um, <i>highest</i> .
<i>rādix</i> , <i>rādīcis</i> , <i>a root</i> , f.	<i>tacitus</i> , -a, -um, <i>silent</i> .
<i>rōbur</i> , <i>rōboris</i> , <i>timber</i> , n.	<i>sēparātīm</i> , <i>separately</i> .
<i>ratio</i> , <i>rationis</i> , <i>a reason, plan</i> , f.	<i>simul</i> , <i>at the same time</i> .
<i>reditiō</i> , <i>reditiōnis</i> , <i>a return</i> , f.	<i>tandem</i> , <i>at length</i> .
<i>salūs</i> , <i>salūtis</i> , <i>safety</i> , f.	

649. Study and learn these words. Practise the declensions of the nouns and adjectives. Compare the adverbs.

650. WORD STUDY.—Explain these English derivatives:

rotary	radius	summit	prize	sententious
corroborate	tacit	robust	eradicate	savage
pungent	salubrious	ray	sum	depreciate
senile	rusticate	radical	salutary	parietal
rotund	irrational	radiator	meridian	radiance

651. Compound Verbs of the Third Conjugation

The Capiō, Quatiō, Rapiō Groups

capiō, *capere*, *cēpī*, *captus*, *to take, capture*

<i>accipiō</i> (3) <i>receive, accept</i>	<i>excipiō</i> (3) <i>receive, take up</i>	<i>praecipiō</i> (3) <i>advise, warn</i>
<i>recipiō</i> (3) <i>receive, betake oneself</i>	<i>suscipiō</i> (3) <i>undertake</i>	<i>occupō</i> (1) <i>seize, capture</i>

Note that *capiō* becomes *-cipiō* in compound verbs.

quatiō, *quaterere*, *quassī*, *quassus*, *to shake*

<i>concutiō</i> (3) <i>shake up, shatter</i>	<i>excutiō</i> (3) <i>shake off</i>	<i>percutiō</i> (3) <i>smite</i>	<i>recutiō</i> (3) <i>shake</i>
---	--	-------------------------------------	------------------------------------

Note that *quatiō* becomes *-cutiō* in compounds.

rapiō, *rapere*, *rapuī*, *raptus*, *to snatch up*

<i>corripiō</i> (3) <i>snatch up, press on</i>	<i>dīripiō</i> (3) <i>pull apart, plunder</i>	<i>ēripiō</i> (3) <i>snatch away, save</i>	<i>ūsūrpō</i> (1) <i>seize for use, use</i>
---	--	---	--

Note that *rapiō* becomes *-ripiō* in compounds.

* *Senex* is irregularly declined—Sing., *senex*, *senis*, *senī*, *senem*, *senex*, *senē*; Pl., *senēs*, *senum*, *senibus*, *senēs*, *senibus*.

652. Translate: 1. Cuique carrō quattuor rotae erant. 2. Pīlīs missīs, decem mīlia ex legiōnibus novīs salūtem in fugā petēbant. 3. Reliquum spatium quod nōn amplius pedum sēscentōrum est continet mōns māgnā altitūdine, ita ut rādīcēs montis ex utrāque parte rīpās flūminis contingant. 4. Illō punctū temporis mīrābile visū arbor, rōbore frāctō, ruīnā māgnā cecidit. 5. Id māximē eā ratiōne fēcit quod hostēs agrōs Gallōrum occupāverant. 6. Tandem spē domum reditiōnis sublātā, senēs rūsticī propter scelera in silvās dēnsās sē recēpērunt. 7. Simul quisque tacitus urbem sēparātīm relīquit et nē caperētur sē eripuit. 8. Illum quī Galbam pīlō percussit hostēs saevī scūtīs prōtexērunt. 9. Nē hanc rem suscipiāmus. 10. Gallī celeriter ex cōnsuetūdine suā, aciē factā, impetūs pīlōrum excipiēbant.

653. 1. The savage lion betook himself to the mountains. 2. The wall of the house fell with a heavy crash. 3. Finally a price was set by the old man. 4. Each wheel has twelve spokes. 5. How great and of what sort were the slave's crimes?

654. Study these derivatives from the verbs above.

accept	acceptable	principle	repercussion	rapacious
captious	receptacle	inception	recipient	exceptionable
susceptible	preceptor	receipt	percussion	precept

655. Compound Verbs of the Third Conjugation

The Faciō, Iaciō, and Speciō Groups

faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, to make, do

cōnficiō (3)	dēficiō (3)	interficiō (3)
accomplish, complete	fail, give out	kill, do to death
praefficiō (3)	satisfaciō (3)	reficiō (3)
put at head of, put in command (dat.)	appease, satisfy (dat.)	make over, repair

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus, to throw, hurl

coniciō (3)	dēiciō (3)	prōiciō (3)
hurl, throw	throw down, cast down	hurl forward, abandon
reiciō (3)	iacō (1)	
throw, hurl back	throw, toss	

THE INTERJECTION. NUMERALS

speciō, specere, spēxī, spectus, to look

circumspiciō (3) <i>look around, look over</i>	cōnspiciō (3) <i>catch sight of, behold</i>	dēspiciō (3) <i>look down on, despise</i>
perspiciō (3) <i>see through, see clearly,</i> <i>understand</i>	suspiciō (3) <i>look under, suspect</i>	expectō (1) <i>look for, await</i>

Learn these compound verbs.

656. Translate: 1. *Militēs, este fortēs, pīla conicite, dēicite hōs saevōs virōs dē mūrō!* 2. *Ad hās rēs cōficiendās trīduum sūmāmus.* 3. *In Galliā legiōnēs Caesaris milia mīlitum interfēcērunt.* 4. *Ob eās causās Galbam lēgātum eī mūnitiōnī quam fēcērat praefēcit.* 5. *Item sī hostēs Rōmānīs satisfaciant Caesar cum eīs pācem faciat.* 6. *Cum rēs frūmentāria eōs dēficeret, conciliō convocātō quisque domum contendit.* 7. *Tēla missa excipiant sēque ex labōre reficiant.* 8. *Cum hōs lēgātōs in castrīs cōspēxisset, sē in fugam dedit.* 9. *Cum ūnus pāgus facile victus sit, nē Caesar ob eam rem aut victōriam suae māgnopere virtūtī tribuat aut hostēs dēspiciat.* 10. *Sī omnēs idem sentient et probābunt nūntium expectent.*

657. 1. When the grain supply failed all hope of returning home was taken away. 2. In a space of three days the war with the slaves was completed. 3. What leader slew those three brave centurions? 4. The leader whom we put in command of the fortification was despised by the enemy. 5. The old men were forced to leave the wall.

658. Study these derivatives. Add any others you know. Use them in sentences of your own.

affection	refectory	respectable	project	conjecture
adjective	defeat	sufficient	proficient	efficacious
circumspect	acceptance	subject	perspective	prefect
despise	faction	counterfeit	object	defect
inspector	aspect	affect	projection	suspicion
perfect	inject	abject	expectation	disjunction
surfeit	species	infection	facilitate	confectionery

SOME TOOLS USED BY THE ROMANS

Almost any sort of a workman at Rome was called a **Smith (faber)**. To distinguish the individual trade the name of the material with which the man worked was added. With some exceptions the same tools were used at Rome which are used now universally. The hammer (**malleus**) and anvil (**incus**), axe (**secūris**), tongs (**forceps**), bellows (**follis**), and adze (**ascia**) of to-day were used two thousand years ago. Other implements, as the saw (**serra**), file (**lima**), plane (**runcina**), chisel (**scalprum**), mallet (**malleolus**), lathe (**tornus**), and boring instruments (**terebrae**), were common. Among instruments for ensuring accuracy were the compasses (**circinus**) and square (**norma**). For the spirit level the **libella** was used. This consisted of three pieces of wood forming an A with the exact center of the cross-bar marked. A string with a plummet attached hung from the apex so that the plummet would touch the central mark when the legs rested on a level surface. All the simple mechanical powers were used, as the lever (**vectis**), the inclined plane, and the pulley (**trochlea**). There was also an instrument like a derrick for lifting heavy weights by means of a windlass. As Roman buildings were rarely of wood there was little employment for the carpenter. Carpenters were mostly concerned with the making of ships and wagons (**carpenta**), from which word comes the name. The mason was more important than the carpenter, for stone and cement were universally employed in building. The mason's trowel was called **trulla**. The use of cement in building construction

was the greatest contribution of the Romans to the art of building. The cement (**caementum**) manufactured by the Romans was much stronger than the cement we use to-day. Many of the cement constructions of the Romans have lasted in first-rate shape to the present day. Even now Roman cement can hardly be broken up by modern picks.

**XLIII. THE VERB. DEPONENTS. SEMI-DEPONENTS.
COMPOUND VERBS OF THE FOURTH
CONJUGATION**

659. In the work so far you have met with regular verbs only, **sum** excepted. Before we pass to verbs which are *irregular* in the majority of their forms, certain verbs must be considered which are regular in forms, but irregular in translation. These verbs are called **Deponents**, from **dēpōnere**, *to cast aside*. They have cast aside all the forms of the **active** voice (except one or two) but retain their **passive** voices in full. *The passive forms of Deponent verbs have active meanings.* It is a little difficult at first to get into the habit of translating passive forms as if they were active. The forms in themselves do not cause trouble, for learning the forms of a deponent verb is like learning the passive voice of a regular verb alone. There are deponent verbs in all the four conjugations.

660. Examples of Deponent verbs:

First conjugation, **cōnor, cōnāri, cōnātus sum, to try.**
 Second conjugation, **vereor, verērī, veritus sum, to fear.**
 Third conjugation, **sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, to follow.**
 " " **patior, patī, passus sum, to bear, endure.**
 Fourth conjugation, **potior, potīrī, potītus sum, to seize.**

661. Learn the conjugation of cōnor and vereor in Para-

graph 835. Notice especially these forms of the active voice which are included in the conjugation of deponent verbs:

1. The **future infinitive**, as **cōnātūrus, -a, -um, esse**.

The Latins did not like the form of the future infinitive passive because it was a little unwieldy and bungling. This infinitive form is often lacking even among the regular verbs. Whenever possible the Latins avoided it, and in deponent verbs they easily replaced it with the **future active infinitive**.

2. The **present and future participles** ; **cōnāns, cōnātūrus**.

As the passive voice of the ordinary verb showed only the perfect participle, the Latins, in order to complete the participles of Deponent verbs, added these two participles from the active voice. Thus the active present participle (as **cōnāns**) and the future participle (as **cōnātūrus**) are included in deponent verbs, each retaining its *active* meanings. Be careful *never* to translate the perfect participle of a deponent verb with a passive meaning. **Cōnātus** means *having attempted*, not *having been attempted*. This is perhaps the most common error in the use of the Deponent verbs.

662. Some common **deponent** verbs of the **first** and **second** conjugations are:

FIRST CONJUGATION

arbitror,	arbitrārī,	arbitrātus sum,	<i>to think.</i>
cohortor,	cohortārī,	cohortātus sum,	<i>to exhort, encourage.</i>
hortor,	hortārī,	hortātus sum,	<i>to urge.</i>
mīror,	mīrārī,	mīrātus sum,	<i>to admire.</i>
moror,	morārī,	morātus sum,	<i>to delay.</i>
tēstor,	tēstārī,	tēstātus sum,	<i>to be a witness.</i>
populor,	populārī,	populātus sum,	<i>to devastate.</i>
vagor,	vagārī,	vagātus sum,	<i>to wander.</i>

THE VERB. DEPONENTS

SECOND CONJUGATION

fateor,	fatērī,	fassus sum,	<i>to say, admit.</i>
polliceor,	pollicērī,	pollicitus sum,	<i>to promise.</i>
intueor,	intuērī,	intuitus sum,	<i>to gaze at.</i>

663. Translate: 1. Caesar, equīs remōtīs ut spem fugae tolleret, suōs cohortātus proelium commīsīt. 2. Viātōrēsne altitūdinem montis et lātītūdinem flūminis mīrābantur? 3. Servī fugitīvī quattuor diēs in illīs finibus morātī ad sociōs suōs sē recēpērunt. 4. Ōrātiōne habitā, Cicerō deōs īmmortālēs tēstātus est. 5. Quī nostrās urbēs populābantur? 6. Ea quae pollicēmur mox faciēmus. 7. Ūnus ex omnibus nihil eārum rērum faciēbat sed trīstis, capite dēmissō, terram intuēbātur. 8. Meōs centuriōnēs cotidiē cohortārī cōnsuēscō. 9. Manibus impetū flūminis impeditīs, mediā in aquā morārī incēpērunt. 10. Quis dōna māxima clientibus pollicēbātur?

664. 1. Marvel at the works of poets. 2. Those leaders, having devastated my fatherland, killed my son. 3. Let the citizens refrain from praising the man who promises Caesar a crown. 4. We delayed one day to finish the business. 5. Gaze upon the beautiful moon.

665. WORD STUDY.—Study these English derivatives:

arbitrate	intestate	confess	vagabond	exhortation
depopulate	professor	protest	admire	vagrant

666.

stella, -ae, *a star, f.*
tuba, -ae, *a trumpet, f.*
toga, -ae, *the toga, a garment, f.*
sonus, -ī, *a sound, m.*
respōsum, -ī, *reply, n.*
studium, -ī, *a pursuit, study, n.*
solum, -ī, *the ground, n.*
servitus, servitūtis, *slavery, f.*
socer, socerī, *a father in law, m.*
sanguis, sanguinis, *blood, m.*
scriptor, scriptōris, *a writer, m.*
sors, sortis, *a lot, f.*

tēstis, tēstis, *a witness, m.*
timor, timōris, *fear, m.*
timidus, -a, -um, *timid.*
urbānus, -a, -um, *belonging to the city.*
validus, -a, -um, *strong, vigorous.*
vāstus, -a, -um, *empty, vast.*
vērus, -a, -um, *true.*
ūltrā, *beyond.*
ūnā, *together with (with cum).*
vix, *scarcely.*
undique, *on all sides.*

APPLIED LATIN

667. Study and learn these words. Practise the declensions of nouns and adjectives. Compare the adverbs.

668. WORD STUDY.—Explain these derivatives. Use them in sentences of your own.

Stella	constellation	stellar	verisimilar	person
study	ultramarine	consonant	responsive	urban
convalescence	valid	testament	invalid	student
timid	suburb	sort	urbane	sangfroid
sonorous	intimidate	ulterior	testify	testimony
veracity	timorous	verify	sole (noun)	servitude
attest	sound	studious	sanguinary	avail

669. The commonest **third conjugation deponents** are:

adgredior,	adgredī,	adgressus sum,	<i>to attack.</i>
morior,	mori,	mortuus sum,	<i>to die.</i>
nāscor,	nāscī,	nātus sum,	<i>to be born.</i>
lābor,	lābī,	lapsus sum,	<i>to slip.</i>
loquor,	loquī,	locūtus sum,	<i>to speak.</i>
oblivīscor,	oblivīscī,	oblītus sum,	<i>to forget.</i>
proficīscor,	proficīscī,	profectus sum,	<i>to set out.</i>
queror,	querī,	questus sum,	<i>to complain.</i>
ulcīscor,	ulcīscī,	ultus sum,	<i>to take vengeance on.</i>
ūtor,	ūtī,	ūsus sum,	<i>to use, enjoy.</i>

670. Learn the conjugation of the third conjugation deponent verb **sequor**, in Paragraph 835.

671. Translate: 1. Nōnnumquam stella ardēns ex caelō in ōceanum lābitur. 2. Omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda; sīgnum tubā dandum, ab opere mīlitēs revocandī, aciēs instruenda est. 3. Cīvis quī togam gessit, locō nōbili nātus est. 4. Ūnā cum socerō meō Rōmā Athēnās ad studium dicendī incipiendum profectus sum. 5. Poēta vēra deī respōnsa male nārrābat. 6. Sine vestrō sanguine hostēs superāvi. 7. Virī liberī servitūtēm et commūtatiōnem fortūnae semper queruntur. 8. Nōs, tēstēs huius sceleris, vix praetōrem urbānum retinēbāmus. 9. Scriptōrēs Rōmānī antiquī sortibus vix crēdidērunt. 10. Quā in rē

THE VERB. DEPONENTS

Caesar et publicās et privātās iniuriās ultus est, quod haec nātiō patrem eius socerī interfēcerat.

672. 1. Our army attacked the enemy without fear. 2. Timid wayfarers never set out to the lands beyond the mountains. 3. Concerning the responses of the god we spoke gladly. 4. Were you born in noble station? 5. On the third day many of the captives died, for few were accustomed to endure slavery.

673. WORD STUDY.—Explain these derivatives. Use them in sentences of your own.

aggressive	oblivion	querulous	native	patient
moribund	egress	nation	digress	nascent
collapse	natural	interlocutor	ingress	use
innate	passive	relapse	utensil	congress
progress	renaissance	mortuary	elocution	impassive

674. The commonest **fourth conjugation deponents** are:

experior,	experī,	expertus sum,	<i>to test, try.</i>
mentior,	mentirī,	mentitus sum,	<i>to lie.</i>
mētor,	mētirī,	mēnsus sum,	<i>to measure.</i>
molior,	molirī,	molitus sum,	<i>to build, attempt.</i>
orior,	orirī,	ortus sum,	<i>to arise, begin.</i>
partior,	partirī,	partitus sum,	<i>to divide.</i>

675. Learn the conjugation of the fourth conjugation deponent verb **potior**, in Paragraph 835.

676. Translate: 1. Nisi quid auxili in Caesare populōque Rōmānō erit, nōs quoque ūnā cum Gallīs ēventum fortūnae experiēmur. 2. Puerī bonī numquam mentiuntur. 3. Quōdam diē Caesar militibus frūmentum mensus erat. 4. Haec pars Galliae ad orientem sōlem pertinet. 5. Priusquam plūrēs civitātēs inter sē conjungerent Caesar exercitum ad bellum gerendum partitus est.

677. 1. They fortified their town that they might not experience the same bad fortune. 2. When Caesar had measured out the grain for the soldiers he encouraged each

APPLIED LATIN

man separately. 3. When the sun had risen, light filled the whole temple. 4. Divide the army and conquer the enemy without delay. 5. We have cast you from the city because you were attempting evil deeds.

Semi-deponents

678. In the preceding paragraphs you met with the most common **deponent** verbs of the four conjugations. There are beside these a few which are called **Semi-deponents**, because some of their forms are from the **active** voice and some **passive**. The commonest semi-deponents are:

audeō,	audēre,	ausus sum,	<i>to dare (Complem. Infin.).</i>
cōfidō,	cōfidere,	cōnfisus sum,	<i>to trust firmly (Dat. of Persons, Abl. of Things).</i>
diffidō,	diffidere,	diffisus sum,	<i>to distrust (Abl. of Things).</i>
gaudeō,	gaudēre,	gāvisus sum,	<i>to rejoice (Abl. of Cause).</i>
soleō,	solēre,	solitus sum,	<i>to be accustomed (Complem. Infin.).</i>

679. Translate: 1. Adventum leōnis virgō timida exspectāre ausa est. 2. Dux noster hunc rēgem rēbus suis diffidentem ērēxit. 3. Gaudent quod occāsiō suī purgandī data est. 4. Sonum tubārum et equōrum currentium audire solēbant. 5. Quis validus sine precibus morī audet?

680. 1. Dare to tell a true story without shame. 2. Men who trust their own ability overcome many evils. 3. Before a fight the Romans were wont to draw up their line of battle. 4. Did you rejoice when the tricky leader gave the crown to Caesar? 5. Some men dare to attack any savage animal.

681. WORD STUDY.—Explain these derivatives; use them in sentences of your own:

experience	bipartite	rejoice	passion	orient
partition	audacity	compassion	mensuration	confidence
demolish	fidelity	mete	diffident	originate
perfidy	order	gay	compatible	insolent

682. Compound Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation

The Saliō, Sentiō, and Veniō Groups

saliō, salīre, ———, ———, *to leap*

dēsiliō (4) <i>leap down</i>	resiliō (4) <i>leap back</i>	saltō (1) <i>dance</i>	īnsultō (1) <i>leap upon</i>	resultō (1) <i>leap back</i>
---------------------------------	---------------------------------	---------------------------	---------------------------------	---------------------------------

sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *to perceive*

adsentiō (4) <i>agree, assent</i>	cōnsentiō (4) <i>think with, agree</i>	dissentiō (4) <i>feel different, disagree</i>
	praesentiō (4) <i>feel before, look before</i>	

veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, *to come*

adveniō (4) <i>come to, approach</i>	conveniō (4) <i>come together, assemble</i>	circumveniō (4) <i>come around, surround</i>
ēveniō (4) <i>come out, happen</i>	inveniō (4) <i>come upon, find (by chance)</i>	perveniō (4) <i>come through, arrive, reach</i>
	prōveniō (4) <i>come forth, turn out (well, ill)</i>	

683. Translate: 1. Dēsilitē, milites! Nē ducem hostibus prōdāmus. 2. Fēminae saltābant et aedificium cantibus complēbant. 3. Conciliō convocātō, principēs quī undique convēnerant cum lēgātīs Rōmānīs cōnsēnsērunt. 4. Quem exitum habuit cōsilium Galbae et eōrum quī dissentīebant? 5. Hostēs nostrōs militēs ā latere apertō adgressī circumvenīre cōnābantur. 6. Ea rēs legiōnī felicitēr ēveniat. 7. Eō in locō nāvēs XXVIII īnstrūctās invēnit. 8. Haec pars sociōrum militibus legiōnis nōnae et decimae forte obvēnerat. 9. Cum id nūntiātum esset, lēgātus iter per prōvinciam celerrimē fēcit et Rōmam pervēnit. 10. Vēnī Caesarem laudātum nōn sepultum.

684. 1. Let us agree with these men who have established the custom. 2. We have with us the soldiers who have lately assembled from the province. 3. By chance Caesar met Galba together with twelve cohorts. 4. We found the town situated near the banks of the river. 5. The general was killed while he was coming to his son.

APPLIED LATIN

685. WORD STUDY.—Explain these English derivatives. Use them in sentences of your own:

desultory	adventitious	exult	inventory	assent
assailant	dissent	provenience	insult	presentiment
convent	prevention	sensitive	salient	convention
intervention	advent	consensus	convenient	contravene
dissenter	resilient	circumvent	revenue	sally
sense	event	convene	consent	assault
eventual	avenue	result	sentence	invention

SKILLED WORKMEN AMONG THE ROMANS

The **Architects** (*architectī*) were an important group of workmen. As their (Greek) name implies, they were usually **Greeks**, not Romans. Assisting the architects were the **surveyors** (*fīnītōrēs*) who, besides the work usually done by surveyors, also laid out the lands for colonists and the camps for armies.

The Romans found a great deal of employment for the **Painter** (*pīctor*). As there was not much furniture, few tapestries, and no framed pictures in the ordinary house, the Romans had to depend for ornamentation on pictures painted on the walls. Ordinary rooms were whitewashed by a workman called a **dealbātor** (*albus*, *white*). He used a trowel (*trulla*) and worked on a scaffold (*machina*). Show rooms were decorated by a real artist (*pīctor parietārius*, *pariēs*, *an interior wall*). The painter of wall decorations used a **pencillus** or brush. The walls of rooms often presented scenes from outdoor life, as landscapes, gardens, harbors, fountains, etc.

The **Potter** was in great demand at Rome and throughout the ancient world as well. So extensive was the use of pot-

THE VERB. IRREGULAR

tery that the manufacture of earthenware was carried on at any large estate where the proper kind of clay (**argilla**) could be found. The potter (**figilus**) made vessels both by hand and with the potter's wheel (**rota figulāris**). Clay vessels, after being turned on the wheel, were baked in an oven (**fornax, furnace**).

The **Goldsmiths** and **Silversmiths** knew about the same processes then as to-day. Works of gold and silver were very highly prized. **Gem cutters** were very skilful, as the ancient cameos we now possess easily show. **Makers of perfumery** and **ointments** carried on a thriving trade. Their products were sent to all parts of the world in dainty little vases of many shapes. Probably the "*alabaster jar of precious ointment*" was manufactured by one of the expert perfumers of that day.

XLIV. THE VERB. IRREGULAR

Volō, Nōlō, Mālō. Eō, Ferō, Fiō. Compounds of Sum

686. There are in all languages verbs whose forms are **irregular**. Many are only slightly irregular, as **dō, dare, dedī, datus, to give**. This verb belongs to the *first* conjugation, except the perfect **dedī**, which is really a *third* conjugation form. **Maneō** is a second conjugation verb, except the perfect **mānsī**, which belongs to the third conjugation.

Among the Latin verbs that are specially irregular are those mentioned at the head of this paragraph. These verbs, as their meaning will show you, are very common, not only in Latin but in all other languages. Words that are

especially common have a tendency to become irregular. Think for a moment of the English verb *to be*. It has forms derived from four different verbs, *be, is, am, was*.

687. The **principal parts** of *volō, nōlō, mālō*, are:

volō,	velle,	voluī,	——,	<i>to wish.</i>
nōlō,	nōlle,	nōluī,	——,	<i>to be unwilling.</i>
mālō,	mālle,	māluī,	——,	<i>to prefer.</i>

Nōlō and **mālō** are compounds of **volō**. **Nōlō** equals **nōn volō**, *I do not wish*; **mālō** equals **magis, more, volō**, *I wish more, I prefer*.

All three verbs are *similar* in conjugation. In **nōlō** and **mālō** the presence of **nōn** and **magis** causes some irregularities not found in **volō** itself.

688. The conjugation of **volō** is—

INDICATIVE

Pres. volō, vīs, vult, volumus, vultis, volunt.

Imp. volēbam, volēbās, etc.

Fut. volam, volēs, etc.

Perf. voluī, voluistī, etc.

Plup. volueram, voluerās, etc.

Futp. voluerō, volueris, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres. velim, velīs, velit, velimus, velītis, velint.

Imp. vellem, vellēs, vellet, vellēmus, vellētis, vellent.

Perf. voluerim, volueris, etc.

Plup. voluissem, voluissēs, etc.

INFINITIVE

Pres. velle,

Perf. voluisse.

PARTICIPLE

Pres. volēns, -ntis.

689. Learn the conjugations of **nōlō** and **mālō** in Paragraph 833. Note also Paragraphs 544-546.

690. For practice translate these forms: 1. Vīs, mālīs, nōllet, voluistī, nōlet. 2. Nōlle, volentēs, māvult, nōn vīs, vellēmus, nōlī. 3. Voluisse, māllement, nōlumus, mālle, voluissent.

SOME IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

691. Translate: 1. Postrīdiē Caesar priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre et fugā reciperent proelium committere voluit. 2. Visne mē venīre? 3. In libertāte permanēre mālumus quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem patī. 4. Quā dē causā cīvēs ōrātiōnēs Cicerōnis mālēbant? 5. Sī nōs ā flūmine discēdere nōlīmus, hostēs celeriter fugiant. 6. Nōlite servum pūnīre sine causā vērā. 7. Num ille omnēs esse liberōs volēbat? 8. Mālimus pūgnāre potius quam fugere. 9. Domī manēre māluissem nisi cōsul mē vocāvisset. 10. Utinam nē fēminae lūdōs Rōmānōrum spectāre voluissent.

692. 1. Those who were willing to make the journey assembled from all sides. 2. Who does not prefer honor rather than gold? 3. I shall be unwilling to attack our allies. 4. Don't write the letter. 5. Let us be willing to try all the fortunes of war.

SOME IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

693. Most of the adjectives which you have met up to the present time have been regular in inflection and comparison. There are a few adjectives, **irregular in comparison**, which are not only very common in Latin, but have a host of derivatives in English.

The most important of these are:

<i>exterus, outward,</i>	<i>exterior, outer,</i>	<i>extrēmus (extimus), farthest.</i>
<i>īferus, below,</i>	<i>inferior, lower,</i>	<i>īnīmus (īmus), lowest.</i>
<i>posterus, following,</i>	<i>posterior, later,</i>	<i>postrēmus (postumus), last.</i>
<i>superus, above,</i>	<i>superior, higher,</i>	<i>suprēmus (summus), highest.</i>
<i>(in, in),</i>	<i>interior, inner,</i>	<i>intīmus, inmost.</i>
<i>(prō, before),</i>	<i>prior, earlier,</i>	<i>prīmus, first.</i>
<i>(prope, near),</i>	<i>propior, nearer,</i>	<i>proxīmus, nearest.</i>
<i>(ūltrā, beyond),</i>	<i>ūltior, further,</i>	<i>ūltīmus, farthest.</i>

Note that in the last four the missing positive degree is supplied by means of a preposition or an adverb.

APPLIED LATIN

694. Translate: 1. *Hī finēs ad inferiōrem partem flūminis pertinent.* 2. *Ab eō locō collis nāscēbātur, passūs circiter ducentōs infimus apertus, ab superiōre parte silvestris.* 3. *Postērō diē castra ex eō locō summō mōta sunt.* 4. *Locīs superiōribus occupātis, itinere exercitum nostrum prohibēre cōnābantur.* 5. *Lēgātus aestāte missus est quī duās legiōnēs novās in interiōrem Galliam dēdūceret.* 6. *Cum quisque sibi primum itineris locum peteret profectiō similis fugae erat.* 7. *Primā lūce, clāmōre auditō, omnēs fūgērunt.* 8. *Proximā nocte obsidēs convenīre iūssit.* 9. *In ūteriōrem Galliam properēmus ad haec cōficienda.* 10. *Num exercitum in ūltimās terrās mittēmus?*

695. WORD STUDY.—Explain these English derivatives:

infernal	superior	ultimo	primordial	exterior
inferiority	intimacy	primate	ultimatum	posterior
prior	supernal	external	proximity	prime
posthumous	interne	supreme	ulterior	extremity

696.

<i>unda, -ae, a wave, f.</i>	<i>vesper, vesp̄eris, evening, m.</i>
<i>saxum, -ī, a rock, n.</i>	<i>voluntās, voluntātis, will, wish, f.</i>
<i>subsidium, -ī, aid, n.</i>	<i>vulnus, vulneris, a wound, n.</i>
<i>suffrāgium, -ī, a ballot, n.</i>	<i>vēr, vēris, the spring, n.</i>
<i>trīdūum, -ī, three days' time, n.</i>	<i>vērītās, vērītātis, the truth, f.</i>
<i>vadum, -ī, a ford, n.</i>	<i>victor, victōris, a victor, m.</i>
<i>verbum, -ī, a word, n.</i>	<i>vīs (vis), force, pl., strength, f.*</i>
<i>vinculum, -ī, a bond, chain, n.</i>	<i>vetus, veteris, old.</i>
<i>uxor, uxōris, a wife, f.</i>	

Learn these words. Practise the declensions.

697. WORD STUDY.—Explain these English derivatives:

inundate	veracious	victorious	victory	vim
verbatim	vulnerable	involuntary	verbal	veracity
vespers	volition	suffragette	adverb	voluntary
invulnerable	verity	suffrage	volunteer	verdant
verb	undulate	redound	inveterate	subsidiary

* The declension of *vīs* is: Singular, *vīs*, (*vīs*) —, *vim*, *vīs*, *vī*; Plural, *vīrēs*, *vīrium*, *vīribus*, *vīrēs*, *vīrēs*, *vīribus*.

THE VERB. IRREGULAR

Eō, Ferō, Fiō

698. The principal parts of these irregular verbs are:

Eō, ire, ii (ivī), itum, *to go.*

Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *to bear, carry.*

Fiō, fierī, factus sum, *to become, happen.*

Of these verbs the last two are quite irregular. As you can see from the principal parts, the verb **ferō** is apparently composed of the forms of three distinct verbs. In this it is like the verb *to be* in English and **Sum** in Latin, which are made up of four separate verbs.

Fiō is the verb which, as has been already mentioned (Paragraph 357), the Latins used in place of some tenses of the passive of the verb **faciō**, *to do, make*.

699. Learn the conjugations of these three verbs in Paragraphs 836-7-8.

700. For practice identify the following forms:

1. Īs, fers, fīs, ferās, eās, fiās. 2. Iēns, ferēns, fierī, ibunt, ferri, lātūrus esse. 3. Fiēt, fiat, eundō, ferris, fertis, fierent.

701. Translate: 1. Illī vī coāctī nōs per suōs finēs ire passī sunt. 2. Tum saxa māgnī ponderis ad mūrum lāta sunt. 3. Aciēs tertia ab imperātōre nostrīs* subsidiō* missa erat. 4. Equitātus sociōrum hōc in proeliō impedimentō* hostibus* erat. 5. Ferte māgnam cōpiam frūmentī quae auxiliō* duci* sit. 6. Fīat iūstitia. 7. Ad vesperum centuriō vulneribus cōfectus interfectus est. 8. Eāmus ad oppidum ut praesidiō* oppidānīs* sīmus. 9. Eī quī trāns vada ierant suīs auxilium ferre ausī sunt. 10. Poēta veterem calamitātem populī Rōmānī et prīstinam virtūtem Gallōrum nārrābat.

*In sentences 3, 4, 5, and 8 there are instances of **two datives** used with the verb **sum**. These two datives com-

pose the **Double Dative** construction. One dative is a dative of indirect object (*nostris*, 3; *hostibus*, 4; *ducī*, 5; *oppidānīs*, 8); the other dative indicates the purpose for which something serves (*subsidiō*, 3; *impedimentō*, 4; *auxiliō*, 5; *praesidiō*, 8). Translate sentence 3, *were for an aid to our men*.

702. RULE.—Double Dative.—*Two datives are often used with sum in Latin, one (of reference) indicating the person affected, the other (of purpose) showing that for which a thing serves.*

703. 1. The cavalry was sent as an aid to the army. **2.** Who hastened to go to the bridge? **3.** The shields were a hindrance to the soldiers while fighting in the waves. **4.** The huge rocks were a fortification for the camp. **5.** In the spring beautiful flowers bloom.

704. The Eō and Ferō Groups

eō, ire, iī, (ivī), itum, to go

adeō <i>go to, visit</i>	exeō <i>go out</i>	ineō <i>go into</i>	pereō <i>perish, be lost</i>	trānseō <i>go across</i>
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, to bear, carry				
adferō <i>bring to, bring news</i>	cōnferō <i>bring together, collect, compare</i>		differō <i>bear apart, differ, postpone</i>	
efferō <i>bear out</i>	inferō <i>bear against, wage</i>		offerō <i>bring before, offer</i>	
perferō <i>bear through, endure, announce</i>	praeferō <i>bear before, prefer</i>		prōferō <i>bring forward, extend</i>	
referō <i>bear back, report</i>		trānsferō <i>carry over, transfer</i>		

For principal parts of **ferō** compounds consult vocabulary.

705. Translate: **1.** *Neque enim quisquam praeter mercatōrēs illās urbēs adiit, neque illī ipsī quicquam praeter ōram oceanī vidērunt.* **2.** *Facile erit, cum virtūte omnibus*

praestēmus, dē finibus nostrīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīre.
 3. Vēre initō, cum multī periissent, tamen hostēs pontem
 in prōvinciam nostram trānsire cōnātī sunt. 4. Cum esset
 Caesar in ūteriōre Galliā, crēbrae ad eum epistulae afferē-
 bantur. 5. Cōpia māxima frūmentī in oppidum sine
 Caesaris voluntāte cōnfertur. 6. Hī omnēs linguā, institūtīs,
 lēgibus, inter sē differunt. 7. Nōne quisque trium mēnsium
 cibum domō efferet? 8. Cum trīduī viam prōcessisset cum
 omnibus cōpiīs ad urbem occupandam contendit. 9.
 Altitūdō flūminis erat circiter trium pedum. 10. Refer hās
 rēs ad senātum.

706. 1. After they had proceeded a journey of five days,
 they saw the enemy drawn up on the hills. 2. Carry away
 from home food for (of) two months. 3. Though the depth
 of the river was about (of) eight feet, the knights crossed
 without delay. 4. I will report these affairs to the senate.
 5. If all nations differ in laws and customs there is no com-
 mon civilization.

707. WORD STUDY.—Explain these English derivatives.
 Use them in sentences of your own:

initial	conference	ambition	proffer	confer
circuit	preference	translation	initiation	dilate
transference	relation	deference	offertory	transient
collation	transitory	exit	elated	inference
different	transit	reference	obituary	defer

COMPOUNDS OF SUM

708. In English the verb *to be* is very common. It is used
 in almost all relations and can be associated with almost any
 sort of idea. For instance, we can say *I am away from town*;
I was present at the meeting; *my equipment is lacking with*
respect to a top coat; *I am able to write and to read*. In such
 statements the English verb is followed by a group of words

introduced by a preposition. In Latin the preposition is often attached to the verb **Sum**, making a **Compound Verb**.

The **Important Compounds of Sum** are:

absum,	abesse,	āfuī,	<i>to be away, absent (ā (ab) with abl.).</i>
adsum,	adesse,	adfui,	<i>to be present (dat.).</i>
dēsum,	deesse,	dēfui,	<i>to be lacking (dat.).</i>
intersum,	interesse,	interfui,	<i>to be between, present (dat.).</i>
praesum,	praesse,	praefui,	<i>to be in charge of, be head of (dat.).</i>
possum,	posse,	potui,	<i>to be able (complem. infin.).</i>
supersum,	superesse,	superfui,	<i>to be left, survive (dat.).</i>

Most of these verbs are conjugated like the verb **sum** without irregular forms. **Possum**, *to be able*, a compound of **potis**, **pote**, an adjective meaning *able*, has some irregular forms brought about by the difficulty in combining **potis** with the forms of **sum**. Compare **pot-fui**, **potui**, perfect of **possum**.

709. Learn the conjugation of **possum** in Paragraph 837.

710. For practice name and translate the following forms:

1. Potes, supersunt, praeest, deesse, poterit.
2. Interest, adsit, possimus, interfuit, potuerit.
3. Praefueramus, potuisse, aberunt, poterat.

711. Translate: 1. Hārum omnium gentium fortissimae sunt ūltimae quod ā cultū et hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt. 2. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā, omnēs quī aderant precibus trīstissimīs auxilium ā Caesare petere cōnābantur. 3. Rēbus in adversīs fortūna etiam ducī optimō nōnnumquam deest. 4. Illa pars hostium quae flūmen oppidī capiendī causā trānsierat domum redire nōn potuit. 5. Utinam illī prīncipēs quī summō magistrātui praeerant suōs clientēs rapīnā prohibere potuissent. 6. Quis precibus captīvōrum resistere potest? 7. Proeliō factō, paucī superfuērunt. 8. Nōnne manūs servī fallācis vīculis vincīre potes? 9. Dux barbarus quī nunc oppidō praeest nūntium

EXERCISES IN DERIVATIVES. SUFFIXES

ad Caesarem dē pāce mittere nōn poterit. 10. Ponte in flūmine factō ut reliquās cōpiās sequī posset, Galba exercitum trādūxit.

712. 1. I am able to tell the truth without shame. 2. He made so great a bridge that the whole army was able to cross in one day. 3. Those who were present praised the oration of Cicero. 4. Because those who were in charge of the town were unwilling to close the gates our men were able to break in quickly. 5. Sometimes words fail an orator.

XLV. EXERCISES IN DERIVATIVES. SUFFIXES

713. Your work so far with the derivation of English words from Latin words has been devoted especially to explaining the meanings of words by separating **prefixes** (prepositions) from root words. Before finishing this part of the work you should know something of the various **suffixes** that appear in Latin and later in English and be able to tell what they mean.

Some Common Suffixes

714. A. Many Latin words end in **-tor** (masc.) and **-trix** (fem.), which indicate **agency**. **Victor**, *one who conquers* (masc.); **victrix**, *one who conquers* (fem.); **administrātor**, *one who manages* (masc.); **administrātrix**, *one who manages* (fem.). Similarly, **pāstor**, **rēctor**, **cūrātor**, **executrix**.

B. Many Latin words end in **-men**, which indicates the **thing accomplished**: **lū-men**, *the result of the sun's shining*, **carmen**, *the result of the poet's singing*; **āgmen** **limen**.

C. Many **Abstract** words are formed in Latin by the endings **-tia**, **-tās**, and **-tūdō**, denoting **qualities** and **conditions**.

APPLIED LATIN

amīcitia, friendliness; *cīvītās*, the state; *lātītūdō*, breadth.

D. The **Endings** of many **adjectives** mean **pertaining to** or **connected with**. Examples:

Rōm-ānus	connected	with	<i>Rome</i> , Roman.
milit-āris	"	"	<i>the soldier</i> , military.
fer-tilis	"	"	ferō , to bear, fertile.
eques-ter	"	"	<i>a knight</i> , equestrian.
loqu-āx	"	"	loquor , to speak, full of talk.
fac-ilis	"	"	faciō , to do, easy, do-able.
aur-eus	"	"	aurum , gold, golden.

When trying to make out the meanings of adjectives separate the verb or noun from the suffix and then use the ordinary English adjective which is based on the meaning of the root word, as: **Pūbli-cus** (*populus*, *people*), *public*, *popular*; **frīgi-dus** (*frīgus*, *cold*), *cold*, *frigid*.

715. In English **nouns**, **agency** is indicated by the suffixes **-er** or **-or**; as, carrier, conductor. Abstract nouns have the suffixes **-ness**; as, goodness, fulness: **-ship**; as, apprenticeship; **-hood**, as childhood; and **-dom**, as freedom. **Adjectives** have many suffixes, all meaning **pertaining to**; as *waxen*, *harmful*, *stormy*.

716. WORD STUDY.—Examine the word lists at the end of this book, Topic **LIII**, for words with suffixes. Collect some representative examples of each kind.

QUIZ.—What is a **suffix**? What Latin suffixes denote agency; result of action? Why is *pertaining to* a comprehensive meaning for adjectival suffixes? Can you name any more suffixes common in English nouns or adjectives? Consider **-ist**, **-age**, **-ance**, **-y**, **-ure**, **-ent**, **-ous**.

Pick out the **Latin derivatives** in the following extract:

717. Mr. Attorney-General had to inform the jury that the prisoner before them, though young in years, was old in treasonable practices, which claimed the forfeit of his life. That this correspondence with the public enemy had been continuous. That it was certain the prisoner had been in the habit of passing and repassing between France and England, on secret business of which he could give no honest account. That if it were not in the nature of traitorous ways to thrive, the real wickedness and guilt of his ways might have remained undiscovered. That Providence, however, had put it into the heart of a person who was beyond fear and beyond reproach, to ferret out the nature of the prisoner's schemes and, struck with horror, to disclose them to his Majesty's Chief Secretary of State and most honorable Privy Council. That this patriot would be produced before them. That his position and attitude were on the whole sublime. That he had been the prisoner's friend, but at once in an auspicious and an evil hour detecting his infamy, had resolved to immolate the traitor he could no longer cherish in his bosom on the sacred altar of his country. That, if statues were decreed in Britain, as in ancient Greece and Rome, to public benefactors, this shining citizen would assuredly have had one. That virtue, as had been observed by the poets, was in a manner contagious; more especially the bright virtue known as patriotism. That the lofty example of this immaculate and unimpeachable witness for the crown had communicated itself to the prisoner's servant and had engendered in him a holy determination

to examine his master's table drawers and pockets and secrete his papers.—DICKENS' "Tale of Two Cities."

XLVI. THE SUBJECT. CONSTRUCTIONS THAT REPLACE A NOUN AS SUBJECT. INFINITIVE.

NOUN CLAUSE

718. In the preceding paragraphs of this book you have met with sentences in Latin which have followed the ordinary sentence structure, that is, noun, *subject*, noun, *object*, and *verb* with adverbial modifiers. If in actual speech or writing sentences should follow this form exactly, every sentence would be like every other sentence. Reading or speaking would be *very monotonous*. To guard against this eternal sameness the Latins often used an infinitive or a clause in place of a noun as either the subject or the object of a verb. In the following pages we shall take up some of these variations of the subject and the object.

The Infinitive as Subject, with Sum

719. In Paragraph 572 you learned that the Infinitive is partly a *noun* and partly a *verb*. As a noun the infinitive may be used as the subject of a sentence, especially with the verb *sum*. This is true both in Latin and in English. Examine these English sentences:

1. To see is to believe. 2. To see the sun is pleasant.

In the first sentence *to see* is an infinitive used as the subject of the verb which is a part of the verb *to be*. *To believe* is an infinitive used as a predicate noun. In the second sentence *to see the sun* is the *complete subject* of the verb *is*. In this case the words *the sun* compose the direct object of the

THE SUBJECT

Infinitive. The object of an infinitive stands in the accusative case, unless the verb requires some case other than the accusative for its object.

720. Compose some English sentences in which the infinitive, with and without an object, is used as the subject.

721. Examine these Latin sentences:

1. **Vidēre est crēdere.** *To see is to believe.*

2. **Sōlem vidēre bonum est.** *To see the sun is good.*

From these sentences you see that the infinitive may be used in place of a noun as subject, in Latin as it is in English.

722. RULE.—Infinitive as Subject.—*The Infinitive with or without a subject or object may be used as the subject of a verb, especially the verb sum.*

The Infinitive as Subject of Impersonal Verbs

723. The verb **sum** as used in the preceding Paragraph is an **Impersonal Verb**, but the name *impersonal* is usually restricted to a certain class of verbs which occur **only** in the **third person singular** and always have **neuter** subjects. Such verbs are called impersonal because they have **neuter** (*impersonal*) subjects. The infinitive or a clause, because neuter in gender, is often the subject of such neuter verbs.

724. The following impersonal verbs commonly take the infinitive or a clause as the subject:

licet,	licēre,	licuit (licitum est),	<i>it is permitted (dat.).</i>
oportet,	oportēre,	oportuit,	<i>it is necessary.</i>
decet,	decēre,	deciuit,	<i>it is fitting.</i>
praestat,	praestāre,	praestitit,	<i>it is better.</i>
cōstat,	cōstāre,	cōstitit,	<i>it is agreed.</i>
libet,	libēre,	libuit,	<i>it suits (dat.).</i>
placet,	placēre,	placuit (placitum est),	<i>it is pleasing (dat.).</i>

725. Learn the conjugation of the impersonal verb **licet** given in Paragraph 834.

As you have noted from the conjugation of **licet** these verbs have but one form, the third person singular, of each tense. When these verbs have a subject expressed it is regularly an infinitive either present or perfect.

726. For practice translate the following forms:

Licet, oportēbat, cōstitit, libēre, placuit, praestābit.

A Clause as Subject of Impersonal Verbs

727. The following verbs usually take a clause introduced by **ut, that**, with the subjunctive present or imperfect as their subjects.

additur and **accēdit**, *it is added.*

restat, *it remains.*

fit, *it happens.*

accidit, *it happens.*

contingit, *it happens.*

sequitur, *it follows.*

728. RULE.—The Infinitive or a Clause as Subject.—
Many impersonal verbs take the infinitive or a clause as their subjects.

729. Translate: 1. Eādem nocte accidit ut lūna esset plēna. 2. Nōbīs sine maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere liceat. 3. Caesarem satis frūmentī ad exercitum mittere oportēbit. 4. Patriam amāre omnēs civēs optimōs decet. 5. Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem perferre praestat. 6. Nōbīs ad castra ire libet neque hanc occāsionem negōtī bene gerendī āmittere. 7. Plūrimās nāvēs in illum locum ubi Caesarem primum bellum gestūrum esse cōstābat celeriter coēgērunt. 8. Sequitur ut collēs et flūmina huius terrae tibi mōnstrem. 9. Contigit ut illō diē ā senātū abessem. 10. Quam ob rem factum est ut bellum in Galliā gererētur.

730. 1. It is now possible for me to lead my horse to the

THE OBJECT

bridge. 2. It will be necessary for us to (we must) make peace. 3. On the same day it happened that the sun shone with clear light. 4. It happened that Caesar was at Rome on that day. 5. It is agreed that the enemy will betake themselves home.

TRANSLATION. THE CREATION OF THE WORLD

731. Caelum et terram intrā sex diēs Deus creāvit. Primō diē lūcem fēcit. Secundō diē fēcit firmāmentum, quod caelum vocāvit. Tertiō diē aquās in ūnum locum coēgit et ē terrā plantās et arborēs ēdūxit. Quārtō diē sōlem et lūnam et stellās fēcit. Quīntō diē avēs quae volitant in āēre, et piscēs quī natant in aquīs; sextō diē omnia animalia, postrēmō hominem fēcit; et diē septimō quīēvit.

For unfamiliar words in the translation exercises consult the general vocabulary.

XLVII. THE OBJECT IN ENGLISH EXPRESSED BY THE GENITIVE IN LATIN

732. The regular case of the direct object of a verb is the accusative. This is true both in English and in Latin. In English there are few, if any, exceptions to this rule. In Latin some verbs, which in English govern an accusative as object, may be followed by some other case. In Latin a genitive, dative, or ablative may replace an English accusative.

Latin Verbs that take a Genitive

733. A. Verbs of Memory or Forgetfulness.

meminī,	meminisse,	———,	<i>to keep in mind remember.</i>
oblivīscor,	oblivīsci,	oblītus sum,	<i>to forget.</i>

Meminī is a *defective* verb; that is, only a few of its forms

exist. **Memini**, though perfect tense in appearance, is used as a present; thus, **memini** means *I remember*, **memineram**, *I was remembering*, etc.

734. Examine these sentences:

1. **Cicerōnis memini**. *I keep Cicero in mind, I remember Cicero.*

2. **Iniūriarum omnium obliviscor**. *I forget all injuries.*

735. B. Impersonal Verbs.

pudet,	pudēre,	puduit,	<i>it shames.</i>
piget,	pigēre,	piguit,	<i>it grieves.</i>
paenitet,	paenitēre,	paenituit,	<i>it repents.</i>
taedet,	taedēre,	taeduit,	<i>it bores.</i>
miseret,	miserēre,	miseruit,	<i>it pities.</i>

736. Examine these sentences:

1. **Tuārum rērum mē miseret**. *I pity your affairs (it pities me of your affairs).*

2. **Suī sceleris sē paenitēbit**. *He will repent his wickedness.*

Each of these verbs is impersonal. They are accompanied by an *accusative of the person who feels the emotion* indicated by the verb, and the *genitive of the cause of the emotion*.

Latin Adjectives followed by the Genitive

737. In like manner there are some Latin adjectives which are followed by an objective genitive.

plēnus, -a, -um, <i>full of.</i>	īnscius, -a, -um, <i>unconscious of.</i>
particeps, participis, <i>sharing in.</i>	memor, memoris, <i>mindful of.</i>
peritus, -a, -um, <i>skilled in.</i>	oblitus, -a, -um, <i>forgetful of.</i>
imperitus, -a, -um, <i>unskilled in.</i>	expers, expertis, <i>devoid of.</i>
cupidus, -a, -um, <i>desirous of.</i>	avidus, -a, -um, <i>desirous of.</i>

738. Translate: 1. **Omnēs gentēs antiquārum iniūriarum meminerint**. 2. **Calamitātis reipublicae obliviscī nōn possum**. 3. **Galba peritissimus rei militāris erat**. 4. **Mē sceleris nūper facti paenitet**. 5. **Omnēs carrī quī nunc in illā viā**

THE OBJECT

manent plēnī frūmentī sunt. 6. Mē scelerum nonnumquam pudet. 7. Dum nōs inter hōs cīvēs manēbimus cōsuētūdinum eōrum memorēs sīmus. 8. Rōmānī praeter omnēs gentēs avidī laudis fuērunt. 9. Numquam mē amīctiae tuae paenitēbit. 10. Verbōrum huius cōsulis mē semper taedet.

739. 1. I will remember the words of the leader for many years. 2. I am disgusted with the story. 3. We do not praise leaders who are unskilled in military affairs. 4. In the spring the rivers are full of water. 5. We pity your grief.

TRANSLATION. JOSEPH AND HIS BRETHREN

740. Iacobus habuit duodecim filiōs, inter quōs erat Iosephus. Hunc pater prae cēterīs amābat, quod senex eum genuerat. Illi togam textam ē filīs variī colōris dederat. Quam ob causam Iosephus erat suīs frātribus invīsus, praesertim postquam eīs duplex somnium nārrāvit, quō futūra eius māgnitūdō portendēbātur. Illum tantopere ōderant ut eum amīcē loquī nōn possent. Haec porrō erant Iosephī somnia. "Ligābāmus," inquit, "simul manipulōs in agrō. Ecce manipulus meus surgēbat et rēctus stābat. Vestrī autem manipulī circumstantēs meum venerābantur. Postea in somnīs sōlem, lūnam, et ūndecim stellās mē adōrantēs vīdī." Frātrēs igitur eī invidēbant, et pater rem tacitus cōsiderābat. Quōdam diē cum frātrēs Iosephī gregēs procul pāscerent, ipse domī remānserat. Iacobus eum ad frātrēs mīsīt. Quī Iosephum venientem videntēs cōsiliū illiūs occidendi cēpērunt. "Ecce," dicēbant, "somniātor venit. Occidāmus illum et in puteum proiciāmus. Dicēmus patrī, 'fera dēvorāvit Iosephum.'"

XLVIII. THE OBJECT IN ENGLISH EXPRESSED BY THE DATIVE IN LATIN

741. Many verbs in Latin are followed by the *dative*, which in English are followed by an accusative.

Consider these examples:

1. I envy the successful general.
2. He pardoned the offenders without exacting any penalty.
3. The army threatened the fortified town.

In each of these sentences the English verb is followed by the *accusative* case. If, however, you will consider what is meant by the verb, you will see that the *direct object is really included in the verb itself*. What appears in English as the direct object is in reality **the indirect object**.

"*I envy the general*," means *I feel envy for the general*.

"*He pardoned the offenders*," means *he gave pardon to the offenders*.

"*The army threatened the town*," means *the army made a threat to the town*.

Thus you see why the Latins used the dative after such verbs. The commonest verbs which take the dative are:

faveō (2), *to favor*.
placeō (2), *to please*.
displiceō (2), *to displease*.
fidō (3), *to trust*.
diffidō (3), *to distrust*.
crēdō (3), *to believe*.
persuādeō (2), *to persuade*.
noceō (2), *to harm*.
studeō (2), *to desire*.

imperō (1), *to command*.
pāreō (2), *to obey*.
resistō (3), *to resist*.
repūgnō (1), *to resist*.
invidēō (2), *to envy*.
ignōscō (3), *to pardon*.
parcō (3), *to spare*.
serviō (4), *to serve*.
minor (1), *to threaten*.

Learn the principal parts of these verbs in the general vocabulary.

THE OBJECT

742. In like manner certain Latin adjectives are followed by the dative. These are:

acceptus, -a, -um, *acceptable to*.

pār, paris, *equal to*.

dispār, disparis, *unequal to*.

aequālis, aequāle, *equal to*.

idōneus, -a, -um, *suitable for*.

amicus, -a, -um, *friendly to*.

invisus, -a, -um, *hateful to*.

743. Translate: 1. Fortūna fortibus favet. 2. Quam ob rem eī placuit ut ad ducem lēgātōs mitteret. 3. Huic fābulae libenter crēdidissem sī mihi nārrāta esset. 4. Hostēs nōbis facile nocēre nōn possunt. 5. Num haec dōna māximē accepta Caesarī fuērunt? 6. Haec causa hīs rēbus omnibus repūgnābat quod obses nōbilis amicus populō Rōmānō erat. 7. Sī pācem petent nōs hīs sceleribus ignōscēmur. 8. Fīnitimī nostrī nōbīs inimīcī sunt et nostrae virtūtī invident. 9. Lēgātus cupīditāte adductus novīs rēbus studēbat. 10. Locum pūgnandō idōneum mōnstrābant.

744. 1. We believe the words of our friends. 2. Spare those nations which are friendly to your fatherland. 3. What commander unskilled in military affairs dares to issue commands to us? 4. No oration can be found equal to his courage. 5. The other centurions envied Galba.

TRANSLATION. JOSEPH SOLD INTO EGYPT

745. Ruben, quī erat nātū māximus frātrēs ā tantō scelere dēterrēbat. "Nōlite," inquiēbat, "puerum interficere. Est enim frāter noster. Dēmittite eum potius in hanc foveam." In animō habēbat Iosephum ex eōrum manibus liberāre et illum extrahere ē foveā atque ad patrem redūcere. Hīs verbīs ad mītiūs cōnsilium dēductī sunt. Ubi Iosephus ad fratrēs suōs pervēnit eī togam dētrāxērunt quā indūtus erat et eum in foveam dētrūsērunt. Deinde cum cōnsēdissent ad sūmendū cibum, cōspexērunt mercātōrēs quī

Aegyptum cum camēlīs varia arōmata portantibus petēbant. Illis in mentem vēnit Iosephum illis mercātōribus vēndere. Quī Iosephum vīgintī nummīs argenteīs ēmērunt eumque in Aegyptum dūxērunt. Tunc frātrēs Iosephī tinxērunt togam eius in sanguine haedī quem occīderant, et eam ad patrem cum hīs verbis mīsērunt: “Invēnimus hanc togam.” Quam cum agnōvisset, pater exclāmāvit, “Toga filiī meī est. Fera pessima Iosephum dēvorāvit.” Deinde vestem scīdit. Omnēs filiī eius convēnerant ut dolōrem patris lēnīrent sed Iacobus cōsōlātiōnem accipere nōluit dīxitque, “Ego maerēns cum filiō meō in sepulchrum dēscendam.”

XLIX. THE OBJECT IN ENGLISH EXPRESSED BY TWO ACCUSATIVES IN LATIN

Two Accusatives in Latin and English

746. Often verbs in both Latin and English are followed by **two objects**, each of which is **in the accusative case**.

Examine these English sentences:

1. They called *him king* and *father* of his people.
2. The American voters elected *Mr. Wilson President*.
3. I appoint *you superintendent*.

747. In each of these examples there are two accusatives following the verb. Such a construction is common after verbs of **electing, choosing, calling, nominating**, as:

appellō,	appellāre,	appellāvi,	appellātus,	<i>to call, name.</i>
creō,	creāre,	creāvī,	creātus,	<i>to create, elect.</i>
dīcō,	dīcere,	dīxī,	dictus,	<i>to say, appoint.</i>
nōminō,	nōmināre,	nōmināvī,	nōminātus,	<i>to nominate, name.</i>
faciō,	facere,	fēcī,	factus,	<i>to make.</i>
dūcō,	dūcere,	dūxī,	ductus,	<i>to lead, consider.</i>
habeō,	habēre,	habuī,	habitus,	<i>to hold, regard.</i>

THE OBJECT

748. RULE.—Two Accusatives.—*Two nouns in the accusative may be used as the objects of verbs meaning to elect, choose, call, nominate.*

749. Translate: 1. *Caesarem patrem appellēmus.* 2. *Cum Gallī aliquem rēgem creāvissent, scūtō eum sustulērunt.* 3. *Tūne Cicerōnem praetōrem nōmināvistī?* 4. *Cīvēs laetī mē cōsulem rūsus facient.* 5. *Quis ōratiōnēs Galbae ēgregiās dūcit?*

1. I consider you an enemy of the republic. 2. We will elect these two men praetors. 3. I was elected king by the chieftains of Gaul.

Two Accusatives. A Noun and an Infinitive

750. In Paragraph 719 you learned that the infinitive, being a noun, could be used as a subject or as a predicate noun. The infinitive is also frequently used as an object.

Study these English sentences:

1. I order you *to bring* (the bringing of) the book.
2. He forbids them *to leave* (the leaving of) the table.

In each of these examples the infinitive is used as the object of the main verb.

751. These Latin verbs are followed by an object Infinitive with noun subject.

iubeō,	iubēre,	iūssī,	iūssus,	<i>to order.</i>
vetō,	vetāre,	vetuī,	vetitus,	<i>to forbid.</i>
patior,	patī,	passus sum,		<i>to permit.</i>
cōgō,	cōgere,	coēgī,	coāctus,	<i>to compel, force.</i>

Examine these Latin sentences:

1. *Iubeō tē scūtum portāre.* *I bid you carry the shield.*
2. *Coēgit eōs obsidēs dare.* *He forced them to give hostages.*

This construction is often called the **Object Infinitive**.

The nouns **tē** and **eōs** are subjects of the infinitives **portāre** and **dare**. Remember that the subject of an infinitive regularly is put in the accusative case. Do not confuse this construction with the Complementary Infinitive. The Object Infinitive regularly has a subject; the Complementary Infinitive has none.

752. RULE.—Object Infinitive.—*An infinitive, with subject in the accusative, may be used after the verbs mentioned in Paragraph 751 as an object.*

753. Translate: 1. Omnī spē reditiōnis sublātā, dux eōs trium mēnsium cibum efferre iūssit. 2. Caesar ab opere singulōs lēgātōs discēdere vetuerat. 3. Nē eōs per nostrōs finēs ire patiāmur. 4. Suīs mōribus captivum ex vinculis dicere coēgērunt. 5. Oppidō captō, Caesar militēs praedam capere vetuit.

754. 1. Did you order the citizens to elect this man a praetor? **2.** The Romans forced the enemy to send messengers concerning peace. **3.** I will not permit you to free this slave.

TRANSLATION. THE BIRTH OF MOSES

755. Mulier Hebraea filium peperit. Quem cum ēlegantem vidēret, servāre voluit. Quārē eum tribus mēnsibus abscondit, sed cum eum diūtius occultāre nōn posset, fiscellam scirpeam sūmpsit quam bitūmine ac pice linīvit. Deinde infantulum intus posuit et eum inter arundinēs rīpae flūminis exposuit. Sēcum ūnam comitem, sorōrem puerī, habēbat, quam stāre procul iūssit ut ēventum rei explōrāret. Mox filia Pharaōnis ad flūmen vēnit ut corpus ablueret. Fiscellam in arundinibus haerentem prōspēxit

THE OBJECT

ūnamque ē famulābus suis illūc mīsit. Apertā fiscellā, cernēns parvulum vagientem, illius miserāta est. “Iste est,” inquit, “ūnus ex infantibus Hebraeorum.” Tunc soror pueri, accēdēns, “Vīsne,” ait, “ut mulierem Hebraeam accessam quae parvulum nūtriat” et mātrem vocāvit. Cui filia Pharaōnis puerum alendum prōmissā mercēde dedit. Itaque māter puerum nūtrivit et adultum reddidit filiae Pharaōnis quae illum adoptāvit et Mosem, id est, *servātum ab aquis* nōmināvit.

L. THE OBJECT IN ENGLISH EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE IN LATIN

The Ablative after Certain Verbs

756. A number of verbs which in English are followed by the accusative case in Latin govern an ablative.

Examine these English sentences:

1. They *used* the skins of animals for clothes.
2. We have *enjoyed* a long period of prosperity.
3. The barbarians *ate* all kinds of meat.

In these sentences the objects of the verbs are in the accusative case. In Latin these same verbs are followed by the ablative case.

757.

ūtor,	ūtī,	ūsus sum,	to use.
fruor,	frui,	fructus sum,	to enjoy.
fungor,	fungi,	fūctus sum,	to do one's duty, perform.
potior,	potiri,	potītus sum,	to seize, to get possession of.
vēscor,	vēscī,	——,	to eat.

758. RULE.—*The Deponent verbs ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vēscor, and their compounds are followed by the ablative case.*

The Ablative after Certain Adjectives

759. Certain Latin adjectives govern the ablative case.

dignus, -a, -um, worthy. indignus, -a, -um, unworthy.
contentus, -a, -um, content with. frētus, -a, -um, relying on.
praeditus, -a, -um, endowed with.

760. Translate: 1. Gallī eōdem cōsiliō ūsī sua oppida aedificiaque omnia incendērunt. 2. Eōs quōs laude dīgnōs dūcimus semper laudēmus. 3. Sī vōs libertāte contentī fuissētis, numquam rēgem ex aliēnā gente creāvissētis. 4. Omnibus in vitā rēbus fruuntur ūnā cum eīs quōrum sē amicitiae dedērunt. 5. Frētī virtūte castellīs hostium celeriter potiāmur. 6. Poētae sunt hominēs arte ēgregiā fābulārum dīcendārum praeditī.

761. 1. While we are in the country let us enjoy all the flowers. 2. Be content with small things. 3. The inhabitants of this island used lead and gold. 4. When Galba seized a town he forbade the soldiers to injure the townspeople.

TRANSLATION. CROSSING THE RED SEA

762. Post paucōs diēs multitūdo Hebraeorū ad litus maris rubrī pervēnit ibique castra posuit. Brevī tempore rēgem paenituit quod tot mīlia hominum dīmīsisset et ingentī exercitū collēctō eōs persecūtus est. Hebraei cum vīdissent ex ūnā parte sē marī interclūsos esse, ex alterā parte Pharaōnem cum omnibus cōpiīs instāre māgnō timōre correptī sunt. Tunc Deus Mosī: “Prōtende,” inquit, “dexteram tuam in mare et dīvide aquās ut illae Hebraeis gradientibus iter siccum praebeant.” Fēcit Moses quod iūsserat Deus. Cum manum super mare extensam tenēret aquae dīvisae sunt, et intumēscētēs hinc et inde pendēbant.

THE OBJECT. NOUN CLAUSES

Flāvit etiam ventus vehemēns quō alveus exsiccātus est. Tunc Hebraei in mare siccum ingressi sunt: Erat enim aqua tamquam mūrus ā dextrā eōrum et laevā. Rēx quoque Aegyptius Hebraeos gradientēs īsecūtus mare quā patēbat cum ūniversō exercitū ingredī nōn dubitāvit. Cum Aegyptiī in mediō marī prōgrederentur Dominus eōrum currūs subvertit et equitēs dēiēcit. Metū percussī Aegyptiī fugerē coepērunt at Deus Mosi dixit, “ Extende rūsus dextram in mare ut aquae in locum suum revertantur.” Pāruit Moses et statim aquae refluētēs Aegyptiōs et eōrum currūs et equitēs obruērunt. Ūniversus exercitus Pharaōnis in mediīs fluctibus dēlētus est nec ūnus nūntius tantae clādis super-
fuit.

LI. THE OBJECT. NOUN CLAUSES

A. Clauses of Purpose

763. In the preceding Paragraphs you have seen that certain cases other than the accusative are employed in Latin to translate expressions which in English appear as the direct object of the verb. In Paragraph 572 you found that the infinitive could be used as the subject or the object of a verb. These cases are sufficient to show that Latin does *not follow unvaryingly the normal structure of noun (subject), verb (predicate), and noun (object)*. We must now take up some examples of the direct object replaced by a clause (**noun clause**).

The Object Clause of Purpose

764. Examine these English sentences:

1. I advise him *to act (that he act) as mediator.*

2. Caesar persuadēs Galba *to send (that he send) aid.*
3. Cicero urged Catiline *to depart (that he should depart).*

In each of these sentences the part in italics composes a **Clause**. These clauses are **noun clauses** because they take the place of a single noun, as in 1, his **acting** as mediator, in 2, the **despatch** of aid, in 3, Catiline's **departure**. If you will consider these noun clauses accurately you will see that in each case the clause represents *something which would naturally take place in the future*. Object clauses of this kind include also an idea of purpose or expectation. They are consequently **Object Clauses of Purpose**. They are introduced by the regular purpose particles **ut** (affirmative) and **nē** (negative), and are followed by the present or imperfect subjunctive according to Sequence.

765. Object Clauses of Purpose often follow these verbs:

moneō,	monēre,	monuī,	monitus,	to advise, warn (acc.).*
mandō,	mandāre,	mandāvī,	mandātus,	to enjoin, command (dat.).
hortor,	hortārī,	hortātus sum,		to urge (acc.).
impetrō,	impetrāre,	impetrāvī,	impetrātus,	to gain a request (ā (ab) with abl.).
persuadeō,	persuādēre,	persuāsī,	persuāsus,	to persuade (dat.).
permittō,	permittere,	permisi,	permissus,	to permit (dat.).
imperō,	imperāre,	imperāvī,	imperātus,	to command (dat.).
ōrō,	ōrāre,	ōrāvī,	ōrātus,	to plead (acc.).
petō,	petere,	petivī,	petitus,	to seek (ā (ab) with abl.).
rogō,	rogāre,	rogāvī,	rogātus,	to ask (acc.).

* These verbs are accompanied by a dative, accusative or ablative of the *person directly affected*. The subjunctive mood in the present and imperfect tenses is employed in object clauses of purpose as in the ordinary clause of purpose.

766. RULE.—Object clauses of purpose take the *present* and *imperfect subjunctive* introduced by *ut, that* (*affirmative*), *nē, that not* (*negative*).

767. Translate: 1. Caesar lēgātum monuit ut omnēs centuriōnēs ā legiōne discēdere vetāret. 2. Huic mandō ut, omnibus rēbus visīs, ad mē celerrimē revertātur. 3. Gallō cuidam persuāsum est ut ad hostēs trānsiret. 4. Militēs longiōre ōrātiōne cohortātus nē animō perturbārentur proelī committendī sīgnum dedit. 5. Ā finitimīs suīs impetrāvērunt ut per finēs obsidēs ire paterentur. 6. His explōrātōribus imperāvit ut omnēs cīvitatēs adirent et hortārentur ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequerentur. 7. Gallī petuntur sibi concilium totius Galliae in diem certum vocāre liceat. 8. His militibus permittāmus ut oppidō potiantur. 9. Eō tempore ōrāvit nē quid Caesar gravius in frātre statueret. 10. Cum rogārent ut eius voluntāte sibi iter facere liceret impetrāvērunt.

768. 1. I urge you not to send aid to our enemies. **2.** Who warned Caesar to fear the consuls at Rome? **3.** We will order these men to send grain to the city. **4.** He asked his brother not to lead the cavalry. **5.** They sought the right to occupy the plain.

TRANSLATION. THE BIRTH OF SAMSON

769. Cum Hebraei in potestate Philistaeorum et ab illis affligerentur, Samson, futurus ultor hostium, natus est. Puer crevit; intonsam habuit barbam. Incredibili corporis robore fuit. Obvium leonem manu interfecit.

Samson adultus Philistaeos multis cladibus affecit. Cepit trecentas vulpes quarum caudis accensas lampades alligavit et in hostium agris immisit. Tunc forte messis matura erat;

ita facile incendium fuit. Omnēs segetēs vīneae et oleae exūstae sunt; nec inimicam gentem variīs incommodis vexāre dēstitit. Trāditus Philistaeīs rūpit vincula quibus cōnstrictus erat; et maxillā asīnī arreptā hōc tēlō quod cāsus dederat, mille hostium prōstrāvit.

Quōdam diē Samson urbem Philistaeōrum ingressus est, ibique pernoctātūrus vidēbātur. Philistaeī occāsiōnem cap-tantēs portās obserārī iūssērunt nē quis exīret. Per tōtam noctem silentēs expectābant ut Samsōnem māne exeuntem interficerent. At Samson mediā nocte surrēxit, et ad portam urbis vēnit quam cum clausam invēnisset humerīs cum postibus et serīs sustulit atque in verticem montis vicinī portāvit.

Tandem Philistaeī quī Samsōnem comprehendere nōn potuerant illius uxōrem pecūniā corrūpērunt ut ea virum prōderet. Mulier virō persuāsit ut sibi causam tantae virtūtis indicāret; et ubi virēs scīvit eius in capillīs sitās esse, caput dormientis totondit atque ita eum Philistaeīs trādidit. Illī effōsīs oculīs vinctum in carcerem dēiēcērunt diūque lūdibriō habuērunt. Sed spatiō temporis crīnis accīsus crēscere et cum crīne virtūs redīre coepit; iamque Samson receptī rōboris cōnsciūs iūstae ultiōnis tempus opperiēbātur.

Erat Philistaeīs mōs, cum diēs festōs agerent, Samsōnem prōdūcere quasi in pompam pūblicam capt que īnsultāre. Diē quōdam cum pūbl cum convīvium celebrārētur Samsōnem addūcī iubent. Domus in quā omnis populus et principēs Philistaeōrum epulābantur subnīxa erat duābus columnīs mīrae māgnitūdinis. Samson adductus inter col-

umnās statuitur. Tum ille occāsiōne ūtēns columnās concussit et turba omnis ruīnā domūs obruta est simulque Samson ipse cum hostibus nōn inultus occubuit.

QUIZ.—How many words in Paragraph 803 can you explain and use?

B. Clauses of Fearing

770. Just as there are object clauses after certain verbs which express the purpose or intention of the verb, so there are noun clauses following verbs and other expressions which involve the idea of **Fearing**. In such an English sentence as this: *We fear (that the enemy may make an attack)* the part enclosed in the parenthesis, though an entire clause, is really the *direct object of the verb fear*. This whole clause could have been expressed by a *single noun*. For instance, what we really feared was a *fear*, thus, *we fear (a fear)*. If, however, any one were to speak thus without telling at the same time what his fear was, no one would pay much attention to the utterance. Consequently it is necessary always to enlarge upon the idea which would be contained in the noun *fear*. From this comes the origin of the object clause of **fearing**. Such a clause being in reality the enlargement of a single noun is called a **noun clause**.

771. Object Clauses of Fearing follow these Latin verbs:

timeō,	timēre,	timui,	_____	to fear.
vereor,	verēri,	veritus sum,	_____	to fear.
metuō,	metuere,	metui,	_____	to fear.

772. Examine these Latin sentences:

I. **Verēmur nē hostēs impetum faciant.**

We fear that the enemy will make an attack.

2. **Verēmur ut hostēs impetum faciant.**

We fear that the enemy will not make an attack.

The underscored words in each case compose an **Object Clause of Fearing**. Notice that these clauses are introduced by the particles **nē** and **ut**. In such clauses the word **nē** introduces a clause expressing a *positive* fear; the word **ut** a *negative* fear. In the other uses of **ut** and **nē** you have observed that **ut** has introduced *affirmative* statements, **nē**, *negative*. In fearing clauses these words have a *reverse* signification. You may feel some uncertainty about being able to tell the difference between the clauses which employ **ut** and **nē**. Always note *carefully* the verb which precedes the clause. The verbs of fearing, **vereor**, **timeō**, etc., will always **serve as a signal**, a veritable red flag, to prepare you for the approach of an **object clause of fearing**.

773. RULE.—**Object clauses following verbs or other expressions of fearing take their verbs in the subjunctive, introduced by the particles **nē** (affirmative) and **ut** (negative). The tenses of the Subjunctive used follow the regular rule for Sequence.**

774. Translate: 1. Vereor nē dux suum exercitum trāns flūmen trādūcat. 2. Timēbat ut milītēs iter facerent. 3. Quis veritur nē obsidēs fugiant? 4. Verentur nē vulnera multa ā sociīs suīs accepta sint. 5. Itaque veritus ut oppidum capī posset Caesar impetū dēstitit. 6. Timeō nē Galba milītēs obsidēs interficere iūsserit. 7. Metuēbat ut aciēs in locō pūgnandō idōneō instrūcta esset. 8. Verēbātur ut nōs lēgātōs dē pāce ad sē mitterēmus. 9. Timeō ut tibi haec dōna dare possim. 10. Metuēbāmus nē castra ab iīs vidērentur.

THE OBJECT. NOUN CLAUSES

775. 1. I fear that he will command the soldiers to cross the river. 2. Who fears that the sun will not shine to-day? 3. They feared that they would not have sufficient grain. 4. Having feared that the enemy would flee without a battle Caesar ordered his cavalry to hasten. 5. I fear that you will not praise my poems.

TRANSLATION. DAVID AND GOLIATH

776. *Secūtum est bellum cum Philistaeīs. Cum aciēs in cōspectū essent, Philistaeus quīdam, nōmine Goliāthus, vir mīrae māgnitūdinis, ante ōrdinēs prōgressus est et ūnum ex Hebraeīs ad singulāre certāmen saepe prōvocābat. Lorīcā squamātā induitur. Ocreās in crūribus aereās habebat; cassis aerea caput eius operiēbat et clipeus aereus humerōs tegēbat. Tum Saul māgna praemia et filiae nūptiās eī prōmīsīt quī prōvocantis spolia retulisset. At nēmō contrā illum exīre audēbat et Goliāthus suam Hebraeīs ignāviām cum irrīsū ac lūdibriō exprōbrābat. Dāvid ignōminiā populī suī commōtus sē sponte ad pūgnandum obtulit. Itaque adductus est ad Saulem quī eius aetāte cōsiderātā pūgnae diffidēbat. “Nōn poteris,” inquit, “adolēscētulus cum virō rōbustissimō pūgnāre.” Respondit Dāvid, “Nōlī timēre, Ō rēx. Cum ovēs patris meī pāscerem leō gregem invāsīt ovemque corripuit. Ego illum persecūtus occīdī et ovem ē faucibus illius ēripuī. Ursum pāriter interfēcī. Deus quī mē ā leōne et ursō dēfendit mē quoque ā Philistaeō istō dēfendet.” Tum Saul, “Abī,” inquit, “cum istā fidūciā Deus tē adiuvet.”*

Saul ipse sua iuvenī arma accomodāre voluit. Galeam

capitī eius imposuit, lōricā pectus circumtēxit, latus gladiō accinxit. Dāvid verō iīs impeditus armīs quibus nōn erat assuētus vix incēdere poterat. Quāre onus incommodum dēposuit. Sūmpsit autem pedum pāstorāle quō ūtī cōnsuēverat et fundam cum quīnque lapidibus in sacculō. Sic armātus adversus Philistaeum prōcessit. Accēdēbat ex adversō Goliāthus quī vīsō adolēscēte, “ Num,” inquit, “ mē canem esse putās quī mē cum baculō adgrediāris?” Cui Dāvid respondit, “ Tu venīs ad mē cum gladiō et hastā et clipeō, ego autem veniō in nōmine Domini exercituum quem probriīs lacescere ausus es.” Tunc lapide fundā missō, Philistaeum in fronte percussit et humī prōstrāvit currēnsque suum iacentī gladium dētrāxit quō caput illī praecīdit. Eā rē percussī Philistaeī in fugam versī sunt et victōriam Hebraeīs concessērunt.

QUIZ.—How many words in Paragraphs 804, 805, can you explain and use?

C. Indirect Questions

777. Look back for a moment to Paragraphs 258–260. In those paragraphs you learned to distinguish the *Interrogative* sentence: that is, the sentence which asks a *question*. The particles **nē**, **nōnne**, **num**, served then to indicate this type of sentence. You had no difficulty in recognizing a direct question because of the presence of these words. Sometimes it becomes necessary to repeat a question which has already been asked. **Repeated questions** are called **Indirect Questions**.

Examine these English sentences:

THE OBJECT. NOUN CLAUSES

1. Mr. Jones to Mr. Smith: "*Hello! Smith, what do you think of the war?*"

2. Mr. Smith later to Mr. Brown: "*Jones asked me to-day what I thought of the war.*"

In the first sentence Mr. Jones put a *direct* question to Mr. Smith; in the second Mr. Smith repeated the question *indirectly* to Mr. Brown. The words "What I thought of the war" compose an **Indirect Question**. Notice that in English the direct question is followed by a mark of interrogation, the indirect question merely by a period. An indirect question is really a **noun clause** in that it takes the place of a single noun. This will be apparent if you supply instead of the clause "What I thought of the war" the word *question*.

778. How are you to recognize the noun clause containing an indirect question? In the *first place* **indirect questions** can be recognized by the fact that they **are always introduced by an interrogative word**. The most frequent introductory words are:

quis, quid, <i>who, what.</i>	cūr, <i>why.</i>
quī, quae, quod, <i>who, which, what.</i>	utrum, <i>whether, an, or.</i>
quālis, quāle, <i>what sort of.</i>	sive . . . sive, <i>whether . . . or.</i>
quantus, -a, -um, <i>how much.</i>	sī, <i>if, whether.</i>
quandō, <i>when.</i>	num, <i>whether.</i>

In the *second place* the **nature of the verb upon which the indirect question depends** is an indication of the kind of clause to be expected. Indirect questions usually follow (1) verbs which themselves **ask a question**, as—

quaerō	quaerere,	quaesivī,	quaesitus,	<i>to ask (ā (ab) with abl.).</i>
rogō,	rogāre,	rogāvī,	rogātus,	<i>to ask (acc.).</i>
pōscō,	pōscere,	popōscī,	—	<i>to demand (ā (ab) with abl.).</i>

(2) verbs which mean to **consider, deliberate, wonder, ascertain, and doubt**. With each of these verbs there is an idea of interrogation implied.

cōgnōscō, cōgnōscere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus, to know.
 cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstituī, cōstitutus, to determine.
 expectō, expectāre, expectāvī, expectātus, to expect, await.
 intelligō, intelligere, intellēxī, intellēctus, to understand.

779. Examine these sentences:

1. I ask *what he is doing*. Rogō quid faciat.
2. I asked *what he was doing*. Rogāvī quid faceret.
3. I asked *what he had done*. Rogāvī quid fēcisset.
4. I asked *whether he was victorious or was defeated*.

Rogāvī utrum vinceret an vincerētur.

In these sentences notice *first* that the **verb** in the indirect question is in the **subjunctive**; *second*, that the tense of the subjunctive used depends upon the regular rule for the **sequence of tenses**; and *third*, that the clause is, in each case, **introduced by an interrogative word**. In the fourth sentence there is an example of the **double indirect question**. In such a sentence there are two interrogative clauses, each introduced by an interrogative word, the first by **utrum** (*whether*), the second by **an, or**. Two other words similarly used are:

sive . . . sive, *whether . . . or*

780. RULE.—**Indirect questions regularly have their verbs in the subjunctive mood and their tenses follow the rule for the sequence of tenses.**

781. Translate: 1. Rogāvī cūr mea carmina laudāvisset. 2. Quaerō unde militēs frumentum portāverint. 3. Popō-scērunt ā captivīs quantae cōpiae hostibus essent. 4. Ro-

THE OBJECT. NOUN CLAUSES

gāvimus utrum illī amicī an inimicī essent. 5. Nōn scīvistis sīve exercitus vīcisset sīve victus esset. 6. Cōgnōscere voluī quantō in periculō urbs esset. 7. Cōstituere nōn possum num equitātus hodiē Rōmam perveniat. 8. Hostēs exspectābant sī nostrī hanc palūdem trānsīrent. 9. Intellegere volumus quālēs cōpiae missae sint. 10. Nūntius quī missus erat nōbīs nārrāvit quae rēs factae essent.

782. 1. I do not know whose horse this is. 2. Ask the captives from what direction the enemy have come. 3. We waited (to see) if the cavalry would cross the marsh. 4. Let us ask what has been done. 5. He could not determine who had taken the gold.

TRANSLATION. DAVID AND ABSALOM

783. Absolon, filius Dāvidis, paternum rēgnum affectāvit. Multitūdine imperitā concitātā adversus patrem rebellāvit. Id ubi cōgnōvit, Dāvid excessit Hierosōlymā veritus nē, sī ibi remanēret, Absolon cum exercitū veniēns urbem rēgiam obsidēret, eamque ferrō et ignī vāstāret. Absolon, profectō patre, Hierosōlymam ingressus est, ibique aliquamdiū morātus est; quae rēs salūtī Dāvidī fuit; nam interim Dāvid cōpiās collēgit sēque ad bellum compārāvit. Iam aderat Absolon cum exercitū et proelium mox erat committendum: Suī comitēs rēgī suāsērunt nē certāminī interesset. Quāpropter Dāvid Ioabum suīs cōpiīs praefēcit sēque in urbem vicīnam contulit. Abiēns autem Ioabō cēterisque ducibus praecēpit, ut Absolōnī parcerent sibique filium incolumem servārent.

Ācriter utrimque pūgnātum est: sed Deō favente victōria penes Dāvidem fuit. Terga vertērunt Absolōnis militēs ē

quibus vīgintī duo mīlia cecidērunt. Absolon fugiēns mūlō insidēbat. Erat autem prōmissō et dēnsō capillō. Dum praecipitī cursū subter dēnsam quercum fertur, coma eius rāmīs implicāta est, et ipse suspēnsus adhaesit, mūlō interim praetereunte et cursum pergente.

Stābat intereā Dāvid ad portam urbis, expectāns ēventum pūgnae et māximē dē filiī salūte sollicitus. Cum ēventus proelī illī nūntiātus esset, Absolōne interfectō, nōn modō nōn laetātus est dē victoriā sed māximum quoque dolōrem ex morte filiī cēpit. Inambulābat in cēnāculō maerēns, et in hās vōcēs identidem ērumpēns: “ Filī mī,* Absolon, Absolon, fili mī; utinam prō tē moriar, Absolon, fili mī, fili mī, Absolon.”

QUIZ.—How many words in Paragraphs 806, 807, can you explain and use?

D. Indirect Statements in English and Latin

784. In the preceding paragraphs you have seen that the direct object in English (a noun in the accusative) may be replaced in Latin by other cases and other constructions in accordance with the **nature of the Latin verb** with which it is associated. *The verb, then, is the important word.* Verbs of *fearing* took an object clause, verbs of *interrogation* took an indirect question clause, etc. In like manner verbs of **saying and thinking** often **take an object clause** expressed by the **accusative and the infinitive** in English and in Latin.

785. A. Examine these English sentences:

* Vocative singular of filius meus.

THE OBJECT. NOUN CLAUSES

1. I believe *him to be an honest man*.
2. We know *them to be men of ability*.
3. Who thinks that *all he hears is true*.
4. I perceive that *the opinions of men differ*.

Each of these sentences contains a statement put **indirectly**. This construction is called **Indirect Discourse**. It is common after verbs of saying and thinking in English and Latin. The accusative and the infinitive compose a noun clause. Let us examine this noun clause a little more closely.

Suppose that to-day you were thinking as follows: *The day will be cloudy*. If to-morrow you should wish to repeat the thought of to-day, you would say, *Yesterday I thought the day would be cloudy*. The words *the day would be cloudy* are really the direct object of the verb *thought*. They replace the single noun *thought* contained in the verb itself. *Yesterday I thought a **thought** (that the day would be cloudy)*. Since this construction really replaces a noun it is a noun clause.

786. Construct some sentences containing Indirect statements (noun clauses) after the verbs to *say, think, know, perceive*.

787. B. Examine these Latin sentences:

1. **Servus clāmat.** *The slave is shouting.* Present Time.

In direct discourse after a **primary** tense (pres., fut., or fut. perf.) this sentence would be:

$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{dicit,} \\ \text{dicet,} \\ \text{dixerit,} \end{array} \right\}$	servum clāmāre.	$\text{He } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{says} \\ \text{will say} \\ \text{will have said} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{that the slave is} \\ \text{shouting.} \end{array} \right\}$
--	------------------------	--	--

After a **secondary** tense it would be:

$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{dicēbat,} \\ \text{dixit,} \\ \text{dixerat,} \end{array} \right\} \text{servum clāmāre.} \quad \text{He} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{was saying} \\ \text{said} \\ \text{had said} \end{array} \right\} \text{that the slave was shouting.}$

2. **Servus clāmābat.** *The slave was shouting.* Past Time.

In indirect discourse, after a **primary** tense, this sentence would be: **dicīt (dicet, dixerit) servum clāmāvisse.** *He says (will say, will have said) that the slave was shouting.*

After a **secondary** tense it would be: **dicēbat (dixit, dixerat) servum clāmāvisse.** *He was saying (said, had said) that the slave was shouting.*

3. **Servus clāmābit.** *The slave will shout.* Future Time.

In indirect discourse, after a **primary** tense, this sentence would be: **dicīt (dicet, dixerit) servum clāmātūrum esse.** *He says (will say, will have said) that the slave will shout.*

After a **secondary** tense it would be: **dicēbat (dixit, dixerat) servum clāmātūrum esse.** *He was saying (said, had said) that the slave would shout.*

From these sentences you see that the *tense of the infinitive in Indirect discourse is the same as the tense of the main verb used in the direct statement; present, if the direct statement was in present time; perfect, if it was in past time; future, if it was in future time.* To determine what tense of the infinitive to use be sure to **turn the indirect statement back to its direct form.** Then use the tense of the infinitive which reproduces the time (present, past, or future) of the original direct statement.

788. RULE.—Indirect Discourse.—*After verbs of saying and thinking a quoted statement is put in the infinitive with*

THE OBJECT. NOUN CLAUSES

subject in the accusative. The tense of the infinitive is present, perfect, or future according to the time, present, past, or future, in which the direct statement was made. The subject must always be expressed.

If the subject of the indirect discourse infinitive is the **same** as the subject of the verb of saying, *the reflexive pronouns* **mē, tē, sē, nōs, vōs, sē** must be used as the subject of the infinitive.

1. **Dīcō mē aquam vidēre.** *I say that I see the water.*

2. **Dixit sē aquam vidēre.** *He says that he sees the water.*

If the subject of the infinitive is a person *other than* the subject of the verb of saying, **eum** or **illum** (not **mē, tē, sē**, etc.), should be used to show the contrast. **Servus dicit eum aquam vidēre.** *The slave says that he (someone not the slave) sees the water.*

If the original direct statement contained a verb in the passive voice the tense of the passive infinitive indicated by the time of the verb of the direct statement must be used.

789. The commonest verbs of **saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving**, in Latin are:

dīcō,	dicere,	dīxī,	dictus,	<i>to say.</i>
sciō,	scīre,	scīvī,	scītus,	<i>to know.</i>
putō,	putāre,	putāvī,	putātus,	<i>to think.</i>
sentiō,	sentīre,	sēnsī,	sēnsus,	<i>to perceive.</i>

Other verbs followed by the same construction are:

arbitror,	arbitrārī,	arbitrātus sum,		<i>to think.</i>
nūntiō,	nūntiāre,	nūntiāvī,	nūntiātus,	<i>to announce.</i>
negō,	negāre,	negāvī,	negātus,	<i>to deny.</i>
respondeō,	respondēre,	respondī,	respōnsus,	<i>to reply.</i>
existimō,	existimāre,	existimāvī,	existimātus,	<i>to think.</i>
cōgnōscō,	cōgnōscere,	cōgnōvī,	cōgnītus,	<i>to learn.</i>
audiō,	audīre,	audīvī,	audītus,	<i>to hear.</i>
videō,	vidēre,	vidī,	vīsus,	<i>to see.</i>
intellegō,	intellegere,	intellēxī,	intellēctus,	<i>to understand.</i>

790. Translate: 1. Dīcimus nōs ventūrōs esse. 2. Nōne scīvistī hostēs prōfūgissee? 3. Arbitrāmur haec carmina optima esse. 4. Nūntius, cum Galbam montem cēpisse respondisset, abiit. 5. Omnēs conclāmāvērunt cum templum ōrnātum esse audīvissent. 6. Nōn negāvī ōrātiōnem illō diē habitam esse. 7. Cum intellēxissent Caesarem in Ītaliā profectum esse hostēs domum sē recēpērunt. 8. Putō mē iter per hanc prōvinciā factūrum esse. 9. Num dixit sē corōnam Caesarī dare voluisse? 10. Sentiō omnēs cīvēs libertātem amāre.

791. 1. Did you not know that you were in great peril? 2. They thought that the town had been taken. 3. We hear that Galba has crossed the river. 4. Who replied that Caesar had a crown? 5. Did you say that the enemy would set out early in the morning?

TRANSLATION. THE JUDGMENT OF SOLOMON

792. Duae mulierēs in eādem domō habitābant. Utraque eōdem tempore puerum peperit. Ūnus ex hīs puerulis post diem tertium nocte mortuus est. Māter puerum alterius mulieris dormientis subripuit et in huius locō filium suum mortuum supposuit. Ortā inter duās mulierēs gravī altercātiōne, rēs ad Solomōnem dēlāta est. Difficilis erat atque perobscūra quaestiō, cum nūllus tēstis esset. Rēx autem ut explōrāret latentem vērītātem, “Dīvidātur,” inquit, “puer dē quō contrōversia est, et pars ūna ūnī mulierī, altera alterī dētur.” Iūdicīō assēnsit falsa māter, altera vērō exclāmāvit, “Nōlī,” quaesō, “puerum occīdere, Ō Rēx. Ista tōtum habeat.” Tum rēx aīt, “Rēs est manifēsta. Haec vērē est māter puerī.” Et huic illum adiūdicāvit.

THE OBJECT. NOUN CLAUSES

QUIZ.—How many words in Paragraphs 808, 809, can you explain and use?

E. Dependent Clauses in Indirect Statements

793. In the preceding paragraphs you learned that the infinitive (with subject accusative) is used as the direct object of verbs of saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving. When a *Simple* or a *Compound* sentence is to be transferred from the direct to the indirect discourse this construction is not difficult. If, however, the direct statement is a *Complex sentence* (one containing dependent clauses), transference is a little troublesome because the **form which the dependent clause will take in the indirect statement is affected by the rule for sequence of tenses.**

794. A. Examine this English sentence:

The men, who are defending the town, are brave.

If this is to be put into indirect discourse following a **primary** tense its form would be: Caesar says that *the men who are defending the town, are brave.*

After a **secondary** tense it would be: Caesar said that the men who *were* defending the town, *were* brave.

In the first sentence both the tenses of the infinitive and the dependent verb are the **same** as they were in the direct statement. In the second sentence both the infinitive and the dependent verb change to past tenses because of the time of the main verb. *In English, then, after secondary tenses one has to be very careful to maintain the correct sequence.*

795. Compose some sentences in direct discourse in

English and change them to the indirect discourse after both primary and secondary tenses.

796. B. The same situation arises in Latin in connection with the translation of complex sentences. Examine the following Latin sentences:

Direct

1. **Virī quī oppidum dēfendunt fortēs sunt.**

The men who are defending the town are brave.

Indirect

2. **Caesar dicit virōs quī oppidum dēfendant fortēs esse.**

Caesar says that the men who are defending the town are brave.

3. **Caesar dixit virōs quī oppidum dēfenderent fortēs esse.**

Caesar said that the men who were defending the town were brave.

797. In Indirect discourse after a **primary** tense the verb of the dependent clause is put in the **subjunctive** mood in the **present or perfect** tense. If the infinitive of the indirect discourse, even after a primary tense, is perfect, the dependent verb is put in the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive.

In Indirect discourse after a **secondary** tense the verb of the dependent clause is put into the **subjunctive imperfect or pluperfect**. Cf. sentence 3, ¶796.

798. RULE.—**Dependent clauses in Indirect discourse regularly take their verbs in the subjunctive.** If both the verb of saying and the infinitive are primary tenses, the verb of the dependent clause will be in the present or the perfect sub-

THE OBJECT. NOUN CLAUSES

junctive. If either the verb of saying or the infinitive is a secondary tense, the verb of the dependent clause will be in the imperfect or the pluperfect subjunctive.

799. Translate: 1. Dicit montem quem ā Galbā occupārī voluerit ab hostibus tenērī. 2. Arbitrātī sunt illōs quī montem occupāvissent mānsūrōs esse. 3. Caesar negat sē expulisse Gallōs quī ea loca incolerent. 4. Caesar negat sē expellere Gallōs quī ea loca incolant. 5. Caesar negāvit sē expulsūrum esse Gallōs quī ea loca incolerent. 6. Gallī putāvērunt prīncipēs, quod intellegerent quantam calamitātam civitātī intulissent, in Britanniam prōfūgissee. 7. Nunc videō nūllum subsidium fuisse quod submittī posset. 8. Hostēs dixērunt sē ex hominum milibus LX vix ad quīngentōs quī arma ferre possent redāctōs esse. 9. Caesar dixit sē id quod antea fēcisset factūrum esse. 10. Cōgnōvimus hostēs agrōs quōs armīs possēdissent tenēre voluisse.

800. 1. Galba thinks that the soldiers who have occupied the mountain are brave. 2. I perceive that the slaves fled because they were severely punished. 3. They heard that the enemy would cross the bridge which had recently been made. 4. I deny that I praised the oration which was delivered by Cicero. 5. Who thought that the townspeople would seek peace after the town had been taken?

TRANSLATION. JOSHUA STOPS THE SUN

801. Rēgēs coniūctīs vīribus prōgressī sunt adversus Hebraeōs. At Deus dixit “Iosue; nōlī timēre eōs; tua erit victōria.” Iosue igitur māgnō impetū illōs adortus est; quī subitā formīdine correptī fūgērunt. Cum autem diēs in vesperum inclināret, rē nōndum cōfectā, Iosue iūssit sōlem cōsistere et verō stetit sōl et diem prōdūxit dōnec hostium exercitus dēlētus fuisset.

QUIZ.—How many words in Paragraph 810 can you explain and use?

LII. SELECTION FOR TRANSLATION

CAESAR. GALlic WAR. BOOK I, CHAPTERS I-8

802. 1. Gallia est omnis dīvisā in partēs trēs; quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, institūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgis Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit.

Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important; proximīque sunt Germānīs quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotidiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eōs prohibent aut ipsī in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt.

Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentriōnem et orientem sōlem. Aquītānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam pertinent; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs.



VIEW OF THE ROMAN FORUM.

SELECTION FOR TRANSLATION

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorīx. Is, M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōsulibus, rēgnī cupiditatē inductus coniūratiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, et civitātī persuāsit ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent: perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtīus Galliae imperiō potiri.

Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā, lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit.

Hīs rēbus fiēbat ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitimīs bellum inferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī māgnō dolōre adficiēbantur. Prō multitudīne autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis, angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitudinem milia passuum CCXL, in lātitudinem CLXXX patēbant.

3. Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī cōstituērunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximum numerum coemere, sēmentēs quam māximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs civitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōfirmant.

Ad eās rēs cōficiendās Orgetorīx dēligitur. Is sibi lēgatiōnem ad civitātēs suscēpit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō,

Catamantāloedis filiō, Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitatē suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorīgī Haeduō, frātrī Dīviciācī, quī eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitatē obtinēbat ac māximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eīque filiam suam in mātirimōnium dat.

Perfacile factū esse illīs probat cōnāta perficere, propterea quod ipse suae cīvitatīs imperium obtentūrus esset; nōn esse dubium quā tōtīus Galliae plūrimū Helvētiī possent; sē suis cōpiīs suōque exercitū illīs rēgna conciliātūrum cōfirmat. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant et rēgnō occupātō per trēs potentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs tōtīus Galliae sēsē potiri posse spērant.

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suis Orgetorīgē ex vinculis causam dicere coēgērunt; damnātum poenam sequi oportēbat, ut igni cremārētur. Diē cōstitutā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum milia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suos, quōrum māgnū numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē causam diceret, sē ēripuit. Cum cīvitas ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequi cōnārētur, multitudinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est; neque abest suspīcio, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, quā ipse sibi mortem cōscīverit.

5. Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id quod cōstituerant facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suis exeant.

Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut, domum reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent; trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent. Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Lato-brīgīs, finitimīs, utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, oppidīs suīs vicisque exūstīs, ūnā cum eīs proficīcantur; Bōiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrē-iamque oppūgnāverant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adsciscunt.

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent: alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius, proptereā quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nūllis locīs vadō trānsitur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus Genāva.

Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs (quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur) exīstimābant, vel vī coāctūrōs ut per suōs finēs eōs ire paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad pro-fectiōnem comparātīs diem dīcunt quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pisōne, A. Gabiniō cōsulibus.

7. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī, et quam māximīs potest itineribus in Galliam ūlteriōrem contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam māximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ūlteriōre legiō ūna), pontem quī erat ad Genāvam iubet rescindī.

Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvītātis, cuius lēgātiōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant, quī dīcerent, “sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre ut eius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat.”

Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōnsulem occīsum exercitumque eius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimicō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciendī, temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficiō existimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset dum mīlitēs quōs imperāverat convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit sē ad diem dēlīberandum sūmptūrum; sī quid vellent, ad Id. Apr. reverterentur.

8. Intereā eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat militibusque quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram, quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia passuum decem novem mūrū in altitudinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invītō trānsire cōnārentur, prohibēre posset.

LATIN DERIVATIVES

Ubi ea diēs quam cōstituerat cum lēgātis vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare; et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibītūrum ostendit. Helvētiū, eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūntīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōnnumquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnitiōne et militum concursū et tēlis repulsī, hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

LIII. LATIN DERIVATIVES USED IN MODERN STUDIES AND BUSINESS

803.

A. CIVICS

government	committee	patriotism	privilege
family	treaty	pension	exemption
tribe	appointment	petition	eminent
state	president	prohibition	domain
people	cabinet	debt	veto
popular	secretary	registration	power
majority	supreme	obedience	amendment
minority	court	license	pro tempore
representative	criminal	army	candidate
delegate	equity	navy	republican
legislature	appeal	militia	nomination
judiciary	initiative	camp	progressive
executive	referendum	international	nation
constitution	function	ambassador	census
charter	probate	minister	jurisdiction
federal	local	consul	preamble
convention	option	arbitration	vice president
centralized	recorder	union	Magna Charta
party	assessor	colonies	population
civil	auditor	confederacy	judge
liberty	coroner	revenue	ordinance
declaration	municipality	continental	estate
independence	mayor	revolution	responsibility
citizen	council	currency	society
franchise	primary	compromise	campaign
vote	public	senate	commerce
suffrage	opinion	finance	labor
office	naturalization	election	corporation
congress	patents	electoral	department

APPLIED LATIN

trade
immigration
industry
interstate

intrastate
martial law
resolutions
village

indirect tax
money
banks
notes

protection
education
unionism
penal

804.

vacuum
column of water
density
variation
apparatus
volume
valve
quantity
tension
attraction
adhesion
capillary tube
vaporization
concave mirror
convex mirror
press
specific gravity
substance
solids
molecules

B. GENERAL SCIENCE

diffusion of
liquids
saturated solu-
tion
temperature
ebullition
condensation
solidification
liquefaction
latent heat
expansion
collision
compression
friction
inertia
conductor
sensation
properties
composition
mixture

compounds
precipitates
element
metal
combustion
spontaneous
sound
vibration
intensity
velocity
radiation
refraction
spectrum
opaque
transparent
pigment
compass
induction
electricity
alternating
current
motor
arc light
gravitation
mass
momentum
accelerated mo-
tion
pendulum
suspension
curvilinear mo-
tion
centripetal mo-
tion
centrifugal mo-
tion
lever
fulcrum
circumference
intermittent

805.

germination
plant
cell
propagation
terminal bud
annuals
biennials
perennials
tendrils
bulbs
structure
coniferous
Buds:
lateral
axillary
accessory
supernumerary
dormant
adventitious

C. NATURAL SCIENCE

Leaves:
linear
lanceolate
spatulate
ovate
orbicular
inflorescence
solitary flowers
fertilization
follicule
genus
species
spore
fronds
vegetation
folium
grandiflora
perfoliata
longiflorum

biflorum
rotundiflora
versicolor
color
Trees:
pinus, *pine*
picea, *spruce*
abies, *fir*
larix, *larch*
arbor vitae,
cedar
populus, *poplar*
quercus, *oak*
ulmus, *elm*
pyrus, *pear*
prunus, *plum*
acer, *maple*
juniperus, *red*
cedar

papaver, *poppy*
prunus Per-
sica, *peach*
cerasus, *cherry*
castanea,
chestnut
malus, *apple*
vitis, *grape*
viola, *violet*
lilium, *lily*
rosa, *rose*
linum, *flax*
cordate
fascicle
herbaceous
sessile
sterile
truncate
fruit

LATIN DERIVATIVES

insect
hibernate
luxuriant
adaptation

migration
receptacle
corolla
filament

nutrition
crop rotation
fibre
elongated

digestion
grain
cereal
nut

806.

D. MEDICINE

abrasion
abscess
absorbent
acclimate
accretion
acetic
acetylene
acid
adipose
adulterate
aerate
aggravate
alimentary
alveolar
amputate
angina pectoris
aqua
artery
arsenic
asafetida
assimilate
belladonna
bicarbonate
bilious
cancer
capsicum
capsule
carbolic
carbonate
cardiac

cartilage
cerebrum
cervical
claret
clavicle
cologne
coma
constipation
consumption
contagious
corpuscle
corrosive
costal
cranium
crude
curvature
cutaneous
cuticle
decoction
delirium
dementia
demulcent
disinfect
dislocation
dissolve
dorsal
effusion
emollient
essence
fever

fluid
flux
formula
fumigate
gelatin
germicide
hospital
influenza
injurious
inoculate
insanity
intestinal
eruption
jugular
laceration
lacteal
ligament
liniment
lumbar
malaria
malignant
materia medica
medical
mercury
morbid
mortal
muscle
nasal
nerve
nostrum

noxious
occipital
oculist
operation
ossify
palate
parietal
patella
precipitate
pulmonary
pulse
pulverize
rabies
respiration
saleratus
sanatory
sanitary
solution
soporific
spinal
sponge
sterilize
sulphur
tepid
terra
tumor
vaccinate
varicose
vein
vertigo

807.

E. MUSIC

alto
cantata
concert
crescendo
diminuendo

fortissimo
interlude
juvenile
nocturne
octave

pedal
piano
quadrille
quartette
serenade

soprano
tempo
tremulo
tuba
virtuoso

808.

F. RELIGION

abomination
admonition
adoration

advocate
austerity
benediction

beneficent
celestial
ceremonial

clerical
communion
conference

APPLIED LATIN

consecrate	humiliation	officiate	revelation
consolation	immortality	omnipotent	reverent
creed	incarnate	pagan	revival
crucifix	incense	pastoral	ritual
curate	infernal	penance	sacrament
deity	infidel	penitence	sacred
devotion	infinite	piety	sacrifice
dignitary	inheritance	postulant	sacrilege
disciple	inspiration	prelate	secular
dissenter	lucifer	propaganda	serpent
divinity	matin	purgatory	superstition
doctrine	mediator	rationalist	supreme
epistle	miracle	rector	tabernacle
eternal	novice	redemption	unity
gentile	offertory	resurrection	vesper

809.

abolition
abrogate
accession
accessory
accomplice
accusation
actionable
adjudicate
adjutant
administer
admissible
affidavit
affirmation
agency
alias
alibi
alienate
alimony
allegation
antemortem
antenuptial
appeal
appellant
arbitration
arson
assault
assignor
attest
attorney
bail

G. LAW

bailiff	defamatory	indemnity
belligerent	default	indeterminate
brief	demise	inherit
capias	demur	innocent
caveat	deponent	inquest
certiorari	derogative	intervene
chancellor	devise	irrelevant
chancery	digest	jurisdiction
circumstantial	dismissal	justifiable
client	dissolve	lapse
codicil	divorce	larceny
commitment	domicile	legacy
competent	duress	legitimate
complicity	equity	libel
compromise	evidence	litigant
concurrent	exception	magistrate
conditional	execution	martial
confession	executor	minority
consideration	exemplary	mitigate
consummate	exemption	negligence
continuance	extenuating	nullify
contributory	extortion	obligate
conveyance	gratuitous	original
corpus	habeas corpus	priority
covenant	illicit	parole
criminal	immaterial	penal
criminate	implicate	peremptory
deceased	inalienable	perjury
decendent	incendiary	posse
decision	incident	possession

LATIN DERIVATIVES

prejudice
presumptive
probate
procedure
promissory
proviso

quasi
relative
remedy
remitter
rescind
sentence

solicitor
subpoena
summary
supersede
surrogate
tenable

tenement
testify
testimony
title
tort
trespass

810.

agent
annuity
assess
assets
auction
bonus
capital
collateral
commerce
commission
consignee
contract
debit
credit
deficit
surplus
firm
fraud
fund
importer
indemnity
index
legal tender
letter of credit
maturity
minimum
maximum
negotiate
proceeds
par
partner
premium
prime
pro rata
ad valorem
protest
reciprocity
receiver
redemption

H. BUSINESS

restraint of trade
salvage
sample
satisfaction
security
signature
solvent
specie
staple
subcontract
vendor
administrator
article
bona fide
commute
convertible
counterfeit
decimal
delinquent
denomination
deterioration
director
acceptance
accommodation
account
accountant
actuary
assignment
audit
bankruptcy
calendar
cancel
certify
salary
tangible
legible
discount
freight
promissory

acceptor
salable
circular
prudential
advertiser
discretion
competition
transferable
remit
marginal
margin
certificate
percentage
compensate
manifest
infringement
injunction
consolidate
mercenary
proprietary
credentials
assignee
valid
usury
interest
fiduciary
attachment
quotation
successor
dividend
duplicate
extortionate
facsimile
mercantile
millionaire
monetary
notary public
obligation
preferred stock

profit
property
solicit
subsidy
antedate
collect
consignment
consul
corporation
creditor
customer
daily
debenture
debtor
defalcation
deposit
document
dormant
equitable
expedite
extension
finance
fluctuate
foreclosure
liquidate
lucrative
manager
merchandise
money
negotiable
patent
pecuniary
preferential
proposition
salary
signature
transfer
value
commode

APPLIED LATIN

elaborately	crescent	novelty	subtraction
excelsior	facet	pencil	superficial
genuine	focal	portfolio	valley
lustre	focus	portrait	addendum
oriental	lunette	receipt	articulation
partition	monocle	recipe	ascent
perambulator	solitaire	affinity	castellated
refrigerator	spectacles	aggregate	double
renovate	circumference	alluvium	error
rustic	crown	calx	flexure
sectional	decoration	diluvium	foundry
ammunition	design	erosion	furnace
anchor	permanent	ferruginous	isolating
candelabrum	quality	fissure	involve
cereal	rosette	flume	limit
chandeliers	forfeit	semi-professional	machine
differential	album	galena	oblique
dividers	certificate	igneous	orifice

LIV. SYNOPSIS OF FORMS

NOUNS

811. First Declension

SINGULAR	<i>porta, f., a gate</i>	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i> porta, <i>a gate.</i>		<i>portae, gates.</i>
<i>Gen.</i> portae, <i>of a gate.</i>		<i>portārum, of gates.</i>
<i>Dat.</i> portae, <i>to or for a gate.</i>		<i>portis, to or for gates.</i>
<i>Acc.</i> portam, <i>a gate.</i>		<i>portās, gates.</i>
<i>Voc.</i> porta (O) <i>gate.</i>		<i>portae, (O) gates.</i>
<i>Abl.</i> portā, <i>with, etc., a gate.</i>		<i>portis, with, etc., gates.</i>

812. Second Declension

<i>annus, m.</i> <i>a year</i>	<i>dōnum, n.</i> <i>a gift</i>	<i>puer, m.</i> <i>a boy</i>	<i>vir, m.</i> <i>a man</i>	<i>ager, m.</i> <i>a field</i>
SINGULAR				
<i>Nom.</i> annus	dōnum	puer	vir	ager
<i>Gen.</i> annī	dōnī	puerī	virī	agrī
<i>Dat.</i> annō	dōnō	puerō	virō	agrō
<i>Acc.</i> annum	dōnum	puerum	virum	agrum
<i>Voc.</i> anne	dōnum	puer	vir	ager
<i>Abl.</i> annō	dōnō	puerō	virō	agrō
PLURAL				
<i>Nom.</i> annī	dōna	puerī	virī	agrī
<i>Gen.</i> annōrum	dōnōrum	puerōrum	virōrum	agrōrum
<i>Dat.</i> annīs	dōnīs	puerīs	virīs	agrīs
<i>Acc.</i> annōs	dōna	puerōs	virōs	agrōs
<i>Voc.</i> annī	dōna	puerī	virī	agrī
<i>Abl.</i> annīs	dōnīs	puerīs	virīs	agrīs

SYNOPSIS OF FORMS

813.

Third Declension

	cōsul, m. <i>a consul</i>	hiems, f. <i>winter</i>	homō, m. <i>a man</i>	legiō, f. <i>a legion</i>	nōmen, n. <i>a name</i>
SINGULAR					
<i>*N., V.</i>	cōsul	hiems	homō	legiō	nōmen
<i>Gen.</i>	cōsulis	hiemis	hominis	legiōnis	nōminis
<i>Dat.</i>	cōsuli	hiemī	hominī	legiōnī	nōminī
<i>Acc.</i>	cōsulem	hiemem	hominem	legiōnem	nōmen
<i>Abl.</i>	cōsule	hieme	homine	legiōne	nōmine
PLURAL					
<i>Nom.</i>	cōsulēs	hiemēs	hominēs	legiōnēs	nōmina
<i>Gen.</i>	cōsulum	hiemum	hominum	legiōnum	nōminum
<i>Dat.</i>	cōsulibus	hiemibus	hominibus	legiōnibus	nōminibus
<i>Acc.</i>	cōsulēs	hiemēs	hominēs	legiōnēs	nōmina
<i>Abl.</i>	cōsulibus	hiemibus	hominibus	legiōnibus	nōminibus
	amor, m. <i>love</i>	frāter, m. <i>a brother</i>	Caesar, m. <i>Caesar</i>	corpus, n. <i>a body</i>	aetās, f. <i>age</i>
SINGULAR					
<i>N., V.</i>	amor	frāter	Caesar	corpus	aetās
<i>Gen.</i>	amōris	frātris	Caesaris	corporis	aetātis
<i>Dat.</i>	amōrī	frātrī	Caesari	corporī	aetātī
<i>Acc.</i>	amōrem	frātre	Caesarem	corpus	aetātem
<i>Abl.</i>	amōre	frātre	Caesare	corpore	aetāte
PLURAL					
<i>N., V.</i>	amōrēs	frātrēs	Caesarēs	corpora	aetātēs
<i>Gen.</i>	amōrum	frātrum	Caesarum	corporum	aetātum
<i>Dat.</i>	amōribus	frātribus	Caesaribus	corporibus	aetātibus
<i>Acc.</i>	amōrēs	frātrēs	Caesarēs	corpora	aetātēs
<i>Abl.</i>	amōribus	frātribus	Caesaribus	corporibus	aetātibus
	vōx, f. <i>a voice</i>	urbs, f. <i>a city</i>	cīvis, m. <i>a citizen</i>	nūbēs, f. <i>a cloud</i>	sedile, n. <i>a seat</i>
SINGULAR					
<i>N., V.</i>	vōx	urbs	cīvis	nūbēs	sedile
<i>Gen.</i>	vōcis	urbis	cīvis	nūbis	sedilis
<i>Dat.</i>	vōcī	urbī	cīvī	nūbī	sedilī
<i>Acc.</i>	vōcem	urbem	cīvem	nūbem	sedile
<i>Abl.</i>	vōce	urbe	cīve (ī)	nūbe	sedilī
PLURAL					
<i>N., V.</i>	vōcēs	urbēs	cīvēs	nūbēs	sedilia
<i>Gen.</i>	vōcum	urbium	cīvium	nūbium	sedilium
<i>Dat.</i>	vōcibus	urbibus	cīvibus	nūbibus	sedilibus
<i>Acc.</i>	vōcēs	urbēs	cīvēs (is)	nūbēs (is)	sedilia
<i>Abl.</i>	vōcibus	urbibus	cīvibus	nūbibus	sedilibus

* From this point, when the Nominative and Vocative are the same, they will be placed in the same line.

APPLIED LATIN

814. Fourth Declension

Casus, m. domus, f. <i>a chance a house</i>		cornū, n. <i>a horn</i>
		SINGULAR
N., V.	cāsus domus	cornū
Gen.	cāsūs domūs (domī)	cornūs
Dat.	cāsui domui (domō)	cornū
Acc.	cāsum domum	cornū
Abl.	cāsū domū (domō)	cornū

		PLURAL
N., V.	cāsūs domūs	cornua
Gen.	cāsuum domuum (domōrum)	cornuum
Dat.	cāsibus domibus	cornibus
Acc.	cāsūs domūs (domōs)	cornua
Abl.	cāsibus domibus	cornibus

815. Fifth Declension

diēs, m. <i>a day</i>	rēs, f. <i>a thing</i>
diēs	rēs
diēi	rei
diēi	rei
diem	rem
diē	rē
diēs	rēs
diērum	rērum
diēbus	rēbus
diēs	rēs
diēbus	rēbus

ADJECTIVES

816. First and Second Declensions

lātus, wide

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom. lātus	lāta	lātum	lāti	lātae	lāta
Gen. lāti	lātae	lāti	lātōrum	lātārum	lātōrum
Dat. lātō	lātae	lātō	lātīs	lātīs	lātīs
Acc. lātum	lātam	lātum	lātōs	lātās	lāta
Voc. lāte	lāta	lātum	lāti	lātae	lāta
Abl. lātō	lātā	lātō	lātīs	lātīs	lātīs

817.

Third Declension

fēlix, happy

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
N., V. fēlix	fēlix	fēlicēs	fēlicia
Gen. fēlicis	fēlicis	fēlicium	fēlicium
Dat. fēlici	fēlici	fēlicibus	fēlicibus
Acc. fēlicem	fēlix	fēlicēs	fēlicia
Abl. fēlice (ī)	fēlice (ī)	fēlicibus	fēlicibus

recēns, recent

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
N., V. recēns	recēns	recentēs	recentia
Gen. recentis	recentis	recentium	recentium
Dat. recentī	recentī	recentibus	recentibus
Acc. recentem	recēns	recentēs (is)	recentia
Abl. recente (ī)	recente (ī)	recentibus	recentibus

SYNOPSIS OF FORMS

fortis, brave

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
N., V. fortis	forte	fortēs	fortia
Gen. fortis	fortis	fortium	fortium
Dat. fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus
Acc. fortem	forte	fortēs (is)	fortia
Abl. fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus

ācer, swift, keen

SINGULAR			PLURAL			
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N., V.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācri	ācri	ācri	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācre m	ācre m	ācre	ācrēs (is)	ācrēs (is)	ācria
<i>Abl.</i>	ācri	ācri	ācri	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

tōtus, whole, all

SINGULAR			PLURAL			
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	tōtus	tōta	tōtum	tōtī	tōtae	tōta
<i>Gen.</i>	tōtīus	tōtīus	tōtīus	tōtōrum	tōtārum	tōtōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	tōtī	tōtī	tōtī	tōtis	tōtis	tōtis
<i>Acc.</i>	tōtum	tōtam	tōtum	tōtōs	tōtās	tōta
<i>Voc.</i>	tōte	tōta	tōtum	tōtī	tōtae	tōta
<i>Abl.</i>	tōtō	tōtā	tōtō	tōtis	tōtis	tōtis

818.

Comparative Adjectives

fortior, braver

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
N., V. fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
Gen. fortiōris	fortiōris	fortiōrum	fortiōrum
Dat. fortiōrī	fortiōrī	fortiōribus	fortiōribus
Acc. fortiōrem	fortius	fortiōrēs (is)	fortiōra
Abl. fortiōre (i)	fortiōre (i)	fortiōribus	fortiōribus

819.

Special Adjectives

plūs, more

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
N., V. ———	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
Gen. ———	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
Dat. ———	———	plūribus	plūribus
Acc. ———	plūs	plūrēs (is)	plūra
Abl. ———	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

mille, thousand

SINGULAR	PLURAL
mille	milīa
———	milium
———	milibus
mille	milīa
———	milibus

APPLIED LATIN

	<i>M.</i>	<i>duo, two</i>		<i>trēs, three</i>
		<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>
<i>N., V.</i>	duo	duae	duo	trēs
<i>Gen.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium
<i>Dat.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus
<i>Acc.</i>	duōs	duās	duo	trēs (trīs)
<i>Abl.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus

820.

Regular Comparison of Adjectives

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
lātus, <i>wide</i>	lātior, lātius	lātissimus
fēlix, <i>happy</i>	fēlicior, fēlicius	fēlicissimus
recēns, <i>recent</i>	recentior, recentius	recentissimus
fortis, <i>brave</i>	fortior, fortius	fortissimus
ācer, <i>sharp</i>	ācrior, ācius	ācerrimus

Irregular Comparison of Adjectives

facilis, <i>easy</i>	facilior, facilius	facillimus
similis, <i>similar</i>	similior, similius	simillimus
bonus, <i>good</i>	melior, melius	optimus
malus, <i>bad</i>	pēior, pēius	pessimus
māgnus, <i>great</i>	māior, māius	māximus
parvus, <i>small</i>	minor, minus	minimus
multus, <i>much</i>	——, plūs	plūrimus
exterus, <i>outward</i>	exterior, exterius	extrēmus (extimus)
inferus, <i>below</i>	inferior, inferius	īnfirmus (īmus)
posterus, <i>following</i>	posterior, posterius	postrēmus (postumus)
superus, <i>above</i>	superior, superius	suprēmus (summus)
in, <i>in, within</i>	interior, interius, inner	intimus
prō, <i>before</i>	prior, prius, former	prīmus
prope, <i>near</i>	propior, propius, nearer	proximus
ultrā, <i>beyond</i>	ūterior, ūterius, farther	ūltimus

821.

ADVERBS

Regular Comparison

clārē, <i>clearly</i>	clārius	clārissimē
fortiter, <i>easily</i>	fortius	fortissimē
recenter, <i>recently</i>	recentius	recentissimē
fēliciter, <i>happily</i>	fēlicius	fēlicissimē
ācritē, <i>sharply</i>	ācius	ācerrimē

Irregular Comparison

bene, <i>well</i>	melius	optimē
male, <i>ill</i>	pēius	pessimē
māgnopere, <i>greatly</i>	magis	māximē
multum, <i>much</i>	plūs	plūrimum
parum, <i>little</i>	minus	minimē
saepe, <i>often</i>	saepius	saeppissimē
diū, <i>long</i>	diūtius	diūtissimē

SYNOPSIS OF FORMS

822.

Numerals

SYMBOL	CARDINAL	ORDINAL	DISTRIBUTIVE
I	ūnus, -a, -um, <i>one</i>	primus, -a, -um, <i>first</i>	singulī, -ae, -a, <i>one each (at a time)</i>
II	duo, -ae, -o, <i>two</i>	secundus, -a, -um, <i>second</i>	
III	trēs, tria, <i>three</i>	tertius, <i>third</i>	binī, -ae, -a, <i>two each</i>
IV	quattuor, <i>four</i>	quārtus, <i>fourth</i>	
V	quīnque, <i>five</i>	quīntus, <i>fifth</i>	ternī, -ae, -a, <i>three each</i>
VI	sex	sextus	
VII	septum	septimus	quaternī, -ae, -a, <i>four each</i>
VIII	octō	octāvus	
IX	novem	nōnus	quinī, -ae, -a, <i>five each</i>
X	decem	decimus	
XI	ūndecim	ūndecimus	
XII	duodecim	duodecimus	
XIII	tredecim	tertius decimus	OTHER NUMERALS
XIV	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus	semel, <i>once</i>
XV	quīndecim	quīntus decimus	bis, <i>twice</i>
XVI	sēdecim	sextus decimus	ter, <i>thrice</i>
XVII	septendecim	septimus decimus	quater, <i>four times</i>
XVIII	duodēvigintī	duodēvicēsimum	
XIX	ūndēvigintī	ūndēvicēsimum	simplex, <i>single, one fold</i>
XX	vīgintī	vicēsimum	duplex, <i>double, two fold</i>
XXI	vīgintī ūnus	vicēsimum primus	triplex, <i>triple, three fold</i>
XXX	ūnus et vīgintī	ūnus et vicēsimum	quadruplex, <i>four fold</i>
XL	trīgintā	tricēsimum	quincuplex, <i>five fold</i>
L	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimum	
LX	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimum	
LXX	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimum	
LXXX	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimum	
XC	octōgintā	octōgēsimum	
C	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimum	
CC	centum	centēsimum	
CCC	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimum	
CCCC	trecentī, -ae, -a	trecentēsimum	
D	quādringentī, -ae, -a	quādringentēsimum	
DC	quīngentī, -ae, -a	quīngentēsimum	
DCC	sēscentī, -ae, -a	sēscentēsimum	
DCCC	septingentī, -ae, -a	septingentēsimum	
CM	octingentī, -ae, -a	octingentēsimum	
M	nōngentī, -ae, -a	nōngentēsimum	
	mille	millēsimum	

APPLIED LATIN

823.

PRONOUNS

			PERSONAL tū, thou		suī, of himself	
	ego, I					
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N., V.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs		
Gen.	meī	nostrum (nostrī)	tui	vestrum (vestrī)	sui	sui
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē	sē
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē	sē

Demonstrative Pronouns

			hic, this			
	SINGULAR					
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
	hic	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
	huic	huic	huic	hīs	his	hīs
	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	his	hīs

			ille, that			
	SINGULAR					
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
	ille	illa	illud	illi	illae	illa
	illius	illius	illius	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
	illi	illī	illī	illis	illis	illis
	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
	illō	illā	illō	illis	illis	illis

			is, this, that			
	SINGULAR					
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
	is	ea	id	eī (iī)	eae	ea
	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
	eī	eī	eī	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)
	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
	eō	eā	eō	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)

			idem, same			
	SINGULAR					
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
	idem	eadem	idem	eīdem (iīdem)	eaedem	eadem
	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem (iīdem)	eīdem (iīdem)	eīdem (iīdem)
	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīdem (iīdem)	eīdem (iīdem)	eīdem (iīdem)

SYNOPSIS OF FORMS

ipse, self

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsi	ipsae	ipsa
ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsorum	ipsarum	ipsorum
ipsi	ipsi	ipsi	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsos	ipsas	ipsa
ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

Interrogative

quis, who, which, what

SINGULAR		N.	In plural declined like the Relative
M. and F.			
quis		quid	
cuius		cuius	
cui		cui	
quem		quid	
quō		quō	

Relative

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
qui	quae	quod	qui	quae	quae
cuius	cuius	cuius	quorum	quarum	quorum
cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
quem	quam	quod	quos	quas	quae
quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

Indefinite

quis, any, any one

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
quis (qui)	quae (qua)	quid (quod)	qui	quae	quae (qua)
cuius	cuius	cuius	quorum	quarum	quorum
cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
quem	quam	quid (quod)	quos	quas	quae (qua)
quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

aliquis, some, some one

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
aliquis (aliqui)	aliqua	aliquid (aliquid)	aliqui	aliquae	aliqua
alicuius	alicuius	alicuius	aliquorum	aliquarum	aliquorum
alicui	alicui	alicui	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
aliquem	aliquam	aliquid (aliquid)	aliquos	aliquas	aliqua
aliquō	aliquā	aliquō	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

824. CONJUGATION OF THE ENGLISH VERB FIND

Active Voice—Indicative Mood

PRESENT

<i>Simple</i>	<i>Progressive</i>	<i>Emphatic</i>
I find	I am finding	I do find
You find	You are finding	You do find
He finds	He is finding	He does find
We find	We are finding	We do find
You find	You are finding	You do find
They find	They are finding	They do find

PAST

<i>Simple</i>	<i>Progressive</i>	<i>Emphatic</i>
I found	I was finding	I did find
You found	You were finding	You did find
He found	He was finding	He did find
We found	We were finding	We did find
You found	You were finding	You did find
They found	They were finding	They did find

FUTURE

<i>Simple</i>	<i>Volitional</i>
I shall find	I will find
You will find	You shall find
He will find	He shall find
We shall find	We will find
You will find	You shall find
They will find	They shall find
<i>Progressive</i>	<i>Progressive</i>
I shall be finding, etc.	I will be finding, etc.

PERFECT

<i>Simple</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>	<i>Future Perfect</i>
I have found	I had found	I shall have found
You have found	You had found	You will have found
He has found	He had found	He will have found
We have found	We had found	We shall have found
You have found	You had found	You will have found
They have found	They had found	They will have found
<i>Progressive</i>	<i>Progressive</i>	<i>Progressive</i>
I have been finding, etc.	I had been finding, etc.	I shall have been finding, etc.

SYNOPSIS OF FORMS

Subjunctive Mood

PRESENT

<i>Simple</i>	<i>Progressive</i>	<i>Emphatic</i>
if) I, you, he, find	if) I, you, he, be finding	if) I, you, he, do find
if) we, you, they, find	if) we, you, they, be finding	if) we, you, they, do find

PAST

<i>Simple</i>	<i>Progressive</i>	<i>Emphatic</i>
if) I, you, he, found	if) I, you, he, were finding	if) I, you, he, did find
if) we, you, they, found	if) we, you, they, were finding	if) we, you, they, did find

Potential Mood

PRESENT

<i>Simple</i>
I, you, he, may find
We, you, they, may find

PAST

<i>Simple</i>
I, you, he, might find
We, you, they, might find

Progressive

I, you, he, may be finding
We, you, they, may be finding

Progressive

I, you, he, might be finding
We, you, they, might be finding

PERFECT

<i>Simple</i>
I, you, he, may have found
We, you, they, may have found

PLUPERFECT

<i>Simple</i>
I, you, he, might have found
We, you, they, might have found

Progressive

I, you, he, may have been finding
We, you, they, may have been finding

Progressive

I, you, he, might have been finding
We, you, they, might have been finding

Imperative Mood

PRESENT TENSE
find (thou, you)
find (ye, you)

Infinitives

PRESENT
to find
to be finding

Participles

PRESENT
finding

PERFECT

to have found
to have been finding

PERFECT

having found
having been finding

APPLIED LATIN

Gerunds

PRESENT
finding

PERFECT
having found
having been finding

Passive Voice—Indicative Mood

PRESENT (*Simple*)

I am found
You are found
He is found
We are found
You are found
They are found

PAST (*Simple*)

I was found
You were found
He was found
We were found
You were found
They were found

FUTURE (*Simple*)

I shall be found, etc.

Volitional

I will be found, etc.

Progressive

I am being found, etc.

Progressive

I was being found, etc.

PERFECT

I have been found, etc.

PLUPERFECT

I had been found,
etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have been found,
etc.

Subjunctive Mood

PRESENT

if) I be found, etc.

PAST

if) I were found, etc.

Progressive

if) I were being found

Potential Mood

PRESENT

I may be found, etc.

PAST

I might be found,
etc.

PERFECT

I may have been found,
etc.

PLUPERFECT

I might have been
found, etc.

Imperative Mood

PRESENT

be found

Infinitives

PRESENT

to be found

PERFECT

to have been found

Participles

PRESENT

being found

PERFECT

having been found

PAST

found

SYNOPSIS OF FORMS

825. FIRST CONJUGATION. LAUDŌ. VERBS IN Ā

Principal Parts, laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātus

Indicative

ACTIVE		PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	laudō, laudās, laudat, etc. <i>I praise, am praising, do praise.</i>	laudor, laudāris, laudātur, etc. <i>I am praised, am being praised.</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	laudābam, laudābās, laudābat, etc. <i>I was praising, praised, did praise.</i>	laudābar, laudābāris, laudābātur, etc. <i>I was praised, was being praised.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	laudābō, laudābis, laudābit, etc. <i>I shall praise.</i>	laudābor, laudāberis, laudābitur, etc. <i>I shall be praised.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	laudāvī, laudāvistī, laudāvit, etc. <i>I have praised.</i>	laudātus, -a, -um, sum, es, est, etc. <i>I have been praised, was praised.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	laudāveram, laudāverās, laudāverat, etc. <i>I had praised.</i>	laudātus, -a, -um, eram, erās, erat, etc. <i>I had been praised.</i>
<i>Futp.</i>	laudāverō, laudāveris, laudāverit, etc. <i>I shall have praised.</i>	laudātus, -a, -um, erō, eris, erit, etc. <i>I shall have been praised.</i>

Active—Subjunctive

<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>
laudem	laudārem	laudāverim	laudāvissem
laudēs	laudārēs	laudāveris	laudāvissēs
laudet	laudāret	laudāverit	laudāvisset
laudēmus	laudārēmus	laudāverimus	laudāvissēmus
laudētis	laudārētis	laudāveritis	laudāvissētis
laudent	laudārent	laudāverint	laudāvissent

Passive—Subjunctive

<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>
lauder	laudārer	laudātus, -a, -um, sim, sit, sis	laudātus, -a, -um, essem, essēs, esset
laudēris	laudārēris		
laudētur	laudārētur		
laudēmur	laudārēmur	laudātī, -ae, -a, simus, sītis, sint	laudātī, ae, -a, essemus, essētis, essent
laudēmini	laudārēmini		
laudentur	laudārentur		

APPLIED LATIN

Imperative

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
<i>Present</i>	<i>Future</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Future</i>
2. laudā <i>praise thou</i>	2. laudātō, <i>thou shalt praise</i>	2. laudāre, <i>be thou praised</i>	2. laudātor, <i>thou shalt be praised</i>
	3. laudātō, <i>he shall praise</i>		3. laudātor, <i>he shall be praised</i>
2. laudāte, <i>praise ye</i>	2. laudātōte, <i>you shall praise</i>	2. laudāmini, <i>be ye praised</i>	
	3. laudantō, <i>they shall praise</i>		3. laudantor, <i>they shall be praised</i>

Infinitive

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i> laudāre, <i>to praise</i>	laudārī, <i>to be praised</i>
<i>Perf.</i> laudāvisse, <i>to have praised</i>	laudātus, -a, -um, esse, <i>to have been praised</i>
<i>Fut.</i> laudātūrus, -a, -um, esse, <i>to be about to praise</i>	laudātum irī, <i>to be about to be praised</i>

Participle

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i> laudāns, -antis, <i>praising</i>	<i>Perf.</i> laudātus, -a, -um, <i>having been praised</i>
<i>Fut.</i> laudātūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to praise</i>	

Gerund

Nom. —

Gen. laudandī, *of praising*

Dat. laudandō, *to or for praising*

Acc. laudandum, *praising*

Abl. laudandō, *by praising*

Gerundive

laudandus, -a, -um, *to be loved*

Supine

Acc. laudātum, *to praise*

Abl. laudātū, *in praising*

826. SECOND CONJUGATION. HABEŌ. VERBS IN Ē

Principal Parts, habēō, habēre, habuī, habitus

Indicative

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i> habēō, habēs, habet, etc.	habeor, habēris, habētur, etc.
<i>Imp.</i> habēbam, habēbās, habēbat, etc.	habēbar, habēbāris, habēbātur, etc.
<i>Fut.</i> habēbō, habēbis, habēbit, etc.	habēbor, habēberis, habēbitur, etc.
<i>Perf.</i> habuī, habuisti, habuit, etc.	habitus, -a, -um, sum, es, est, etc.
<i>Plup.</i> habueram, habuerās, habuerat, etc.	habitus, -a, -um, eram, erās, erat, etc.
<i>Futp.</i> habuerō, habueris, habuerit, etc.	habitus, -a, -um, erō, eris, erit, etc.

SYNOPSIS OF FORMS

Active—Subjunctive

<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>
habeam	habērem	habuerim	habuissē
habeās	habērēs	habueris	habuissēs
habeat	habēret	habuerit	habuisset
habeāmus	habērēmus	habuerimus	habuissēmus
habeātis	habērētis	habueritis	habuissētis
habeant	habērent	habuerint	habuissent

Passive—Subjunctive

<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>
habear	habērer	habitus, -a, -um,	habitus, -a, -um,
habeāris	habērēris	sim, sis, sit	essem, essēs,
habeātur	habērētur		esset
habeāmur	habērēmur	habitū, -ae, -a,	habitū, -ae, -a, es-
habeāmini	habērēmini	sīmus, sitis,	sēmus, essētis,
habeantur	habērentur	sint	essent

Imperative

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
	<i>Future</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Future</i>
2. habē	2. habētō	2. habēre	2. habētor
	3. habētō		3. habētor
2. habēte	2. habētōte	2. habēmini	
	3. habentō		3. habentor

Infinitive

<i>Pres.</i> habēre	<i>Pres.</i> habērī
<i>Perf.</i> habuisse	<i>Perf.</i> habitus, -a, -um, esse
<i>Fut.</i> habitūrus, -a, -um, esse	<i>Fut.</i> habitum irī

Participle

<i>Pres.</i> habēns, entis	<i>Perf.</i> habitus, -a, -um
<i>Fut.</i> habitūrus, -a, -um	

Gerund

<i>Nom.</i> ———
<i>Gen.</i> habendī
<i>Dat.</i> habendō
<i>Acc.</i> habendum
<i>Abl.</i> habendō

Gerundive

habendus, -a, -um

Supine

<i>Acc.</i> habitum
<i>Abl.</i> habitū

NOTE: Supply the meanings of the tenses, etc., from the conjugation of *laudō*.

827. THIRD CONJUGATION. *DŪCŌ*. VERBS IN E
Principal Parts, *dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus*

Indicative

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

<i>Pres.</i> <i>dūcō, dūcis, dūcit, etc.</i>	<i>dūcor, dūceris, dūcitur, etc.</i>
<i>Imp.</i> <i>dūcēbam, dūcēbās, dūcēbat, etc.</i>	<i>dūcēbar, dūcēbāris, dūcēbātur, etc.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> <i>dūcam, dūcēs, dūcet, etc.</i>	<i>dūcar, dūcēris, dūcētur, etc.</i>
<i>Perf.</i> <i>dūxī, dūxistī, dūxit, etc.</i>	<i>ductus, -a, -um, sum, es, est, etc.</i>
<i>Plup.</i> <i>dūxeram, dūxerās, dūxerat, etc.</i>	<i>ductus, -a, -um, eram, erās, erat, etc.</i>
<i>Futp.</i> <i>dūxerō, dūxeris, dūxerit, etc.</i>	<i>ductus, -a, -um, erō, eris, erit, etc.</i>

Active—Subjunctive

<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>
<i>dūcam</i>	<i>dūcerem</i>	<i>dūxerim</i>	<i>dūxissem</i>
<i>dūcās</i>	<i>dūcerēs</i>	<i>dūxeris</i>	<i>dūxissēs</i>
<i>dūcat</i>	<i>dūceret</i>	<i>dūxerit</i>	<i>dūxisset</i>
<i>dūcāmus</i>	<i>dūcerēmus</i>	<i>dūxerimus</i>	<i>dūxissēmus</i>
<i>dūcātis</i>	<i>dūcerētis</i>	<i>dūxeritis</i>	<i>dūxissētis</i>
<i>dūcant</i>	<i>dūcerent</i>	<i>dūxerint</i>	<i>dūxissent</i>

Passive—Subjunctive

<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>
<i>dūcar</i>	<i>dūcerer</i>	<i>ductus, -a, -um,</i>	<i>ductus, -a, -um,</i>
<i>dūcāris</i>	<i>dūcerēris</i>	<i>sim, sis, sit</i>	<i>essem, essēs,</i>
<i>dūcātur</i>	<i>dūcerētur</i>		<i>esset</i>
<i>dūcāmur</i>	<i>dūcerēmur</i>	<i>ductī, -ae, -a,</i>	<i>ductī, -ae, -a,</i>
<i>dūcāminī</i>	<i>dūcerēminī</i>	<i>sīmus, sītis,</i>	<i>essēmus, essētis,</i>
<i>dūcantur</i>	<i>dūcerentur</i>	<i>sint</i>	<i>essent</i>

Imperative

<i>Present</i>	<i>Future</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Future</i>
2. <i>dūc*</i>	2. <i>dūcitō</i>	2. <i>dūcere</i>	2. <i>dūcitor</i>
	3. <i>dūcitō</i>		3. <i>dūcitor</i>
2. <i>dūcite</i>	2. <i>dūcitōte</i>	2. <i>dūciminī</i>	
	3. <i>dūcunto</i>		3. <i>dūcuntor</i>

Infinitive

<i>Pres.</i> <i>dūcere</i>	<i>Pres.</i> <i>dūcī</i>
<i>Perf.</i> <i>dūxisse</i>	<i>Perf.</i> <i>ductus, -a, -um, esse</i>
<i>Fut.</i> <i>ductūrus, -a, -um, esse</i>	<i>Fut.</i> <i>ductum irī</i>

* Regular verbs end in this form in -e, *dūcō* makes an irregular imperative form *dūc*.

SYNOPSIS OF FORMS

ACTIVE		Participle	PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	dūcēns, -entis		<i>Perf.</i> ductus, -a, -um
<i>Fut.</i>	ductūrus, -a, -um		
Gerund		Gerundive	
<i>Nom.</i>	———		dūcendus, -a, -um
<i>Gen.</i>	dūcendi		
<i>Dat.</i>	dūcendō	Supine	
<i>Acc.</i>	dūcendum	<i>Acc.</i> ductum	
<i>Abl.</i>	dūcendō	<i>Abl.</i> ductū	

828. THIRD CONJUGATION. CAPIŌ. VERBS IN IŌ

Principal Parts, capiō, capere, cēpī, captus

ACTIVE		Indicative	PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	capiō, capis, capit, etc.		capior, caperis, capitur, etc.
<i>Imp.</i>	capiēbam, capiēbās, capiēbat, etc.	capiēbar, capiēbāris, capiēbātur, etc.	
<i>Fut.</i>	capiam, capiēs, capiet, etc.		capiar, capiēris, capiētur, etc.
<i>Perf.</i>	cēpī, cēpistī, cēpit, etc.		captus, -a, -um, sum, es, est, etc.
<i>Plup.</i>	cēperam, cēperās, cēperat, etc.		captus, -a, -um, eram, erās, erat, etc.
<i>Futp.</i>	cēperō, cēperis, ceperit, etc.		captus, -a, -um, erō, eris, erit, etc.

Active—Subjunctive

<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>
capiam	caperem	cēperim	cēpissem
capiās	caperēs	cēperis	cēpissēs
capiat	caperet	cēperit	cēpisset
capiāmus	caperēmus	cēperimus	cēpissēmus
capiātis	caperētis	cēperitis	cēpissētis
capiant	caperent	cēperint	cēpissent

Passive—Subjunctive

<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>
capiar	caperer	captus, -a, -um,	captus, -a, -um,
capiāris	caperēris	sim, sis, sit	essem, essēs,
capiātur	caperētur		esset
capiāmur	caperēmur	captī, -ae, -a,	captī, -ae, -a, es-
capiāmini	caperēmini	simus, sitis,	sēmus, essētis,
capiantur	caperentur	sint	essent

Imperative

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
<i>Present</i>	<i>Future</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Future</i>
2. cape	2. capitō	2. capere	2. capitor
	3. capitō		3. capitor
2. capite	2. capitōte	2. capimini	
	3. capiuntō		3. capiuntor

APPLIED LATIN

ACTIVE	Infinitive	PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i> capere	<i>Pres.</i> capī	
<i>Perf.</i> cēpisse	<i>Perf.</i> captus, -a, -um, esse	
<i>Fut.</i> captūrus, -a, -um, esse	<i>Fut.</i> captum irī	

	Participle
<i>Pres.</i> capiēns, -entis	<i>Perf.</i> captus, -a, -um
<i>Fut.</i> captūrus, -a, -um	

Gerund	Gerundive
<i>Nom.</i> ———	capiendus, -a, -um
<i>Gen.</i> capiendī	
<i>Dat.</i> capiendō	
<i>Acc.</i> capiendum	<i>Supine</i>
<i>Abl.</i> capiendō	<i>Acc.</i> captum
	<i>Abl.</i> captū

829. FOURTH CONJUGATION. AUDIŌ. VERBS IN Ī

Principal Parts, audiō, audire, audīvī, audītus

	ACTIVE	INDICATIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	audiō, audis, audit, etc.	audior, audiris, audītur, etc.	
<i>Imp.</i>	audiēbam, audiēbās, audiēbat, etc.	audiēbar, audiēbāris, audiēbātur, etc.	
<i>Fut.</i>	audiam, audiēs, audiet, etc.	audiar, audiēris, audiētur, etc.	
<i>Perf.</i>	audīvī, audivistī, audivit, etc.	audītus, -a, -um, sum, es, est, etc.	
<i>Plup.</i>	audīveram, audīverās, audīverat, etc.	audītus, -a, -um, eram, erās, erat, etc.	
<i>Futp.</i>	audīverō, audīveris, audīverit, etc.	audītus, -a, -um, erō, eris, erit, etc.	

	Active—Subjunctive		
<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>
audiam	audīrem	audīverim	audīvissem
audiās	audīrēs	audīveris	audīvissēs
audiat	audīret	audīverit	audīvisset
audiāmus	audīrēmus	audīverimus	audīvissēmus
audiātis	audīrētis	audīveritis	audīvissētis
audiant	audīrent	audīverint	audīvissent

	Passive—Subjunctive		
<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>
audiar	audīrer	audītus, -a, -um, sim, sīs, sit	audītus, -a, -um, essem, essēs, esset
audiāris	audīrēris		
audiātur	audīrētur	audītī, -ae, -a, sīmus, sītis, sint	audītī, -ae, -a, essemus, essētis, essent
audiāmur	audīrēmur		
audiāmini	audīrēmini		
audiantur	audīrentur		

SYNOPSIS OF FORMS

ACTIVE		Imperative	PASSIVE	
<i>Present</i>	<i>Future</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Future</i>	
2. audī	2. audītō	2. audīre	2. audītor	
	3. audītō		3. audītor	
2. audīte	2. audītōte	2. audīminī		
	3. audiunto		3. audiuntor	
Infinitive				
<i>Pres.</i> audīre		<i>Pres.</i> audīri		
<i>Perf.</i> audīvisse		<i>Perf.</i> audītus, -a, -um, esse		
<i>Fut.</i> audītūrus, -a, -um, esse		<i>Fut.</i> audītum iri		
Participle				
<i>Pres.</i> audiēns, -entis		<i>Perf.</i> audītus, -a, -um		
<i>Fut.</i> audītūrus, -a, -um				
Gerund		Gerundive		
<i>Nom.</i> ———		audiendus, -a, -um		
<i>Gen.</i> audiendi				
<i>Dat.</i> audiendō	Supine			
<i>Acc.</i> audiendum	<i>Acc.</i> audītum			
<i>Abl.</i> audiendō	<i>Abl.</i> audītū			

830. THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS

ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC		PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC	
<i>Pres.</i> laudātūrus sum,		laudandus sum,	
<i>I am about to praise</i>		<i>I must be praised</i>	
<i>Imp.</i> laudātūrus eram,		laudandus eram,	
<i>I was about to praise</i>		<i>I had to be praised</i>	
<i>Fut.</i> laudātūrus erō,		laudandus erō,	
<i>I shall be about to praise</i>		<i>I shall have to be praised</i>	
<i>Perf.</i> laudātūrus fui,		laudandus fui,	
<i>I have been about to praise</i>		<i>I have had to be praised</i>	
<i>Plup.</i> laudātūrus fueram,		laudandus fueram,	
<i>I had been about to praise</i>		<i>I had had to be praised</i>	
<i>Futp.</i> laudātūrus fuerō,		laudandus fuerō,	
<i>I shall have been about to praise</i>		<i>I shall have had to be praised</i>	

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
<i>Pres.</i> laudātūrus sim		laudandus sim	
<i>Imp.</i> laudātūrus essem		laudandus essem	
<i>Perf.</i> laudātūrus fuero		laudandus fuero	
<i>Plup.</i> laudātūrus fuisset		laudandus fuisset	

Infinitive	
<i>Pres.</i> laudātūrus esse	laudandus esse
<i>Fut.</i> laudātūrus fuisse	laudandus fuisse

APPLIED LATIN

In the periphrastic conjugations there are no forms of the imperative, participles, gerund, gerundive, or supine.

The periphrastic conjugations of the other regular verbs are:

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
habitūrus sum, etc., <i>I am about to have</i>	habendus sum, etc., <i>I must be had (held)</i>
ductūrus sum, etc., <i>I am about to lead</i>	dūcendus sum, etc., <i>I must be led</i>
captūrus sum, etc., <i>I am about to take</i>	capiendus sum, etc., <i>I must be taken</i>
auditūrus sum, etc., <i>I am about to hear</i>	audiendus sum, etc., <i>I must be heard</i>

831. THE VERB SUM

Principal Parts, sum, esse, fui, —, to be

Indicative

<i>Pres.</i> sum, es, est, etc., <i>I am, etc.</i>	<i>Perf.</i> fui, fuisti, fuit, etc., <i>I have been, etc.</i>
<i>Imp.</i> eram, erās, erat, etc., <i>I was, etc.</i>	<i>Plup.</i> fueram, fuerās, fuerat, etc., <i>I had been, etc.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> erō, eris, erit, etc., <i>I shall be, etc.</i>	<i>Futp.</i> fuerō, fueris, fuerit, etc., <i>I shall have been, etc.</i>

Subjunctive

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Imp.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Plup.</i>
sim	essem	fuerim	fuissem
sīs	essēs	fueris	fuissēs
sit	esset	fuerit	fuisset
simus	essēmus	fuerimus	fuissēmus
sītis	essētis	fueritis	fuissētis
sint	essent	fuerint	fuissent

Imperative

<i>Pres.</i> es, be (thou)	<i>Fut.</i> estō, thou shalt be estō, he shall be	<i>Pres.</i> esse, to be	<i>Perf.</i> fuisse, to have been
este, be (ye)	estōte, ye shall be suntō, they shall be	<i>Fut.</i> futūrus, -a, -um, esse, to be about to be	

Infinitive

Participle

Fut. futūrus, -a, -um, about to be

SYNOPSIS OF FORMS

832. THE VERB POSSUM

Principal Parts, possum, posse, potuī, —, to be able

Indicative

<i>Pres.</i> possum, <i>I am able, I can</i>	<i>Perf.</i> potuī, <i>I have been able, could</i>
potes, <i>you are able, you can</i>	potuisti, <i>you have been able, could</i>
potest, <i>he (she, it) is able, can</i>	potuit, <i>he (she, it) has been able, could</i>
possumus, <i>we are able, we can</i>	potuimus, <i>we have been able, could</i>
potestis, <i>you are able, you can</i>	potuistis, <i>you have been able, could</i>
possunt, <i>they are able, they can</i>	potuērunt, <i>they have been able, could</i>
<i>Imp.</i> poteram, poterās, poterat, etc., <i>I was able (could), etc.</i>	<i>Plup.</i> potueram, potuerās, potuerat, etc., <i>I had been able, etc.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> poterō, poteris, poterit, etc., <i>I shall be able, etc.</i>	<i>Futp.</i> potuerō, potueris, potuerit, <i>I shall have been able, etc.</i>

Subjunctive

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Imp.</i>	<i>Plup.</i>
possim	potuerim	possem	potuissem
possīs	potueris	possēs	potuissēs
possit	potuerit	posset	potuisset
possimus	potuerimus	possēmus	potuissēmus
possītis	potueritis	possētis	potuissētis
possint	potuerint	possent	potuissent

Infinitive

<i>Pres.</i> posse, to be able
<i>Perf.</i> potuisse, to have been able

Participle

<i>Pres.</i> potēns, -entis, (adjective), powerful

833. THE IRREGULAR VERBS, VOLŌ, NŌLŌ, MĀLŌ

Principal Parts: volō, velle, voluī, —, to wish
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, to be unwilling
mālō, mālle, māluī, —, to prefer

Indicative

<i>Pres.</i> volō	nōlō	mālō
vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
vult	nōn vult	māvult
volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
volunt	nōlunt	mālunt

APPLIED LATIN

<i>Imp.</i> volēbam, -bās, etc.	nōlēbam, -bās, etc.	mālēbam, -bās, etc.
<i>Fut.</i> volam, -ēs, etc.	nōlam, -ēs, etc.	mālam, -ēs, etc.
<i>Perf.</i> voluī, -istī, etc.	nōluī, -istī, etc.	māluī, -istī, etc.
<i>Plub.</i> volueram, -erās, etc.	nōlueram, -erās, etc.	mālueram, -erās, etc.
<i>Futp.</i> voluerō, -eris, etc.	nōluerō, -eris, etc.	māluerō, -eris, etc.

Subjunctive

<i>Pres.</i> velim	nōlim	mālim
velis	nōlis	mālis
velit	nōlit	mālit
velimus	nōlimus	mālimus
velitis	nōlitis	mālitis
velint	nōlint	mālint
<i>Imp.</i> vellem	nōllem	māllem
vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
vellet	nōllet	māllet
vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
vellent	nōllent	māllent
<i>Perf.</i> voluerim, -eris, etc.	nōluerim, -eris, etc.	māluerim, -eris, etc.
<i>Plup.</i> voluissem, -ēs, etc.	nōluissem, -ēs, etc.	māluissem, -ēs, etc.

Imperative

<i>Pres.</i> ———	nōli	———
	nōlite	
<i>Fut.</i> ———	nōlitō	———
	nōlitō	
	nōlitōte	
	nōluntō	

Infinitive

<i>Pres.</i> velle	nōlle	mālle
<i>Perf.</i> voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

Participle

<i>Pres.</i> volēns, -entis	nōlēns, -entis	———
-----------------------------	----------------	-----

834.

IMPERSONAL VERB

Principal Parts, licet, licēre, licuit (*licitum est*), *it is allowed*

Indicative	Subjunctive	Infinitive
<i>Pres.</i> licet	<i>Pres.</i> liceat	<i>Pres.</i> licēre
<i>Imp.</i> licēbat	<i>Imp.</i> licēret	<i>Perf.</i> licuisset
<i>Fut.</i> licēbit	<i>Perf.</i> licuerit	<i>Fut.</i> licitūrum esse
<i>Perf.</i> licuit (<i>licitum est</i>)	<i>Plup.</i> licuisset	
<i>Plup.</i> licuerat		
<i>Futp.</i> licuerit		

DEPONENT VERBS

cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum, *to try, attempt*
 vereor, verērī, veritus sum, *to fear*
 sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *to follow*
 patior, patī, passus sum, *to suffer, bear*
 potior, potīrī, potītus sum, *to get possession of*

Indicative

Pres. cōnor, *I try*
 cōnārīs, *you try*
 cōnātur, *he (she, it) tries*
 cōnāmur, *we try*
 cōnāmini, *you try*
 cōnantur, *they try*

Imp. cōnābar, *I was trying*

Fut. cōnābor, *I shall try*

Perf. cōnātus sum, *I tried*

Plup. cōnātus eram, *I had tried*

Futp. cōnātus erō, *I shall have tried*

vereor	sequor	patior	potior
verērīs	sequerīs	paterīs	potīrīs
verētur	sequitur	patitur	potītur
verēmur	sequimur	patimur	potīmur
verēmini	sequimini	patimini	potīmini
verentur	sequuntur	patiuntur	potiuntur
verēbar	sequēbar	patiēbar	potiēbar
verēbor	sequar	patiar	potiar
veritus sum	secūtus sum	passus sum	potītus sum
veritus eram	secūtus eram	passus eram	potītus eram
veritus erō	secūtus erō	passus erō	potītus erō

Subjunctive

Pres. cōner
Imp. cōnārer
Perf. cōnātus sim
Plup. cōnātus essem

verear	sequar	patiar	potiar
verērer	sequerer	paterer	potīrer
veritus sim	secūtus sim	passus sim	potītus sim
veritus essem	secūtus essem	passus essem	potītus essem

<i>Pres.</i> cōnāre, try (thou) <i>Fut.</i> cōnātor, thou shalt try	Imperative			
	verēre	sequere	patere	potire
	verētor	sequitor	patitor	potitor
<i>Pres.</i> cōnāri, to try <i>Perf.</i> cōnātus, -a, -um, esse, to have tried <i>Fut.</i> cōnātūrus, -a, -um, esse, to be about to try	Infinitive			
	verēri	sequi	pati	potiri
	veritus esse	secūtus esse	passus esse	potītus esse
<i>Pres.</i> cōnāns, -ntis, trying <i>Fut.</i> cōnātūrus, -a, -um, about to try <i>Perf.</i> cōnātus, -a, -um, having tried	Participles			
	verēns	sequēns	patiēns	potiēns
	veritūrus	secūtūrus	passūrus	potītūrus
<i>Pres.</i> cōnātus, -a, -um, about to try <i>Fut.</i> cōnātūrus, -a, -um, about to try <i>Perf.</i> cōnātus, -a, -um, having tried	Gerundive			
	verendus	sequendus	patiendus	potiendus
	cōnandus, -a, -um, to be tried			
<i>Pres.</i> cōnādi, etc., of trying <i>Fut.</i> cōnātū, etc., of trying <i>Perf.</i> cōnātus, -a, -um, about to try	Gerund			
	verendi	sequendi	patiendi	potiendi
	cōnandi, etc., of trying			
<i>Pres.</i> cōnātum, to try <i>Fut.</i> cōnātū, by trying <i>Perf.</i> cōnātus, -a, -um, about to try	Supine			
	veritum	secūtum	passum	potītum
	veritū	secūtū	passū	potītū

SYNOPSIS OF FORMS

836. THE IRREGULAR VERB EŌ

Principal Parts, eō, ire, ii (ivī), itum, *to go*

Indicative		Subjunctive
<i>Pres.</i> eō		eam
is		eās
it		eat
imus		eāmus
itis		eātis
eunt		eant
<i>Imp.</i> ibam, ibās, etc.		irem, irēs, etc.
<i>Fut.</i> ibō, ibis, etc.		
<i>Perf.</i> ii (ivī), isti, iit		ierim, ieris, ierit, etc.
<i>Plup.</i> ieram, ierās, ierat		issem, issēs, isset, etc.
<i>Futp.</i> ierō, ieris, ierit		

	Infinitive	Participle	Gerund	Supine
<i>Pres.</i> ire		iēns, euntis	<i>N.</i> ———	<i>Acc.</i> itum
<i>Perf.</i> isse		———	<i>G.</i> eundī	<i>Abl.</i> itū
<i>Fut.</i> itūrus, -a, -um, esse		itūrus, -a, -um	<i>D.</i> eundō	
Imperative			<i>A.</i> eundum	
<i>Pres.</i> ī			<i>V.</i> ———	
ite			<i>A.</i> eundō	
<i>Fut.</i> itō itōte				
itō euntō				

837. THE IRREGULAR VERB FERŌ

Principal Parts, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *to bear, carry*

	Indicative	
	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i> ferō	fers	feror
fers	fert	ferris
fert	ferimus	fertur
ferimus	fertis	ferimur
fertis	ferunt	ferimini
ferunt		feruntur
<i>Imp.</i> ferēbam, -bās, -bat, etc.		ferēbar, -bāris, -bātur, etc.
<i>Fut.</i> feram, -ēs, -et, etc.		ferar, -ēris, -ētur, etc.
<i>Perf.</i> tulī, -istī, -it, etc.		lātus sum, es, est, etc.
<i>Plup.</i> tuleram, -erās, -erat, etc.		lātus eram, erās, erat, etc.
<i>Futp.</i> tulerō, -eris, -erit, etc.		lātus erō, eris, erit, etc.
Subjunctive		
<i>Pres.</i> feram, -ās, -at, etc.		ferar, -āris, -ātur, etc.
<i>Imp.</i> ferrem, -ēs, -et, etc.		ferrer, -ēris, -ētur, etc.
<i>Perf.</i> tulerim, -eris, -erit, etc.		lātus sim, sis, sit, etc.
<i>Plup.</i> tulissem, -ēs, -et, etc.		lātus essem, essēs, esset, etc.

APPLIED LATIN

ACTIVE		Imperative	PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>fer</i>		<i>ferre</i>
	<i>ferte</i>		<i>ferimini</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>fertō</i>		<i>fertor</i>
	<i>fertō</i>		<i>fertor</i>
	<i>fertōte</i>		
	<i>feruntō</i>		<i>feruntor</i>
		Infinitive	
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>ferre</i>		<i>ferri</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>tulisse</i>		<i>lātus, -a, -um, esse</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>lāturus, -a, -um, esse</i>		<i>lātum iri</i>
		Participle	
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>ferēns, -entis</i>		
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>lāturus, -a, -um</i>		
<i>Perf.</i>	_____		<i>lātus, -a, -um</i>
		Gerundive	
			<i>ferendus, -a, -um</i>
			Supine
			Gerund
<i>Nom.</i>	_____		<i>Acc. lātum</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ferendī</i>		<i>Abl. lātū</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ferendō</i>		
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ferendum</i>		
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ferendō</i>		

838. THE IRREGULAR VERB FĪŌ (PASSIVE VOICE OF FACIŌ)

Principal Parts, *fiō, fieri, factus sum, to happen, become, be made*

Indicative		Subjunctive	
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>fiō</i>		<i>fiam</i>
	<i>fīs</i>		<i>fiās</i>
	<i>fit</i>		<i>fiat</i>
	<i>fimus</i>		<i>fiāmus</i>
	<i>fitis</i>		<i>fiātis</i>
	<i>fiunt</i>		<i>fiant</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>fiēbam, -bās, -bat, etc.</i>		<i>fierem, -ēs, -et, etc.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>fiam, -ēs, -et, etc.</i>		_____
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>factus sum, es, est, etc.</i>		<i>factus sim, sis, sit, etc.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>factus eram, erās, erat, etc.</i>		<i>factus essem, essēs, esset, etc.</i>
<i>Futp.</i>	<i>factus erō, eris, erit, etc.</i>		_____
		Infinitive	
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>fi</i>	<i>Pres.</i>	<i>fieri</i>
	<i>fite</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>factus, -a, -um, esse</i>
		<i>Fut.</i>	<i>factum iri</i>
		Gerundive	
		<i>faciendus, -a, -um</i>	
		Participle	
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>factus, -a, -um</i>		

GENERAL VOCABULARY

A

ā, ab, *prep. with abl.*; of place, from, away from; of separation, from; of agency, by.

ā! or āh! *interj.*, ah! alas!

ab-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, to hide.

abluō, -ere, -uī, -lūtus, to purify.

abrupō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, to break off.

abscondō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, hide.

absentia, -ae, f., absence.

absolvō, -ere, -lvī, -solūtus, to free.

abstineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus, abstain from.

abs-trahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctus, to draw away.

ab-sum, abesse, āfuī, —, to be away, be absent; with **ā (ab)** and *abl.*

abundantia, -ae, f., plenty.

accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, to draw near, approach; be added.

accendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus, to set fire to, kindle, light.

acceptus, -a, -um, adj., pleasing to, with dative.

accidō, -ere, -cidī, —, to fall to, happen.

accidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsus, to cut into.

accingō, -ere, -cīnxī, -cīntus, to gird, arm.

accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, receive, accept.

accommodō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to arrange, adjust.

accūrātus, -a, -um, careful.

accurrō, -ere, -currī or -cucurrī, -cursum, to run to.

ācer, ācris, ācre, adj., sharp.

acerbus, -a, -um, adj., sharp, bitter.

aciēs, -ēī, f., an edge; battle-line.

ācriter, adv., sharply, bravely. *comp.*, **ācrius**; *sup.*, **ācerimē**.

ad, prep. with acc., to, up to, toward.

ad-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, to add.

ad-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, to lead to, induce.

ad-eō, -īre, -iī or -ivī, -itum, to go to; visit.

adfectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to desire, aim at.

ad-ferō, -ferre, attulī, adlātus, to bring to.

adficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, to treat.

- ad-fligō, -ere, -flīxī, -flictus,** to strike.
- adgredior, -ī, -gressus,** to attack.
- ad-haereō, -ēre, —, —,** to cling to.
- adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus,** to apply.
- ad-hūc, *adv.***, up to this time.
- adimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmtus,** to take away, with dative of person and acc. of thing.
- adiudicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** to award.
- ad-iungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnc-tus,** to join to, add.
- ad-iuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtus,** to help, be of assistance.
- ad-ligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** to tie to.
- ad-mīror, -ārī, -ātus,** to wonder at, admire.
- ad-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -mis-sus,** to admit.
- adolēscētia, -ae, *f.***, youth.
- ad-optō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** to choose; adopt.
- ad-orior, -irī, -ortus,** attack, assail.
- ad-ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** to beseech, worship.
- ad-sciscō, -ere, -scīvī, -scī-tus,** to take to oneself, admit, receive.
- adsentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēn-sus,** to agree, assent.
- ad-suēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suē-tum,** be accustomed *or* wont.
- ad-sum, -esse, -fuī, —,** to be present, with dat.
- adultus, -a, -um, *adj.***, grown up, mature.
- adveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ven-tum,** to come, to approach.
- adventus, -ūs, *m.***, a coming to, arrival.
- adversus, -a, -um, *adj.***, opposite; unfavorable.
- advocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** to call toward.
- aedificium, -ī, *n.***, a building.
- Aegyptus, -ī, *f.***, Egypt.
- aequālis, -e, *adj.***, equal, like.
- aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** to make equal *or* even.
- aequus, -a, -um, *adj.***, even, fair, just.
- āēr, āeris, *m.***, the air.
- aestās, -ātis, *f.***, summer.
- aetās, -ātis, *f.***, life, age.
- aeternus, -a, -um, *adj.***, perpetual.
- Āfrica, -ae, *f.***, the continent of Africa.
- ager, agrī, *m.***, a field, farm.
- agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** move, pursue.
- āgmen, -inis, *n.***, a marching army.
- āgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus,** to recognize.
- agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus,** to put in motion, drive.
- agricola, -ae, *m.***, a farmer.

ai! *interj.*, alas!

āla, -ae, *f.*, a wing.

aliēnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, strange.
foreign.

aliquandō, *adv.*, finally, at length.

aliquis (-quī), aliqua, aliquid (-quod), *indef. pron.*, some one, something; *as adj.*, 'some, any.

alius, -a, -ud (gen. alius), *adj.*, another, other.

Allobrogēs, -um, *m.*, a Gallic tribe.

alō, -ere, aluī, alitus, to nourish, feed.

alter, -tera, -terum (gen. alterius), *adj.*, one of two, the other.

altercatiō, -iōnis, *f.*, dispute.

altitūdō, -inis, *f.*, depth, height.

altus, -a, -um, high, deep.

alveus, -ī, *m.*, the bed of a river.

amicitia, -ae, *f.*, friendship.

amicus, -ī, *m.*, a friend.

amicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, friendly.

āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, to lose.

amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to love.

amor, -ōris, *m.*, love.

āmoveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, to move away.

amplus, -a, -um, *adj.*, large, extensive.

an, *conj.*, or.

ancora, -ae, *f.*, an anchor.

angustus, -a, -um, *adj.*, narrow.

anima, -ae, *f.*, breath, life.

animal, -ālis, *n.*, animal.

animāns, -antis, *m.*, a living creature.

animus, -ī, *m.*, soul, spirit.

annus, -ī, *m.*, a year.

annuus, -a, -um, *adj.*, annual.

ante, *prep.*, before.

anteā, *adv.*, before, formerly.

ante cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, go forward; surpass.

antiquus, -a, -um, *adj.*, old.

antrum, -ī, *n.*, a cave, cavern.

aperiō, -īre, aperuī, apertus, to open, unclose.

apertus, -a, -um, *adj.*, open.

appāreō, -ēre, -uī, —, to appear.

appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to call, name.

appetō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, to seek for.

aptus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fitted, suited, adapted.

apud, *prep. with acc.*, at, at the house of, with.

aqua, -ae, *f.*, water.

Aquitānia, -ae, *f.*, Aquitania.

āra, -ae, *f.*, an altar.

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus, to think.

arbor, -oris, *f.*, a tree.

arceō, -ēre, -uī, —, to keep or ward off, hinder.

arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, to summon, send for.

- arcus, -ūs, *m.*, a bow.
 ārdeō, -ēre, ārsī, ārsus, to burn.
 ārdor, -ōris, *m.*, a burning heat.
 argenteus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of silver, silvery.
 arma, -ōrum, *n.*, tools; arms; weapons.
 Armenia, -ae, *f.*, a country in Asia Minor.
 armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to arm, equip.
 arōma, -atis, *n.*, spices.
 arripiō, -ere, -puī, -reptus, to seize.
 ars, artis, *f.*, skill, art.
 arundō, -inis, *f.*, a reed.
 arx, arcis, *f.*, a citadel, fortress.
 ascēsus, -ūs, *m.*, ascent, approach.
 Asia, -ae, *f.*, Asia.
 asīnus, -ī, *m.*, an ass, donkey.
 assidō, -ere, -sēdī, —, to sit down.
 astrum, -ī, *n.*, a star.
 atque, *conj.*, and; and also.
 atrōx, -ōcis, *adj.*, savage, fierce, cruel.
 attingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctus, to touch, reach.
 auctor, -ōris, *m.*, author.
 auctōritās, -ātis, *f.*, authority, influence.
 audācia, -ae, *f.*, boldness.
 audācter, *adv.*, boldly.
 audāx, -ācis, *adj.*, bold.
 audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, to dare.
 audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, to hear.
 augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus, to increase.
 augur, -uris, *m.*, a prophet.
 aureus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of gold, golden.
 aurum, -ī, *n.*, gold.
 aut, *conj.*, or; aut....aut, either....or.
 autem, *conj.*, however.
 auxilium, -ī, *n.*, aid, help.
 avāritia, -ae, *f.*, greed.
 avidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, desirous of.
 avis, -is, *f.*, a bird.
 avocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to call away.
- B
- baculum, -ī, *n.*, a stick.
 Baleāris, -e, *adj.*, Balearic, of the Balearic isles.
 barbarus, -a, -um, *adj.*, barbarous.
 Belgae, -ārum, *m.*, the Belgians, a nation of northern Gaul.
 bellicōsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, warlike, fierce.
 bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to wage war.
 bellum, -ī, *n.*, war.
 bene, *adv.*, well; *comp.*, melius, *sup.*, optimē.
 beneficium, -ī, *n.*, benefit, kindness.

bīdūum, -ī, *n.*, two days' time.

biennium, -ī, *n.*, two years' time.

bīnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, by twos, two each.

bis, *num. adv.*, twice.

bitūmen, -inis, *n.*, pitch.

Bōī (**Bōiū**), -ōrum, *m.*, the Boii, a Celtic tribe.

bonus, -a, -um, *adj.*, good.
comp., melior, melius;
sup., optimus, -a, -um.

bracchium, -ī, *n.*, an arm.

brevis, -e, *adj.*, short, brief.

Britannia, -ae, *f.*, Britain.

Britannus, -a, -um, *adj.*, British.

C

cadō, -ere, **cecidī**, **cāsum**, to fall.

caedēs, -is, *f.*, slaughter.

caedō, -ere, **cecidī**, **caesus**, to cut.

caelum, -ī, *n.*, the sky.

Caesar, -aris, *m.*, Caius Julius Caesar.

calamitās, -ātis, *f.*, loss, calamity.

camelus, -ī, *m.*, a camel.

campus, -ī, *m.*, a plain, field.

canis, -is, *m. and f.*, a dog.

cantus, -ūs, *m.*, song.

capillus, -ī, *m.*, the hair.

capiō, -ere, **cēpī**, **captus**, to take, take possession of, capture, seize.

captīvus, -ī, *m.*, a prisoner.

captō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to catch at, seize.

caput, -itis, *n.*, the head.

carcer, -eris, *m.*, a prison.

careō, -ēre, -uī, —, to be without, lack.

carmen, -inis, *n.*, a song, verse.

carrus, -ī, *m.*, a cart.

Carthāgō, -inis, *f.*, Carthage.

cārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dear.

castellum, -ī, *n.*, a fortress, redoubt.

Casticus, -ī, a chief.

castra, -ōrum, a military encampment, camp.

cāsus, -ūs, *m.*, a fall, chance, mischance.

Catamantāloedēs, -is, a chief.

cauda, -ae, *f.*, a tail.

causa, -ae, *f.*, a cause, reason;
with gen., for the sake of.

caveō, -ēre, **cāvī**, **cautum**, to beware, be on one's guard.

cēdō, -ere, **cessī**, **cessum**, to make a motion, yield.

celeber, -bris, -bre, *adj.*, celebrated, famous.

celebrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to frequent, celebrate.

celer, -eris, -ere, *adj.*, swift.

celeritās, -ātis, *f.*, speed, quickness.

celeriter, *adv.*, quickly.

cēnaculum, -ī, *n.*, a chamber.

cēnseō, -ēre, **cēnsuī**, **cēnsum**, estimate, think.

cēnsus, -ūs, *m.*, a census.

APPLIED LATIN

- centum**, *num. adj., indecl.*, a hundred.
- centuriō**, *-ōnis, m.*, a centurion.
- cernō**, *-ere, crēvī, crētus*, to distinguish, discern.
- certē**, *adv.*, certainly.
- certus**, *-a, -um, adj.*, settled, certain.
- cēterus**, *-a, -um, adj.*, the rest of, remaining.
- cibārius**, *-a, -um, adj.*, pertaining to food.
- cibus**, *-ī, m.*, food.
- Cicerō**, *-ōnis, m.*, Cicero, the orator.
- cingō**, *-ere, cīnxī, cīctus*, to encompass, surround, encircle.
- circiter**, *adv. and prep. with acc.; as adv.*, about, nearly; *as prep.*, near, about.
- circuitus**, *-ūs, m.*, circuit.
- circum**, *prep. with acc.*, around.
- circum-dō**, *-dare, -dedī, -datus*, to put around, surround, inclose.
- circum-sedeō**, *-ēre, -sēdī, -sessum*, to sit around; surround.
- circumscribō**, *-ere, -scripsī, -scriptus*, to confine limit.
- circumspiciō**, *-ere, -spēxī, spectus*, to look around.
- circum-stō**, *-āre, -stetī, —*, to surround.
- circumtexō**, *-ere, -texuī, -textus*, to weave around.
- circum-veniō**, *-īre, -vēnī, -ventum*, to come around, surround.
- cīvīs**, *-is, m. and f.*, a citizen.
- cīvitās**, *-ātis, f.*, a state.
- clādēs**, *-is, f.*, disaster.
- clāmō**, *-āre, -āvī, -ātum*, to cry out, shout.
- clāmor**, *-ōris, m.*, an outcry, clamor.
- clārus**, *-a, -um, adj.*, clear, loud.
- classis**, *-is, f.*, a fleet.
- claudō**, *-ere, clausī, clausus*, to shut, close.
- clēmēns**, *-ntis, adj.*, lenient.
- cliēns**, *-entis, m.*, a client, retainer.
- clipeus**, *-ī, m.*, a shield.
- coepī**, *-isse, coeptus*, to begin, commence.
- cōgnōscō**, *-ere, -gnōvī, -gnitus*, to ascertain, learn, to know.
- cōgō**, *-ere, coēgī, coāctus*, to drive together, force, collect.
- cohors**, *-rtis, f.*, a cohort.
- cohortor**, *-ārī, -ātus*, to encourage.
- collis**, *-is, m.*, a height, hill.
- collum**, *-ī, n.*, the neck.
- colō**, *-ere, coluī, cultus*, to till, cherish, honor, dwell in.
- color**, *-ōris, m.*, color.
- columna**, *-ae, f.*, a column.

GENERAL VOCABULARY

coma, -ae, *f.*, the hair.
combūrō, -ere, -ūssī, -ūstus, to burn up.
comes, comitis, *m. and f.*, a companion.
commeō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to go and come.
com-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, to commit, intrust.
com-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, to move thoroughly, disturb.
commūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, to fortify.
commūnis, -e, *adj.*, general, common.
commūtātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, a change, turn.
com-parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to provide, get ready.
com-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, to drive together, compel.
compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, to fill completely.
com-plūrēs, -a, *adj.*, many, a great many.
com-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, to put together, compose, construct.
com-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to bring together, collect.
com-prehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsus, to seize, catch.
comprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus, to restrain, check.
cōnātus, -ūs, *m.*, an attempt.

concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, retire, yield.
concidō, -ere, -cidī, —, to fall down, collapse.
concidō, -ere, -cidī, cīsus, to cut down, cut to pieces.
conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to reconcile.
concilium, -ī, *n.*, council.
concipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, to take hold of, catch.
concitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to call, arouse.
conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to cry out together, cry out loud.
conclāve, -is, *n.*, a conclave.
conclūdō, -ere, -sī, -sus, to shut around, surround.
concupiscō, -ere, -cupīvī, -ītus, to long for.
concurrō, -ere, -currī or -cucurrī, -cursum, to run together.
concursum, -ūs, *m.*, running together, collision.
concutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussus, shake up, shatter.
condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*, terms, condition.
condō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, to put together, found.
condūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, to hire, collect.
cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, to bring together, collect, compare.

APPLIED LATIN

cōnfertus , -a, -um, <i>adj.</i> , crowded.	cōsolātiō , -ōnis, <i>f.</i> , consolation.
cōficiō , -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, to accomplish, complete.	cōspectus , -ūs, <i>m.</i> , sight.
cōfidō , -ere, -fīsus sum, to trust firmly.	cōspiciō , -ere, -spēxī, -spectus, to sight, behold.
cōfluō , ere, -flūxī, —, to flow together.	cōstat , -āre, -stitit, it is agreed.
cōniciō , -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, to hurl, throw.	cōstituō , -ere, -uī, -ūtus, to establish, determine.
coniungō , -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnc-tus, to join together, unite.	cōstringō , -ere, -strinxī, -strictus, bind together.
coniūrātiō , -ōnis, <i>f.</i> , a conspiracy.	cōnsuēscō , -ere, -suēvī, -suētum, to be accustomed.
coniūnx , -ugis, <i>m. and f.</i> , a husband, wife.	cōnsuētūdō , -inis, <i>f.</i> , a habit, custom.
conligō , -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus, to gather together, collect.	cōnsul , -ulis, <i>m.</i> , a consul.
cōnor , -ārī, -ātus, to try.	cōsulātus , -ūs, <i>m.</i> , consulship.
cōnscendō , -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus, to climb, mount.	cōsūmō , -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus, to use up, consume.
cōnsciscō , -ere, -scīvī, -scītus, to decree.	contendō , -ere, -dī, -tus, to fight, contend.
cōnscius , -a, -um, <i>adj.</i> , conscious of, with gen.	contentus , -a, -um, <i>adj.</i> , content, satisfied.
cōnscrībō , -ere, -scripsī, -scriptus, to enroll, levy.	continenter , <i>adv.</i> , continuously.
cōnsēnsus , -ūs, <i>m.</i> , agreement.	contineō , -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus, to contain, limit, bound.
cōnsentiō , -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsus, to think with, agree.	contingō , -ere, -tīgī, -tāctus, to touch, happen.
cōnsiderō , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to look at closely, consider.	contrā , <i>prep.</i> , against, over against.
cōnsilium , -ī, <i>n.</i> , deliberation, plan.	contrahō , -ere, -trāxī, -tractus, to collect, draw together.
cōnsistō , -ere, -stitī, take a position, consist.	

GENERAL VOCABULARY

contrōversia, -ae, *f.*, a dispute.

conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, to come together, assemble.

conventus, -ūs, *m.*, meeting.

convivium, -ī, *n.*, feast.

convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to call together.

cōpia, -ae, *f.*, abundance; *pl.*, troops, forces.

cōpiōsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, abundant.

cornū, -ūs, *n.*, a horn, wing.

corōna, -ae, *f.*, a crown.

corpus, -oris, *n.*, the body.

corrigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctus, to correct, reform.

corripīō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptus, to snatch up.

corrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, to corrupt.

cotidiānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, daily.

cotidiē, *adv.*, daily.

crēber, -bra, -brum, *adj.*, frequent.

crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, to trust, believe, with *dat.*

cremō, -āre, —, —, to burn.

creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to create, choose, elect.

crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētus, to increase.

crīnis, -is, *m.*, the hair.

cubīle, -is, *n.*, couch.

culpa, -ae, *f.*, fault.

cultus, -ūs, *m.*, civilization.

cum, *prep. with abl.*, with, along with.

cum, *conj. of time*, when, while, whenever, after; of concession (with *subj.*), although; of cause, since (with *subj.*).

cūctus, -a, -um, *adj.*, all together.

cupiditās, -ātis, *f.*, desire, longing.

cupidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, desirous, with *gen.*

cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, to desire.

cūr, *adv., interrog.*, why?

cūra, -ae, *f.*, care.

cūriōsus, -a, -um, inquisitive.

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to care for, provide.

currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursum, to run.

cursus, -ūs, *m.*, a running, course.

cūstōdia, -ae, *f.*, watch.

cūstōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, to guard.

D

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to condemn.

dē, *prep. with abl.*, from, down from, concerning, about.

dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, to owe, ought.

dēbilitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to weaken.

- dē-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -ces-**
sum, to go away, depart.
- decem, indecl. num. adj.,** ten.
- decet, -ēre, -uit,** it is fitting.
- dēcipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -cep-**
tus, to take in, deceive.
- dē-currō, -ere, -cucurrī or**
-currī, -cursum, to run
down or from.
- dēditiō, -ōnis, f.,** surrender.
- dē-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus,**
to surrender.
- dē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -duc-**
tus, to lead away.
- dēfendō, -ere, -dī, -fēnsus,**
to defend.
- dē-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus,**
to bring down, carry away.
- dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum,**
to fail, give out.
- dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus.**
to throw down.
- deinde, adv.,** then, next.
- dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus,** to
destroy.
- dē-ligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** to
bind down, bind.
- dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus,** to
choose.
- dē-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -mis-**
sus, to let down, send away.
- dēnique, adv.,** afterwards, at
last.
- dēns, dentis, m.,** a tooth.
- dēnsus, -a, -um, adj.,** thick,
dense.
- dē-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus,**
to drive away, avert.
- dē-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -posi-**
tus, to put aside.
- dē-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,**
to carry off; lay waste.
- dēprecātor, -ōris, m.,** inter-
cessor.
- dēprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pres-**
sus, to hold down.
- dēscendō, -ere, -ī, -scēnsus,**
to climb down, descend.
- dē-scribō, -ere, -scripsī,**
-scriptus, to write out; de-
scribe.
- dēsiliō, -īre, -siluī, —,** to
leap down.
- dē-sistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum,**
to stop, cease.
- dēspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spec-**
tus, to look down upon,
despise.
- dēstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūc-**
tus, to destroy.
- dē-sum, deesse, dēfui, —,**
be lacking, with dat.
- dē-terreō, -ēre, -uī, —,** to
frighten off.
- dē-tineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -ten-**
tus, to keep back, delay.
- dē-trahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trac-**
tus, to draw off, rob, with
dat. of person and acc. of
thing.
- dētrūdō, -ere, -trūsī, -trūsus,**
to push down.
- deus, -ī, m.,** a god.
- dē-vorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,**
to devour.
- dexter, -tra, -trum, adj.,** right.

GENERAL VOCABULARY

dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus, to say, appoint.

dictātor, -ōris, m., a dictator.

dictiō, -ōnis, f., power.

diēs, -ēī, f. and m., a day.

differō, -ferre, distulī, dilātus, to bear apart; postpone; differ.

difficilis, -e, adj., hard, difficult.

diffidō, -ere, -fīsus sum, to distrust.

dīgnus, -a, -um, adj., worthy, with abl.

diligēns, -ntis, adj., careful.

diligenter, adv., diligently.

diligentia, -ae, f., care.

dī-mittō, -ere, -misī, -missus, to send away, dismiss.

dīrigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctus, to direct, guide.

dīripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptus, to pull apart; plunder

dis-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, to go away, depart

dīsciplina, -ae, f., training, discipline.

discō, -ere, didicī, —, to learn.

dis-pār, -paris, adj., unequal, unlike.

displīceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, to displease.

dis-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, arrange, dispose.

dissentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsus, to disagree.

dissimilis, -e, adj., unlike.

dissolvō, -ere, -solvī, -solūtus, to loosen, dissolve.

distīneō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus, to hold apart.

dis-trahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trac-tus, to pull apart; separate.

diū, adv., long, a long time; *comp.*, **diūtius**; *sup.*, **diūtissimē**.

Dīviciācus, -ī, m., a chief.

dividō, -ere, -visī, -visus, to separate, divide.

dō, dare, dedī, datus, to give.

doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctus, to teach.

dīves, -itis, adj., rich.

dolor, -ōris, m., grief.

dolus, -ī, m., trick.

domina, -ae, f., a lady, mistress.

dominus, -ī, m., a master.

domus, -ūs, f., a house; *loc.*, **domī,** at home.

dōnec, conj., while, as long as, until.

dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to present.

dōnum, -ī, n., a gift.

dormiō, -īre, -ivī, -itum, to sleep.

dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to doubt.

dubius, -a, -um, adj., doubtful, uncertain.

ducentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., two hundred.

dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, to lead.

dum, conj., while, as long as; till, until.

Dumnorix, -īgis, m., a chief.

duo, -ae, -o, num. adj., two.

duplex, -icis, adj., double.

dux, ducis, m., a leader, guide.

E

ecce, interj., lo! behold! there!

ē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, to lead out.

effēminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, to make feminine.

efferrō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātus, to carry out.

efficāx, adj., effective.

efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, to make, effect, accomplish.

effigiēs, -ēī, f., an effigy.

effodiō, -īre, -fōdī, -fossus, to dig out.

ego, meī, pers. pron., I, I myself.

ēgregius, -a, -um, adj., remarkable.

ei! interj., Oh! alas!

ēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, to cast or drive out, expel.

ēlegāns, -ntis, adj., elegant.

ē-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, to send forth; let go.

emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus, to buy, purchase.

ēmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, to move out, stir.

ēn! interj., lo!

enim, conj., postpositive, for, really.

ēnūntiō, -are, -āvī, -ātus, to announce.

eō, īre, iī or ivī, itum, to go.

epistula, -ae, f., a letter.

epulor, -ārī, -ātus sum, to feast.

eques, -itis, m., a knight.

equester, -tris, -tre, adj., belonging to a horseman.

equitātus, -ūs, m., cavalry.

equus, -ī, m., a horse.

ērigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctus, to raise up; make erect.

ēripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptus, to snatch away, save, with dat. of person and acc. of thing.

errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to wander, mistake.

ē-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, to burst forth.

et, conj., and, also; **et . . . et,** both . . . and.

etenim, conj., for.

et-iam, adv. and conj., yet, even yet, still, even.

ē-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, to come out, happen.

ēventus, -ūs, m., an outcome, result.

ē-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to call out, challenge.

ex, or ē (before consonants), prep. w. abl., out of, from.

GENERAL VOCABULARY

ex-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -ces-
sum, move out, to go forth.
excidō, -ere, -ī, —, to fall out.
excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus,
to take up; receive.
ex-clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,
to shout out.
exclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus,
to shut out, exclude.
exemplum, -ī, n., example.
ex-eō, -īre, -iī or -īvī, -itum,
to go out.
exercitus, -ūs, m., an army.
exigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus, to
drive out; exact.
eximō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēemptus,
to take away, remove.
exīstimātiō, -ōnis, f., opin-
ion, judgment.
exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,
to consider; think.
exitus, -ūs, m., going out;
end.
expeditus, -a, -um, adj., un-
impeded, free, light-armed.
ex-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pul-
sus, to drive out, expel.
experior, -īrī, -pertus, to
test, try.
expers, expertis, adj., de-
void of, with gen.
explōrātor, -ōris, m., a scout.
explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to
investigate, examine.
ex-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -posi-
tus, to put forth; explain.
ex-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,
to carry away, export.

exprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pres-
sus, to press out, extort.
exprōbrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to
reproach.
exsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum,
to follow out.
existō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum,
to stand forth, appear.
expectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,
to look for, await.
exstō, -āre, —, —, to stand
out, appear.
extruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūc-
tus, to build up, construct.
exsul, -ulis, m., an exile.
exterus, -a, -um, adj., on the
outside; *comp.*, exterior,
-ius, outer; *sup.*, extrēmus,
-a, -um, outermost.
extrā, prep. with acc., outside,
beyond.
ex-trahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trac-
tus, to draw out.
extrēmus, see exterus.
ex-ūrō, -ere, -ūssi, -ūstus, to
burn up, consume, destroy.

F

fābula, -ae, f., story, fable.
faciēs, -ēī, f., face.
facile, adv., easily.
facilis, -e, adj., easy.
faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, to
make, do.
facultās, -ātis, f., capacity,
power.
fallāx, -ācis, adj., deceitful,
treacherous.

APPLIED LATIN

falsus , -a, -um, <i>adj.</i> , false.	finis , -is, <i>m.</i> , a boundary, limit; <i>pl.</i> , territory.
fāma , -ae, <i>f.</i> , fame.	fīnitimus , -a, -um, <i>adj.</i> , neighboring.
familia , -ae, <i>f.</i> , family, a household.	fīō , fieri , factus , <i>used as pass. of faciō</i> , to be made, be done, take place, become, happen.
famulus , -ī, <i>m.</i> , a slave.	firmāmentum , -ī, the heaven.
fateor , -ērī, fassus , to say, admit.	firmō , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to strengthen; fortify.
fātum , -ī, <i>n.</i> , fate.	firmus , -a, -um, <i>adj.</i> , strong, firm.
faucēs , -ium, <i>f.</i> , the throat.	fiscella , -ae, <i>f.</i> , a basket.
faveō , -ēre, fāvī , fautum , to favor.	flāgitō , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to demand.
fēliciter , <i>adv.</i> , happily.	flamma , -ae, <i>f.</i> , a flame.
fēlix , -īcis, <i>adj.</i> , fortunate, happy.	flectō , -ere, flēxī , flexus , to bend.
fēmina , -ae, <i>f.</i> , a woman.	fleō , -ēre, flēvī , flētum , to weep.
fera , -ae, <i>f.</i> , a wild beast.	flō , flāre , flāvī , flātum , to blow.
ferāx , -ācis, <i>adj.</i> , fertile.	flōreō , -ēre, -uī, —, to bloom.
ferē , <i>adv.</i> , nearly.	flōs , flōris , <i>m.</i> , a flower.
ferō , ferre , -tulī, -lātus, to bear, carry.	flūmen , -inis, <i>n.</i> , a river.
ferōx , -ōcis, <i>adj.</i> , fierce.	fluō , -ere, flūxī , —, to flow.
ferrum , -ī, <i>n.</i> , iron.	foedus , -eris, <i>n.</i> , a treaty.
fertilis , -e, <i>adj.</i> , fertile.	fōns , fontis , <i>m.</i> , a spring, fountain.
ferus , -a, -um, <i>adj.</i> , wild, fierce, cruel.	fōrma , -ae, <i>f.</i> , form, shape.
fēstus , -a, -um, <i>adj.</i> , festive, festal.	formidō , -inis, <i>f.</i> , fear.
fidēs , -eī, <i>f.</i> , faith, belief.	forte , <i>adv.</i> , perhaps.
fidō , -ere, fīsus sum , to trust.	fortis , -e, <i>adj.</i> , strong, brave.
fidūcia , -ae, <i>f.</i> , confidence.	fortiter , <i>adv.</i> , bravely.
fidus , -a, -um, <i>adj.</i> , faithful.	fortitūdō , -inis, <i>f.</i> , bravery.
figūra , -ae, <i>f.</i> , shape, figure.	fortūna , -ae, <i>f.</i> , fortune, fate.
filia , -ae, <i>f.</i> , a daughter.	fortūnātus , -a, -um, <i>adj.</i> , fortunate.
filius , -ī, <i>m.</i> , a son.	
filum , -ī, <i>n.</i> , a thread.	
finiō , -īre, -īvī, -ītus, to bound, limit.	

GENERAL VOCABULARY

forum, -ī, n., a public place,
the forum.

fossa, -ae, f., a ditch, trench.

fovea, -ae, f., a pitfall, snare.

fragilis, -e, adj., fragile.

frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus,
to break.

frāter, -tris, m., a brother.

frequēns, -entis, adj., fre-
quent.

frētus, -a, -um, adj., de-
pending *or* relying upon,
with abl.

frīgidus, -a, -um, adj., cold.

frīgus, -oris, n., cold weather,
cold.

frōns, frontis, f., the forehead.

frūmentārius, -a, -um, adj.,
of *or* pertaining to grain;
rēs frūmentāria, grain sup-
ply.

frūmentum, -ī, n., grain.

fruor, -ī, fructus, to enjoy,
with abl.

frūstrā, adv., in vain.

fuga, -ae, f., flight.

fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fūgitum, to
flee, escape.

fugitivus, -a, -um, adj., fugi-
tive.

fulgeō, -ēre, fulsī, —, to
flash, gleam.

funda, -ae, f., a sling.

fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus, to
pour forth.

fungor, -ī, fūctus, to per-
form; do one's duty, with
abl.

furor, -ōris, m., rage.

fūrtum, -ī, n., theft.

G

Gabinius, -ī, m., Gabinius.

Galba, -ae, m., Galba, a
lieutenant of Caesar.

galea, -ae, f., a helmet.

Gallia, -ae, f., the country
Gaul.

Gallicus, -a, -um, adj., Gallic.

Gallus, -a, -um, adj., Gallic.

gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum,
to rejoice.

gemma, -ae, f., a gem.

Genāva, -ae, f., Geneva.

gēns, gentis, f., a tribe,
people, nation.

genus, -eris, n., race, family.

Germānia, -ae, f., Germany.

gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus, to
bear, wage, carry on.

gīgnō, -ere, genuī, genitus,
to beget, bear.

glaciēs, -ēī, f., ice.

gladius, -ī, m., a sword.

glōria, -ae, f., glory.

gracilis, -e, adj., slender.

gradātīm, adv., step by step.

gradior, -ī, gressus, to go,
walk.

Graecia, -ae, f., Greece.

grāmen, -inis, n., grass.

grātia, -ae, f., favor, grati-
tude.

grātus, -a, -um, adj., agree-
able, pleasant, with dat.

gravis, -e, adj., heavy.

graviter, *adv.*, heavily.
grex, **gregis**, *m.*, flock.
gubernātor, **-ōris**, *m.*, a pilot.

H

habeō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, **-itus**, to have, hold, regard.
habitō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, to inhabit, with *in* and *abl.*
haedus, **-ī**, *m.*, a kid.
haereō, **-ēre**, **haesī**, **haesum**, to stick, cling.
hauriō, **-īre**, **hausī**, **haustus**, to drink, drink in, drain.
Hebraeus, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, Hebrew.
heu! *interj.*, alas!
hīc, **haec**, **hōc**, *dem. pron.*, this, this one; he, she, it.
hīc, *adv.*, here.
hiems, **hiemis**, *f.*, the winter; storm.
Hierosōlyma, **-ae**, *f.*, Jerusalem.
hinc, *adv.*, from this place, hence.
Hispānia, **-ae**, *f.*, Spain.
hodiē, *adv.*, to-day.
homō, **-inis**, *m.*, man.
honor, **-ōris**, *m.*, honor.
hōra, **-ae**, *f.*, an hour.
horribilis, **-e**, *adj.*, dreadful.
hortor, **-ārī**, **-ātus**, to urge.
hospitium, **-ī**, *n.*, hospitality.
hostis, **-is**, *m.*, an enemy.
hūc, *adv.*, to this place.
hūmānitās, **-tātis**, *f.*, civilization, refinement.

humerus, **-ī**, *m.*, the shoulder.
humilis, **-e**, *adj.*, humble.
humus, **-ī**, *f.*, ground, **humī**, *loc.*, on the ground.

I

iaceō, **-ēre**, **-cuī**, —, to lie, recline.
iaciō, **-ere**, **iēcī**, **iactus**, to throw, cast, hurl.
Iacōbus, **-ī**, *m.*, Jacob.
iam, *adv.*, presently, now.
iānuā, **-ae**, *f.*, a door.
ibi, *adv.*, there.
ictus, **-ūs**, *m.*, a stroke.
idem, **eadem**, **idem**, *dem. pron.*, the same, same one.
identidem, *adv.*, again and again.
idōneus, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, suitable, proper.
igitur, *conj.*, *postpositive*, accordingly, therefore.
ignāvia, **-ae**, *f.*, idleness.
ignis, **-is**, *m.*, fire.
ignōminia, **-ae**, *f.*, disgrace, dishonor.
ignōscō, **-ere**, **-nōvī**, **-nōtus**, to pardon.
ille, **illa**, **illud**, *dem. pron.*, that, that one; he, she, it.
illūstris, **-e**, *adj.*, famous.
imāgō, **-inis**, *f.*, an image.
immittō, **-ere**, **-mīsī**, **-misus**, to send into, send in.
immō, *conj.*, nay.
immortālis, **-e**, *adj.*, immortal.

- impedimentum**, -ī, *n.*, a hindrance; *pl.*, baggage of an army.
- impediō**, -īre, -īvī or īī, -ītum, to hinder, prevent; delay.
- impellō**, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, to drive on, impel.
- impendeō**, -ēre, —, —, to overhang.
- imperātor**, -ōris, *m.*, a general.
- imperītus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, unskilled, with gen.
- imperium**, -ī, *n.*, command, power.
- imperō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to command.
- impetrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to gain a request.
- impetus**, -ūs, *m.*, an attack, charge.
- implicō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to enfold, entangle.
- impōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positus, to put upon; impose.
- importō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to carry in, import.
- imprimō**, -ere, -pressī, -pressus, to press into, engrave.
- impudēns**, -ntis, *adj.*, shameless.
- in**, *prep.* with *acc.* into, or *abl.*, in.
- inambulō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to walk up and down.
- incendium**, -ī, *n.*, a conflagration, fire.
- incidō**, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus, to cut into.
- incipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, to begin.
- in-citō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to urge on, impel.
- inclinō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to bend.
- inclūdō**, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus, to shut in, confine.
- incola**, -ae, *m.*, an inhabitant.
- in-colō**, -ere, -coluī, —, to dwell in, inhabit, with *acc.*
- incommodum**, -ī, *n.*, loss, harm.
- in-crēdibilis**, -e, *adj.*, incredible.
- inde**, *adv.* of place, from that place, thence.
- indiciū**, -ī, *n.*, information.
- in-dignus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, unworthy, with *abl.*
- in-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, to lead on, influence.
- in-duō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, to put on, to dress in.
- industria**, -ae, *f.*, industry.
- in-eō**, -īre, -īvī and -īī, -itum, to go into.
- inermis**, -e, *adj.*, weaponless, unarmed.
- infāns**, -antis, *m. and f.*, an infant.
- infantulus**, -ī, *m.*, an infant.
- in-ferō**, -ferre, intulī, in-lātus, to bear against, wage.
- inferus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, low; *comp.*, inferior, -ius, lower;

- sup.*, **īnfimus** or **īmus**, -a, -um, lowest.
- īn-flectō**, -ere, -flēxī, -flēxus, to bend away.
- īn-fluō**, -ere, -flūxī, —, to flow into.
- ingenium**, -ī, *n.*, wits.
- ingēns**, -entis, *adj.*, huge.
- īngredior**, -ī, -gressus, to go into, enter.
- iniciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, to throw in, inspire.
- inimicus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, unfriendly, hostile, with dat.
- īnīquus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, unequal, unfair.
- initium**, -ī, *n.*, a beginning.
- iniūria**, -ae, *f.*, injustice, injury.
- inopia**, -ae, *f.*, want.
- inquam**, *defect.*, to say.
- īnrīsus**, -ūs, laughter.
- īn-rumpō**, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, to break into, storm.
- īnsānia**, -ae, *f.*, madness.
- īn-sciēns**, -entis, *adj.*, ignorant, with gen.
- īn-scius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, unconscious.
- īn-scribō**, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptus, to write upon, inscribe.
- īnsignis**, -e, *adj.*, distinguished, conspicuous.
- īnsiliō**, -īre, -uī, —, to leap upon, mount.
- īn-sistō**, -ere, -stitī, —, to stand upon.
- īnstituō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, to establish; determine.
- īnstitūtum**, -ī, *n.*, a custom.
- īn-stō**, -āre, -stitī, -stātum, to stand upon.
- īn-struō**, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, to arrange, plan.
- īnsula**, -ae, *f.*, an island.
- īnsultō**, -āre, to leap upon.
- īntellegō**, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, to understand.
- īn-tendō**, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, to stretch, strain.
- inter**, *prep.* with acc., between, among.
- īnter-cēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, to go between, intervene.
- īnter-cipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, to take between, interrupt.
- īnterclūdō**, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus, to cut off, shut off.
- īnterdiū**, *adv.*, in the daytime, by day.
- īnterdum**, *adv.*, meanwhile.
- īnter-eā**, *adv.*, meanwhile.
- īnter-eō**, -īre, -iī, -itum, to perish, be killed.
- īnterficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fecus, to kill.
- īnterimō**, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmpus, to kill.
- īnterior**, -ius, *comp. adj.*, inner.
- īnter-mittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, to interrupt, check.

- inter-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus**, to put between, interpose.
- interpres, -pretis, m.**, an interpreter.
- inter-rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, to ask, question.
- inter-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus**, to break through.
- inter-sum, -esse, -fuī, —**, to be between, with dat.
- inter-vāllum, -ī, n.**, interval.
- intōnsus, -a, -um, adj.**, unshaved.
- intrā, prep. with acc.**, within.
- intrō-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus**, to lead in, introduce.
- in-tueor, -ēri, -itus**, to gaze at.
- in-tumescō, -ere, -tumuī, —**, swell up, rise, rage.
- intus, adv.**, within.
- in-ultus, -a, -um, adj.**, unavenged.
- in-vādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsus**, to invade, seize.
- in-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum**, to come upon, find (by chance).
- in-videō, -ēre, -vidī, -vīsum**, to envy, with dat.
- invidia, -ae, f.**, envy, hatred.
- invisus, -a, -um, adj.**, hateful, with dat.
- invitus, -a, -um, adj.**, unwilling.
- invisus, -a, -um, adj.**, impassable.
- Iosephus, -ī, m.**, Joseph.
- Iosue, -es, m.**, Joshua.
- ipse, -a, -um, dem. pron.**, self, himself, herself, itself; he, she, it.
- ira, -ae, f.**, anger.
- irātus, -a, -um, adj.**, angry.
- is, ea, id, dem. pron.**, that, that one, this; he, she, it.
- iste, ista, istud, dem. pron.**, that of yours, that.
- ita, adv.**, so.
- Italia, -ae, f.**, Italy.
- ita-que, conj.**, and so.
- item, adv.**, likewise.
- iter, itineris, n.**, journey.
- iubeō, -ēre, iūssī, iūssus**, to order.
- iūdex, -icis, m.**, a judge.
- iūdicium, -ī, n.**, judgment, decision.
- iugum, -ī, n.**, a yoke; ridge.
- iumentum, -ī, n.**, a beast of burden.
- iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūctus**, to join, unite.
- iūs, iūris, n.**, right, justice, law.
- iūs iurandum, iūris iurandī, n.**, an oath.
- iūstitia, -ae, f.**, justice.
- iuvenis, -is, m.**, a young man.

K

Kalendae, -ārum, f., the first day of the month, the Kalends.

APPLIED LATIN

L

- labor, -ōris, *m.***, toil, exertion, labor.
lābor, -ī, lāpsus, to slip.
lāc, lactis, *n.*, milk.
laccessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, to harass, provoke.
lacus, -ūs, *m.*, a lake.
laetor, -ārī, laetātus sum, to rejoice.
laetus, -a, -um, *adj.*, happy, glad.
laevus, -a, -um, *adj.*, left, on or to the left.
lampas, -adis, *f.*, a torch.
lapideus, -a, -um, *adj.*, stony.
lapis, -idis, *m.*, a stone.
lāpsus, -us, *m.*, a slip, collapse.
lātē, *adv.*, widely.
lateō, -ēre, -uī, —, to lie hidden.
Latinus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Latium, Latin.
lātītūdō, -inis, *f.*, width.
Latobrigī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Latobrigi.
latus, -eris, *n.*, a side.
lātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, broad, extensive.
laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to praise.
laus, laudis, *f.*, praise.
lēgātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, an embassy.
lēgātus, -ī, *m.*, a legate, ambassador; lieutenant.
legiō, -ōnis, *f.*, a legion.
lēniō, -īre, -īvī (-īi), -ītus, to appease, pacify.
lēnitās, -tātis, *f.*, lenience.
leō, -ōnis, *m.*, a lion.
levis, -e, *adj.*, light.
lēx, lēgis, *f.*, law.
libenter, *adv.*, gladly.
liber, -era, -erum, *adj.*, free.
liberālītās, -tātis, *f.*, generosity.
liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to set free, release.
libertās, -ātis, *f.*, liberty.
libet, libēre, libuit, it is pleasing, suits.
licet, -ēre, -cuit and -citur, it is permitted.
ligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to bind.
limen, -inis, *n.*, a threshold.
lingua, -ae, *f.*, the tongue.
liniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, to smear.
littera, -ae, *f.*, a letter of the alphabet; *pl.*, writing, inscription, letter, dispatch.
litus, -oris, *n.*, the shore, beach.
locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to place.
locus, -ī, *m.* (*pl.* **locī and loca**), a place, spot.
longitūdō, -inis, *f.*, length.
longus, -a, -um, *adj.*, long.
loquāx, *adj.*, talkative.
loquor, -ī, locūtus, to say, speak.
lūrīca, -ae, *f.*, a leathern cuirass.

lūceō, -ēre, -lūxī, to shine.
lūdibrium, -ī, n., sport.
lūdus, -ī, m., a game.
lūmen, -inis, n., light.
lūna, -ae, f., the moon.
lūx, lūcis, f., light, daylight.

M

maereō, -ēre, —, —, to be sad, grieve, lament.
magis, comp. adv., more.
magistrātus, -ūs, m., magistracy.
māgnificus, -a, -um, adj., grand, magnificent.
māgnitūdō, -inis, f., greatness, size.
māgnopere, adv., greatly, exceedingly.
māgnus, -a, -um, adj., great, large; *comp.*, **māior, māius; sup.**, **māximus, -a, -um.**
male, adv., badly, ill; *comp.*, **pēius; sup.**, **pessimē.**
maleficium, -ī, n., a misdeed.
mālō, mälle, mālui, —, to prefer, choose.
malum, -ī, n., evil.
malus, -a, -um, adj., bad, evil; *comp.*, **pēior, -ius; sup.**, **pessimus, -a, -um.**
māne, adv., in the morning.
maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūm, to stay, remain.
manifestus, -a, -um, adj., clear, manifest.
manipulus, -ī, m., a handful (*of hay*).

manus, -ūs, f., a hand.
mare, -is, n., the sea.
margō, -inis, m., a border.
māter, -tris, f., a mother.
mātrimōnium, -ī, n., marriage.
Mātrona, -ae, f., the River Marne.
mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to hasten.
mātūrus, -a, -um, adj., ripe, early.
maxilla, -ae, f., jaw bone.
māximē, especially.
medicīna, -ae, f., remedy.
medicus, -ī, m., a doctor.
medius, -a, -um, adj., middle, with gen.
meminī, -isse, defect., to remember.
memor, -oris, adj., mindful.
memoria, -ae, f., memory.
memorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, recount, say, relate.
mēns, mentis, f., mind, feelings, heart.
mēnsa, -ae, f., a table.
mēnsis, -is, m., a month.
mentior, -irī, -itus, to lie.
mercātor, -ōris, m., a merchant.
mercēs, -ēdis, f., price, offer of reward.
mereō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, to deserve, merit.
meridiēs, -ēī, m., midday.
meritum, -ī, n., reward, a merit.

Messāla, -ae, *m.*, Messala.
messis, -is, *f.*, harvest.
mētiōr, -īrī, **mēnsus**, to measure.
metuō, -ere, -uī, —, to fear.
metus, -ūs, *m.*, fear.
meus, -a, -um, *poss. pron.*, my, mine.
mīles, -itis, *m.*, a soldier.
militāris, -e, *adj.*, military;
rēs militāris, the art of war.
mille, *num. adj.*, a thousand.
minimē, *adv.*, least of all.
minor, -ārī, -ātus, threaten.
mīrābilis, -e, *adj.*, wonderful.
mīror, -ārī, -ātus, to admire.
mīrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, marvelous.
mīsceō, -ere, -uī, **mīxtus**, to mix, mingle.
misereor, -ērī, -itus, to have compassion, pity.
miseret, -ēre, -uit, it pities, with acc. of person and gen. of cause of feeling.
mītis, -e, *adj.*, mild, gentle.
mittō, -ere, **mīsī**, **missus**, to let go, send.
modo, *adv.*, just now, lately.
modus, -ī, *m.*, measure, size; fashion.
mōlior, -īrī, -ītus, to attempt, build.
molliō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītus, to make soft, soften.
moneō, -ēre, -uī, -ītus, to advise, warn.
mōns, **montis**, *m.*, mountain.

mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to show, indicate, tell.
mora, -ae, *f.*, a delay.
moriōr, -ī, **mortuus**, to die.
moror, -ārī, -ātus, to delay.
mors, **mortis**, *f.*, death.
mōs, **mōris**, *m.*, habit, custom; *pl.*, character.
Mōsēs, -is, *m.*, Moses.
mōtus, -ūs, *m.*, a movement, motion.
moveō, -ēre, **mōvī**, **mōtus**, to move, stir, set in motion.
mox, *adv.*, soon.
mulier, -eris, *f.*, a woman.
multiplex, -icis, *adj.*, with many folds; frequent.
multitūdō, -inis, *f.*, a multitude.
multus, -a, -um, *adj.*, many; *comp.*, **plūs**, **plūris**, more; *sup.*, **plūrimus**, -a, -um, most.
mūlus, -ī, *m.*, a mule.
mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, to fortify.
mūnitiō, -ōnis, *f.*, fortification.
mūnus, -eris, *n.*, an office, duty.
mūrus, -ī, *m.*, a wall.
mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to change.

N

nam, *conj.*, for.
Nammēius, -ī, *m.*, Nammēius.

nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to report, say, describe.

nāscor, -ī, nātus, to be born.

nātiō, -ōnis, f., nation, tribe.

natō, natāre, natāvī, natātus, to swim.

nātūra, -ae, f., nature, character.

nauta, -ae, m., a sailor.

nāvālis, -e, adj., naval.

nāvis, -is, f., a ship.

-ne, encl. adv. and conj.; as *adv.*, in direct questions, a sign of interrogation; as *conj.*, in indirect questions, whether.

nē, conj., that . . . not, lest.

necessāriō, adv., necessarily.

necessitās, -ātis, f., necessity.

negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to say no, deny.

negōtium, -ī, n., business.

nēmō (dat. nēminī, acc. nēminem), no one.

neque or nec, conj., and not, nor.

nequeō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itum, to be unable.

nervus, -ī, m., a sinew, cord.

neuter, -tra, -trum (gen. neutrius) adj., neither, of two.

nihil, n. indecl., nothing.

nihilōminus, adv., nevertheless.

nisi, conj., if not, unless.

nōbilis, -e, adj., well-known, noble.

nōbilitās, -ātis, f., fame; nobility.

noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, to hurt, with dat.

noctū, adv., by night.

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, not to wish, be unwilling.

nōmen, -inis, n., a name.

nōminātim, adv., by name.

nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to name.

nōn, adv., not.

nōn-dum, adv., not yet.

nōnne, particle introducing interrogation, expecting affirmative answer.

nōn-nūllus or nōn nūllus, -a, -um, adj., some, several.

nōn-numquam or nōn numquam, adv., sometimes.

Nōrēia, -ae, f., a city of the Norici.

Nōricus, -a, -um, adj., Norican.

noster, -tra, -trum, poss. pron., our, ours, our own.

nota, -ae, f., a mark, spot.

novus, -a, -um, adj., new, fresh, strange.

nox, noctis, f., night.

nūbēs, -is, f., a cloud, mist.

nūdus, -a, -um, adj., bare.

nūllus, -a, -um (gen. nūllius) adj., no, not any.

num, interrog. adv., is it not? with indirect question, whether.

numerus, -ī, m., a number.

nummus, -ī, *m.*, a coin.
numquam, *adv.*, never.
nunc, *adv.*, now, at present.
nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to announce, report.
nūntius, -ī, *m.*, messenger.
nūper, *adv.*, lately.
nūtriō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītus, to nourish, feed.

O

ō, *interj.*, O! oh!
ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of.
obaerātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, in debt.
ob-eō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -itum, perish, die.
obiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, to throw before, interpose.
obliviscor, -ī, oblītus, to forget, with gen. or acc.
ob-ruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutus, to overwhelm, destroy.
ob-sequor, -ī, -secūtus, to yield, submit; assist.
obserō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to bolt.
obses, -idis, *m.*, a hostage.
obsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus, besiege.
obsidiō, -ōnis, *f.*, a siege.
obstruō, -ere, -struxī, -strūctus, to build against, obstruct.
obtineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus, to hold, obtain.

obvius, -a, -um, *adj.*, opposing, in the way, with dat.
occāsiō, -ōnis, *f.*, an occasion.
occāsus, -ūs, *m.*, a setting; **occāsus sōlis**, sunset; the west.
occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cāsum, to fall or go down, set.
occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsus, to cut down, kill.
occultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to hide, conceal.
occumbō, -ere, cubuī, cubitum, to die.
occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to seize; capture.
occurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursum, to run to meet.
Ōceanus, -ī, *m.*, the ocean.
oculus, -ī, *m.*, an eye.
ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus, to hate.
odor, -ōris, *m.*, an odor.
offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātus, to bring before, offer.
olea, -ae, *f.*, olive tree.
ōlim, *adv.*, once, formerly.
ōmen, -inis, *n.*, an omen.
omittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, to give up, omit.
omnīnō, *adv.*, altogether, entirely.
omnis, -e, *adj.*, all, every.
onus, -eris, *n.*, a load.
opertus, -a, -um, *adj.*, concealed.
opīniō, -ōnis, *f.*, opinion.
oportet, -ēre, -uit, it is necessary.

oppidānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, belonging to a town, towns-people.

oppidum, -ī, *n.*, a walled town; stronghold.

opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus, to crush, oppress.

opperior, -īrī, **oppertus**, to wait for.

oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to attack, storm.

opus, -eris, *n.*, work, task.

ōra, -ae, *f.*, the shore.

ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, a speech, oration.

orbis, -is, *m.*, a circle, circuit; *orbis terrae* or *terrārum*, the world.

ōrdō, -inis, *m.*, a rank of soldiers; order.

Orgetorix, -rīgis, *m.*, Orgetorix.

origō, -inis, *f.*, a source, origin.

orior, -īrī, **ortus**, to arise; begin.

ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to adorn, decorate.

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to entreat, plead.

ōs, **ōris**, *n.*, the mouth.

os, **ossis**, *n.*, a bone.

ostendō, -ere, -dī, -tus, to show, disclose.

ōtium, -ī, *n.*, leisure.

ovis, -is, *f.*, a sheep.

P

pābulum, -ī, *n.*, fodder.

pācīscor, -ī, **pactus**, to agree, stipulate.

pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to pacify.

paene, *adv.*, nearly, almost.

paenitet, -ēre, -uit, *with acc. of person and gen. of cause of feeling*, it repents.

pāgus, -ī, *m.*, a district.

palūs, -ūdis, *f.*, a swamp, marsh.

pār, **paris**, *adj.*, equal.

parātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, ready.

parcō, -ere, **pepercī**, **parsus**, to spare, with dat.

pāreō, -ēre, -uī, —, to appear; obey, with dat.

pariēs, -etis, *m.*, a (house) wall.

pariō, -ere, **peperi**, **partus**, to bear (*i. e.*, to give birth to; not bear, carry); gain.

pariter, *adv.*, equally.

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to prepare, provide.

pars, **partis**, *f.*, a part.

particeps, -cipis, *adj.*, sharing in, with gen.

partim, *adv.*, partly; **partim** . . . **partim**, partly . . . partly.

partior, -īrī, -ītus, to divide.

parum, *adv.*, too little, not enough; *comp.*, **minus**, less; *sup.*, **minimē**, least.

parvulus, -a, -um, *adj.*, little.

- parvus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, small, little; *comp.*, minor, minus; *sup.*, minimus, -ā, -um, least.
- pāscō**, pāscere, pāvī, pāstus, to feed.
- passus**, -ūs, *m.*, a step, pace.
- pāstor**, -ōris, *m.*, a shepherd.
- pāstorālis**, -e, *adj.*, belonging to a shepherd.
- pateō**, -ēre, -uī, —, to lie open, stretch out, extend.
- pater**, -tris, *m.*, a father.
- patior**, -ī, passus, to bear, endure, permit.
- patria**, -ae, *f.*, fatherland, native country.
- paucī**, -ae, -a, *adj.*, few.
- pāx**, pācis, *f.*, peace.
- pectus**, -oris, *n.*, the breast.
- pecūnia**, -ae, *f.*, money, sum of money.
- pedester**, -tris, -tre, *adj.*, on foot, pedestrian.
- pēdum**, -ī, *n.*, a crook.
- pellō**, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, to strike, beat; expel.
- pendeō**, -ēre, pependī, —, to hang, be suspended.
- penes**, *prep. with acc.*, in the power of.
- penna**, -ae, *f.*, a feather.
- per**, *prep. w. acc.*, through.
- percellō**, -ere, -culī, -culsus, to overthrow.
- percipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, -cep-tus, to receive, perceive.
- percutiō**, -ere, -cussī, -cus-sus, to smite.
- per-dō**, -ere, -didī, -ditus, to lose.
- per-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -duc-tus, to lead through; construct.
- per-eō**, -īre, -iī or -ivī, -itum, perish, be lost.
- perfacilis**, -e, *adj.*, very easy.
- per-ferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, to bear through, endure; announce.
- perficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, to accomplish, complete, make.
- pergō**, -ere, perrēxī, per-rēctum, to go on.
- periculum**, -ī, *n.*, peril, danger.
- perītus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, skilled in, with gen.
- per-maneō**, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, to last through, remain.
- per-mittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -mis-sus, to permit, allow.
- per-moveō**, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, to move deeply, disturb, alarm.
- perniciēs**, -ēī, *f.*, destruction, death.
- pernoctō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to pass the night.
- perobscūrus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, very dark.
- per-paucī**, -ae, -a, *adj.*, very few.

GENERAL VOCABULARY

perpetuō, *adv.*, constantly, perpetually.

per-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, to break through.

per-sequor, -ī, -secūtus, to follow after, follow, pursue.

persevērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to persist.

perspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spēctus, to see through.

per-suādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus, to persuade, with dat. In passive used impersonally.

pertineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus, to pertain, have to do with.

per-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, to come through, arrive, reach.

pēs, pedis, *m.*, a foot.

petō, -ere, -ivī, -itus, to seek.

Pharaō, -ōnis, *m.*, the King of Egypt.

Philistaeus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Philistine.

pīctūra, -ae, *f.*, a painting.

piget, -ēre, -uit, it grieves, with acc. of person and gen. of cause of feeling.

pīlum, -ī, *n.*, a javelin.

piscis, -is, *m.*, a fish.

Pisō, -ōnis, *m.*, Piso.

pix, picis, *f.*, pitch.

placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, to please; *impers.*, it is pleasing, with dat.

plānitiēs, -ēī, *f.*, a plain.

planta, -ae, *f.*, a sprout, plant.

plēbēs, plēbis, or plēbeī, *f.*, the common people.

plēnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, full, with gen.

pleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, to fill.

plumbum, -ī, *n.*, lead.

poena, -ae, *f.*, punishment, penalty.

poēta, -ae, *m.*, a poet.

polliceor, -ērī, -itus, to promise.

pompa, -ae, *f.*, a solemn procession.

pōmum, -ī, *n.*, an apple.

pondus, -eris, *n.*, a weight.

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, to place.

pōns, pontis, *m.*, a bridge.

populor, -ārī, -ātus, to devastate.

populus, -ī, *m.*, a people, nation, body of citizens.

porrō, *adv.*, moreover, besides.

porta, -ae, *f.*, a gate.

portendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, to signify.

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to bear, carry.

portus, -ūs, *m.*, port.

pōscō, -ere, pōpōscī, —, to ask, demand.

possessiō, -ōnis, *f.*, possession.

possideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus, to possess.

possum, posse, potuī, —, to
be able.

post, *prep. w. acc.*, behind,
after, since.

post-eā, *adv.*, afterward.

posterus, -a, -um, *adj.*, the
following, next; *comp.*,
posterior, -ius; *sup.*,
postrēmus, -a, -um (post-
umus, -a, -um), last.

post-quam, *conj.*, after,
when.

postrēmō, *adv.*, at last, finally.

postrīdiē, *adv.*, next day.

potentia, -ae, *f.*, power.

potestās, -ātis, *f.*, power.

potior, -irī, -itus, to get
possession of, seize, with
abl.

potius, *adv.*, rather.

praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, to
have ready; furnish.

prae-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -ces-
sum, to go before, surpass.

praeceps, -cipitis, *adj.*, steep,
precipitous.

praecīdo, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus,
to cut off.

praecipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus,
to advise, warn, with dat.

praeclūdō, -ere, -sī, -sus,
to shut off.

praecurrō, -ere, -currī, -cur-
sum, to run before.

praeda, -ae, *f.*, booty, plun-
der.

prae-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -duc-
tus, to lead before.

prae-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus,
to bear before, prefer.

prae-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus,
to put in command of,
with acc. of person and
dat. of thing.

prae-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -mis-
sus, to send in advance.

praemium, -ī, *n.*, a reward.

prae-parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,
to get ready beforehand.

prae-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -posi-
tus, to put in charge of,
with acc. of person and
dat. of thing.

prae-scribō, -ere, -scripsī,
-scriptus, to direct, pre-
scribe, with dat.

praesēns, -entis, *adj.*, pres-
ent.

praesentiō, -ire, -sēnsī, -sēn-
sus, to feel beforehand.

praesertim, *adv.*, especially.

praesideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -ses-
sum, sit down before.

praesidium, -ī, *n.*, garrison,
guard.

praestat, -are, -stitit, it is
better.

prae-sum, -esse, -fui, —,
to be in charge of, be head
of, with dat.

prae-tendō, -ere, -tendī,
-tentus, to stretch forth,
extend.

praeter, *prep. with acc.*, be-
yond; besides, except.

praeter-eā, *adv.*, besides.

GENERAL VOCABULARY

praetor, -ōris, *m.*, praetor.
prae-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, to arrive before, anticipate.
premō, -ere, pressī, pressus, to press, press down, oppress.
prēndō, -ere, prehēdī, prehēnsus (prēnsus), to seize, grasp.
pretium, -ī, *n.*, a price.
prex, precis, *f.*, a prayer.
prīdiē, *adv.*, on the day before.
primō, *adv.*, at first; first.
primum, *adv.*, first, at first.
primus, -a, -um, *adj.*, first, foremost, earliest.
prīnceps, -ipis, *m.*, chieftain.
prīncipātus, -ūs, *m.*, chieftainship.
prior, prius, *comp. adj.*, former, first.
prīstinus, -a, -um, *adj.*, former.
prius-quam, *conj.*, before, until.
prīvātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, private.
prīvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to deprive, rob.
prō, *prep. with abl.*, before, in front of; for, in behalf of.
probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to approve, favor.
probrum, -ī, *n.*, a base act.
prō-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, to go forward, advance.

procul, *adv.*, at a distance, afar.
prō-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, to betray.
prō-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, to lead forth, prolong.
proelium, -ī, *n.*, a battle.
profectiō, -ōnis, *f.*, a departure.
prō-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, to bring forth, extend.
proficīscor, -ī, profectus, to set out.
prōfligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to crush completely.
prō-fluō, -ere, -flūxī, —, to flow forth, arise.
prōgredior, -ī, -gressus, to go forward, advance.
prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, to restrain, prevent.
prōiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, to hurl forward, throw away, cast.
prō-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, proffer, promise.
prō-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, to move forward.
prope, *adv.*, almost; *comp.*, propius; *sup.*, proximē, nearest; last.
prō-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, to drive forward, propel.
properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to hasten.
propinquus, -a, -um, *adj.*, near.

prō-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, tr., to put forward, propose.

propter, prep. with *acc.*, on account of.

propter-eā, adv., for this reason.

prō-sternō, -ere, -strāvī, -strātus, overthrow, ruin.

prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfuī, —, to be useful, profit, with *dat.*

prōtendō, -ere, -tendī, tentus, to extend.

prōveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, to come forth, turn out.

prōvincia, -ae, f., an office; province.

prōvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to call forth.

proximus, -a, -um, adj., nearest, next.

prudentia, -ae, f., prudence.

pūblicus, -a, -um, adj., public.

pudet, -ēre, -uit, it shames; with *acc. of person and gen. of cause of feeling.*

pudor, -ōris, m., shame.

puella, -ae, f., a girl.

puer, -ī, m., a boy, child.

puerulus, -ī, m., boy.

pūgna, -ae, f., a battle.

pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to fight, contend, struggle.

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj., beautiful.

pulvis, -eris, m., dust.

punctum, -ī, n., a point.

pūniō, -īre, -ivī, -itus, to punish.

pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to clean, purify.

puteus, -ī, m., a well.

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to think.

Q

quaerō, -ere, -sivī, -situs, to seek; ask, inquire.

quaesō, —, —, —, to pray, ask.

quaestiō, -ōnis, f., an investigation.

quālis, -e, adj.; *interrog.*, of what sort?

quam, adv., after *comparatives*; than.

quam-quam, conj., although, with *indicative*.

quandō, adv., when.

quantus, -a, -um, adj.; *interrog.*, how much?

quā-rē, adv., whereby, wherefore.

qua-si, adv., as if, just as if, with *subj.*

quatiō, -ere, quassī, quassus, to shake; wield, brandish.

-que, conj., *encl.*, and; **-que . . . -que**, both . . . and.

quercus, -ūs, f., an oak, oak-tree.

queror, -ī, questus, to complain.

quī, quae, quod, *interrog. pron. and adj.*, who? which? what? *rel.*, who, which, that; *indef. rel.*, whoever, anyone, anything.

quia, *conj.*, because.

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam), *indef. pron.*; as *adj.*, certain; as *pron.*, a certain one, something.

quiēs, quiētis, *f.*, rest, quiet.
quiēscō, -ere, -ēvī, -ētus, to get quiet.

quis, quae (qua), quid, *indef. pron.*, anybody, anything, after **sī, nisi, nē, num.**

quis, quid, *interrog. pron.*, who? which? what?

quis-quam, quaequam, quid-quam (quicquam), *indef. pron.*, any one, anything; *adj.*, any, usually with a negative. Has no pl.

quis-que, quaeque, quidque (quodque), *indef. pron.*, each one, each thing; *adj.*, each, every.

quī-vīs, quaevis, quidvis (quodvis), *indef. pron.*; anyone you wish; anything.

quod, *conj.*, because, since.

quoque, *conj.*, also, too.

R

rabiēs, -ēī, *f.*, madness.

radius, -ī, *m.*, ray, spoke.

rādix, -īcis, *f.*, a root.

rāmus, -ī, *m.*, a branch.

rapāx, *adj.*, thievish.

rapīna, -ae, *f.*, robbery.

rapiō, -ere, -puī, -ptus, to carry off, snatch or hurry away.

ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*, reason, plan.

ratis, -is, *f.*, a raft, boat.

Rauracī, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic tribe.

re-bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to rebel.

re-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, to go back, recede.

recēns, -entis, *adj.*, fresh, recent.

recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, to receive; betake oneself.

reclāmō, -are, -ārī, -ātus, to shout against.

rēctus, -a, -um, *adj.*, straight, direct.

recutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussus, to shake.

red-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, to give back.

red-eō, -īre, -iī or -ivī, -itum, to return.

redigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus, to drive back; reduce.

redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēemptus, to buy back, ransom.

red-integrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, renew, restore.

reditiō, -ōnis, *f.*, a return.

re-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, to lead back; reduce.

- re-ferō, -ferre, rettulī, relātus**, to bring back; report.
reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, to repair, make over.
reflectō, -ere, -flēxī, -flectus, to bend back.
refluō, -ere, -flūxī, -fluctus, to pour back.
rēgina, -ae, f. [rēx], a queen.
rēgnum, -ī, n., kingdom.
regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus, to rule, govern; guide.
reiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, to throw *or* hurl back.
re-liquō, -ere, -liquī, -lictus, to leave, abandon.
reliquus, -a, -um, adj., remaining.
re-maneō, -ēre, -mānsī, —, to remain.
re-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, to send back; relax, weaken.
re-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, to move back, withdraw.
rēmus, -ī, m., an oar.
re-pellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsus, to drive back, repel.
repente, adv., suddenly.
reperiō, -īre, repperī, reperi-tus, to find (by search), discover.
re-petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, seek again, repeat.
re-pleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, to fill again.
re-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to carry back.
reprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus, to press back, repress.
re-pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to resist.
rēs, rei, f., a thing, matter, affair.
re-scindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissus, to tear down, destroy.
resciscō, -ere, -scivī, -scītus, find out.
resideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, to remain seated, remain.
resiliō, -īre, -uī, —, to leap back.
re-sistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum, to resist.
re-solvō, -ere, -solvī, -solūtus, to loosen, resolve, cancel.
re-spondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, to reply.
respōnsum, -ī, n., a reply.
restituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, to restore, reestablish.
re-stō, -stāre, -stitī, to remain.
resultō, -āre, —, —, to leap back.
retineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus, to hold back, retain.
re-trahō, -ere, -trāxī, -tractus, to draw back, recall.
re-vertō, -ere, -tī, -sum, to turn back, return.
re-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to recall, call back.
rēx, rēgis, m., a king.
Rhēnus, -ī, m., the Rhine.

GENERAL VOCABULARY

Rhodanus, -ī, *m.*, the Rhone.
rīdeō, -ēre, **rīsī**, **rīsum**, to laugh; deride.

rīpa, -ae, *f.*, the bank of a river.

rōbur, -oris, *n.*, timber.

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to ask.

Rōma, -ae, *f.*, Rome.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Rome, Roman.

rosa, -ae, *f.*, a rose.

rota, -ae, *f.*, a wheel.

Ruben, -nis, *m.*, Reuben.

ruber, **rubra**, **rubrum**, *adj.*, red.

ruīna, -ae, *f.*, a ruin, collapse.

rumpō, -ere, **rūpī**, **ruptus**, to break, burst.

ruō, -ere, **ruī**, **rutum**, to fall or rush down, rush.

rūpēs, -is, *f.*, a rock, cliff.

rūrsus, *adv.*, again.

rūs, **rūris**, *n.*, the country.

rūsticus, -a, -um, rustic, belonging to the country.

S

sacculus, -ī, *m.*, a sack.

saepe, *adv.*, often, frequently.

saeviō, -īre, -iī, -itum, to rage, be furious, be violent.

saevus, -a, -um, *adj.*, cruel, savage.

sagāx, *adj.*, wise, prudent.

sagitta, -ae, *f.*, an arrow.

sal, **salis**, *n.*, salt.

saliō, -īre, -uī, —, to leap.

saltō, -āre, —, —, to dance.

salūs, **salūtis**, *f.*, safety.

sanciō, -īre, **sānxī**, **sānctus**, to ordain, ratify.

sanguis, -inis, *m.*, blood.

sapiēns, -entis, *adj.*, wise, discreet.

satis, *adv.*, enough, sufficient.

satis-faciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, to appease, satisfy, with dat.

saxum, -ī, *n.*, a rock.

scelus, -eris, *n.*, a crime.

scientia, -ae, *f.*, knowledge, science.

scindō, -ere, **scidī**, **scissus**, to split.

sciō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, to know.

scirpeus, -a, -um, of bulrushes.

scribō, -ere, **scripsī**, **scrip-tus**, to write.

scriptor, -ōris, *m.*, a writer.

scūtum, -ī, *n.*, a shield.

sē-, *prefix, inseparable*, apart, away.

sed, *conj.*, but.

sedeō, -ēre, **sēdī**, **sessum**, to sit, sit down.

sēdēs, -is, *f.*, a seat.

sedīle, -is, *n.*, a seat.

seges, -etis, *f.*, standing corn, crop.

semel, *num. adv.*, once, one time.

sēmentis, -is, *f.*, a sowing (of grain).

semper, *adv.*, always.

senātus, -ūs, *m.*, the senate.

senex, senis, m., an old man.
sententia, -ae, f., opinion.
sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, to perceive, feel.
sēparātim, adv., separately.
sē-parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to separate.
sepeliō, -īre, -īvī, -pultus, to bury.
septentriōnēs, -um, m., the North.
sepulcrum, -ī, n., a grave, sepulchre.
Sēquanī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe.
sequor, -ī, secūtus, to follow.
sera, -ae, f., a bar, bolt.
seriēs, -ēī, f., a series.
serviō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, to serve.
servitūs, -tūtis, f., slavery.
servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to watch, keep, save.
servus, -ī, m., a slave.
sī, conj., if; whether.
sic, adv., thus.
siccus, -a, -um, adj., dry.
Sicilia, -ae, f., Sicily.
signum, -ī, n., a sign.
silēns, -entis, adj., still, quiet.
silva, -ae, f., wood, forest.
silvester, -tris, -tre, adj., wooded.
similis, -e, adj., like, similar; *comp.*, **similior, -ius**; *sup.*, **simillimus, -a, -um**, with dat.
simplex, -icis, adj., simple.

simul, adv., at the same time.
sine, prep. with abl., without.
singulāris, -e, adj., single; singular.
singulī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., one apiece, one by one.
sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., left; evil.
sistō, -ere, stitī, statum, to cause to stand, place.
situs, -a, -um, adj., situated.
sive, conj., whether, if.
socer, socerī, m., a father-in-law.
socius, -ī, m., a companion, ally.
sōl, sōlis, m., the sun.
soleō, -ēre, -itus sum, to be accustomed.
sollicitus, -a, -um, adj., anxious, watchful.
solum, -ī, n., the ground.
sōlum, adv., only, merely; **nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam**, not only . . . but also.
sōlus, -a, -um (gen. sōlius), adj., alone, only.
solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus, to loosen.
somniātor, -ōris, m., a dreamer.
somnium, -ī, n., a dream.
somnus, -ī, m., sleep.
sonus, -ī, m., a sound.
soror, -ōris, f., a sister.
sors, sortis, f., a lot.
spatiōr, -ārī, -ātus, to walk, go.

GENERAL VOCABULARY

spatium, -ī, n., a space.
speciēs, -ēī, f., shape, form.
specio, -ere, spēxī, spectus,
 to look at.
spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to
 look *or* gaze at.
spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to
 hope.
spēs, speī, f., hope.
spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to
 strip, plunder.
spolium, -ī, n., spoil, booty.
spondeō, -ēre, spopondī,
spōnsus, to assure, prom-
 ise.
stabiliō, -ire, -ivī, -itus, to
 make firm.
statim, adv., at once, im-
 mediately.
statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, to
 set up; resolve.
stella, -ae, f., a star.
sternō, -ere, strāvī, strātus,
 to strew, spread.
stō, stāre, steti, stātum, to
 stand.
struō, -ere, strūxī, strūctus,
 to build.
studeō, -ēre, -uī, —, to
 desire, with dat.
studium, -ī, n., pursuit;
 study.
suā sponte, of one's own
 accord.
sub, prep. with acc. and abl.;
 under.
sub-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -duc-
tus, to lead up.

sub-eō, -ire, -iī (-ivī), -itum,
 to come *or* go under; ap-
 proach.
subiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus,
 to put under, place below.
subitō, adv., suddenly.
sub-mittō, -ere, -misi, -mis-
sus, to let down, lower.
sub-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mō-
tum, to dislodge, drive
 back.
subnitor, -niti, -nixus, lean
 on, prop up.
subripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -rep-
tus, to take by stealth.
sub-sequor, -ī, -secūtus, to
 follow on, come after.
subsidium, -ī, n., aid.
subter, prep., under.
sub-veniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ven-
tum, to come to aid, assist.
subvertō, -ere, -ī, -versus, to
 overthrow.
succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -ces-
sum, to advance; succeed.
succidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsus,
 to cut down.
suffrāgium, -ī, n., a ballot.
suī, sibi, sē, reflex. pron., of
 himself, herself, itself; of
 themselves.
sum, esse, fui, —, to be.
summus, see superus.
sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus,
 take on, assume.
sūmptus, -ūs, m., expense.
super, prep. with acc. and
abl., over, above, beyond.

superficiēs, -ēī, f., a surface.
superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to surpass; subdue, conquer.
super-sedeō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, to refrain from.
super-sum, -esse, -fuī, —, to be left, survive, with dat.
superus, -a, -um, adj., high; *comp.*, superior, **-ius,** higher; *sup.*, summus, **-a, -um,** and **suprēmus, -a, -um,** highest.
suppetō, -ere, -ivī, -itum, to be at hand, be available.
suppleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, to fill up, supply.
supplicium, -ī, n., punishment.
suppōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, to place beneath.
supportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to carry up.
surgō, -ere, surrēxī, surrēctus, to raise; rise.
suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, to undertake.
suspendō, -ere, -pendī, -pēnsus, to hang up, suspend.
suspiciō, -ōnis, f., suspicion.
sūspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectus, to suspect.
sustineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus, to hold up, sustain.
suus, -a, -um, poss. pron., his own, her own, its own, their own; his, hers, its, theirs.

T

tabula, -ae, f., a plank; tablet.
taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, to be silent.
tacitus, -a, -um, adj., silent.
taedet, -ēre, -uit, it bores, with acc. of person and gen. of cause of feeling.
tālis, -e, adj., of such a sort.
tam, adv., so, so far.
tamen, adv., nevertheless.
tam-quam, adv., as if, with subj.
tandem, adv., at length, finally.
tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctus, to touch.
tantus, -a, -um, adj., so great.
tantōpere, adv., so much.
tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctus, to cover, protect.
tēlum, -ī, n., a javelin.
temerē, adv., rashly.
temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to refrain, forbear.
templum, -ī, n., a temple.
temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to try, attempt.
tempus, -oris, n., time.
tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentus, to stretch, stretch out.
teneō, -ēre, -uī, —, to hold, keep; occupy.
terra, -ae, f., the earth; land.
terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, to frighten, alarm.

GENERAL VOCABULARY

terrester, tris, -e, *adj.*,
earthly.

terribilis, -e, *adj.*, frightful,
dreadful.

terror, -ōris, *m.*, fear.

tēstimōnium, -ī, *n.*, evidence,
proof.

tēstis, -is, *m.*, a witness.

tēstor, -ārī, -ātus, to be a
witness; prove.

texō, -ere, texuī, textus, to
weave.

Tiberis, -is, *m.*, the Tiber.

timeō, -ēre, -uī, —, to fear.

timidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, timid.

timor, -ōris, *m.*, fear.

tinguō, -ere, tīnxī, tīnctus,
to wet, drench.

toga, -ae, *f.*, a toga.

tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus,
to lift up, remove.

tondeō, -ēre, totondī, tōnsus,
to clip, shear.

torqueō, -ēre, torsī, tortus,
to turn, whirl.

tōtus, -a, -um (*gen. tōtūs*)
adj., whole, all, entire.

trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditus,
to give up, surrender.

trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -duc-
tus, to lead across, cheat.

trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractus,
to draw, drag.

trāiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus,
to throw over, transport.

trāns, *prep. with acc.*, across.

trāns-eō, -īre, -īvī or -iī,
-itum, to go across.

trāns-ferō, -ferre, -tulī,
-lātus, to carry across,
transfer.

trānsigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus,
to drive through, accom-
plish.

trāns-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -mis-
sus, to send across, con-
vey across.

trāns-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,
to carry over, transport.

tribūnāl, -ālis, *n.*, a tribunal.

tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, to
assign, allot.

trīduum, -ī, *n.*, three days'
time.

triennium, -ī, *n.*, three years'
time.

triplex, -icis, *adj.*, threefold.

trīstis, -e, *adj.*, sad.

tū, tuī, *pers. pron.*, thou, you.

tuba, -ae, *f.*, a trumpet.

Tulingī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Tu-
lingī.

tum, *adv.*, then.

tunc, *adv.*, then.

turba, -ae, *f.*, crowd.

turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to
disturb, break.

turris, -is, *f.*, a tower.

tuus, -a, -um, *poss. pron.*,
thy, thine, your.

U

ubi, *adv.*; *rel.*, where; *in-*
terrog., when? where?

ulcīscor, -ī, ultus, to take
vengeance on.

ūllus, -a, -um (*gen. ūllius*),
adj., any; anyone.

ulterior, -ius, comp. adj.,
farther, beyond, ulterior.

ultimus, -a, -um, adj. [*sup.*
of ulterior], most remote
or distant.

ultiō, -ōnis, f., a revenging.

ultor, -ōris, m., a punisher,
avenger.

ultrā, prep. with acc., beyond.

ūnā, adv., together with.

unda, -ae, f., a wave.

unde, adv., whence.

undique, adv., on all sides.

ūniversus, -a, -um, adj., all
together, whole, entire.

ūnus, -a, -um (*gen. ūnīus*),
num. adj., one, single;
only, alone.

urbānus, -a, -um, adj., of
the city.

urbs, urbis, f., a city.

ūsūrpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to
seize *for use*, use.

ūsus, -ūs, m., use.

ut, as conj., that, so that, in
order that.

uter, utra, utrum (*gen.*
utrius), *pron.*; *interrog.*,
which of *two*?

uter-que, utraque, utrum-
que (*gen. utriusque*), *adj.*,
each of *two*, both.

ūtilis, -e, adj., useful.

uti-nam, conj., would that.

ūtor, -ī, ūsus, intr., to make
use of; enjoy, with *abl.*

utrum, conj., whether.

uxor, -ōris, f., a wife.

V

vādō, -ere, vāsī, —, to pro-
ceed, go.

vadum, -ī, n., a ford.

vagiēns, -ntis, adj., crying.

vagor, -ārī, -ātus, to wander.

valeō, -ēre, -uī, —, to be
well, strong, be power-
ful.

valētūdō, -inis, f., good
health.

validus, -a, -um, adj., strong,
vigorous.

vallēs, -is, f., a valley.

vāllum, -ī, n. a wall.

varius, -a, -um, adj., mani-
fold, changing.

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, to
ravage, destroy.

vāstus, -a, -um, adj., empty,
vast.

vectīgal, -ālis, n., a tribute,
a tax.

vehemēns, -ntis, adj., vio-
lent.

vehementer, adv., violently.

vel, conj., or; **vel . . . vel**,
either . . . or.

vēlōx, -ōcis, adj., swift, fleet.

veneror, -ārī, -ātus, to rev-
erence.

veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum,
to come, go.

ventus, -ī, m., the wind.

vēr, vēris, n., the spring.

GENERAL VOCABULARY

verbātim , <i>adv.</i> , word for word.	videō , -ēre , vidī , vīsus , to see, perceive.
verbum , -ī , <i>n.</i> , a word.	vigilia , -ae , <i>f.</i> , a watching, watch.
vereor , -ērī , -itus , to fear.	vinciō , -īre , vīnxī , vīctus , to bind, fetter.
vergō , -ere , —, —, to lie toward, slope.	vincō , -ere , vīcī , victus , to conquer.
vēritās , -ātis , <i>f.</i> , truth.	vinculum , -ī , <i>n.</i> , chain.
vērō , <i>adv.</i> , <i>postpositive</i> , in truth, indeed.	vīnea , -ae , <i>f.</i> , a vineyard.
vertex , -icis , <i>m.</i> , the head; summit.	vīnum , -ī , <i>n.</i> , wine.
vertō , -ere , -tī , -sus , to turn, turn around.	vir , virī , <i>m.</i> , a man.
Verucloetius , -ī , <i>m.</i> , Verucloetius.	virgō , -inis , <i>f.</i> , a maiden.
vērus , -a , -um , <i>adj.</i> , true.	virtūs , -ūtis , <i>f.</i> , manliness, courage.
vēscor , -ī , —, to eat, with the abl.	vīs , vīs , <i>pl.</i> , vīrēs , -ium , <i>f.</i> , strength, force, power.
vesper , -eris , <i>m.</i> , the evening.	vīta , -ae , <i>f.</i> , life.
vester , -tra , -trum , <i>poss. pron.</i> , your, yours.	vix , <i>adv.</i> , scarcely.
vestiō , -īre , -īvī , -ītus , to clothe.	vocō , -āre , -āvī , -ātus , to call, summon.
vestis , -is , <i>f.</i> , clothing.	volitō , -āre , -āvī , -ātum , to fly, hasten.
vetō , -āre , -uī , -itus , to forbid.	volō , velle , voluī , —, to will, be willing, wish.
vetus , -eris , <i>adj.</i> , old.	volūmen , -inis , <i>n.</i> , a volume.
via , -ae , <i>f.</i> , way, road.	voluntās , -ātis , <i>f.</i> , will, wish, desire.
viātor , -ōris , <i>m.</i> , a traveler.	volvō , -ere , volvī , volūtus , to roll.
vīcīnus , -a , -um , <i>adj.</i> , neighboring, near.	vōx , vōcis , <i>f.</i> , a voice, sound.
victor , -ōris , <i>m.</i> , a victor.	vulgus , -ī , <i>n.</i> , the common people; crowd.
victōria , -ae , <i>f.</i> , victory.	vulnus , -eris ; <i>n.</i> , a wound.
vīcus , -ī , <i>m.</i> , a village.	vulpēs , -is , <i>f.</i> , a fox.

INDEX

(The references are to paragraphs)

- Ablative case, 84.
 - absolute, 566-569.
 - of accompaniment, 291.
 - of agent, 307.
 - of cause, 179.
 - of comparison, 215.
 - of manner, 231.
 - of means or instrument, 119.
 - of place from which, 85.
 - of place in which, 112.
 - of separation, 484.
 - of specification, 521.
 - of time, 161.
 - with *ulor*, *fruor*, etc., 758.
 - with adjectives, 759.
- Accent, general laws of, Introduction.
 - in contracted genitive and vocative of nouns in *-ius*, 47.
- Accusative case, 14.
 - direct object, 100.
 - double object, 746.
 - extent of time and space, 243.
 - place to which, 197.
 - subject of infinitive, 719.
- Adjectives, first and second declension, 53-55.
 - third declension, 163-185.
 - one termination, 167.
 - two terminations, 174, 211.
 - three terminations, 181.
 - irregular (genitive in *-ius*), 352.
 - possessive, 323.
 - predicate, 265.
- Adverb, 266-272.
 - comparison, 267.
 - irregular, 268.
- Agreement of adjectives, 59.
 - participles, 560.
 - predicate noun, 265.
 - relative pronoun, 502.
 - verbs, 86.
- Apposition, 438.
- Auxiliary verbs, 96.
 - Causal clauses, 476-478.
 - Clause, 389.
 - Commands, 537-542.
 - Comparative, declined, 211.
 - Comparison of adjectives, regular, 207.
 - irregular, 217-218, 693.
 - of adverbs, regular, 267.
 - irregular, 268.
 - Complementary infinitive, 577.
 - Concession, 489-491.
 - Conditional sentences, 463-471.
 - Conjugation I., 68, 75, 93, 296, 308, 400, 419, 430, 441, 539, 559, 574, 589, 600.
 - II, 102, 105, 113, 317, 325, 400, 419, 430, 441, 539, 559, 574, 589, 600.
 - III, 187, 190, 199, 331, 342, 407, 431, 442, 540, 560, 575, 590, 600.
 - in *-io*, 224, 226, 356, 407, 431, 442, 540, 560, 575, 590, 600.
 - IV, 245, 248, 255, 373, 383, 407, 431, 442, 540, 560, 575, 590, 600.
 - Conjunction, 275.
 - Contraction in genitive of nouns in *-ius* and *-ium*, 47.
 - Correlatives, 308.
 - Cum*, enclitic, with pronouns, 292.
- Dative case, 14.
 - of agent, 615.
 - of indirect object, 306.
 - of possessor, 548.
 - of purpose, 702.
 - with adjectives, 742.
 - with special verbs, 741.
- Declension, 9.
 - I declension, 8.
 - II declension, 46.
 - III declension, 121-159.
 - IV declension, 232-236.
 - V declension, 238-240.
- Definitions, 9, 10, 11, 14.

INDEX

Deponent verbs, 659-678.

Domus, declined, 236.

domi, 236.

Duo, declined, 819.

Eō, 698, 836.

Exhortations, 525.

Fearing, verbs of, 770.

Ferō, 698, 837.

Fīō, 698, 838.

Gender, 11.

in first declension, 12.

in second declension, 34, 38.

in third declension, 126.

in fourth declension, 235.

in fifth declension, 240.

Genitive case, 14.

partitive, 150.

possessive, 65.

with adjectives, 737.

with verbs, 733, 735.

Gerund, 587-593.

Gerundive, 600-603.

Impersonal verbs, 723, 735.

Indefinite pronouns, *quis*, *aliquis*,

634, 635.

Indirect discourse, infinitive in, 784.

Indirect subjunctive in, 793.

Indirect questions, 777.

Infinitive, 572, 577.

object, 750.

subject, 719, 722.

I-stems, 154.

Interjections, 638.

Locative case, 141, n.

Mālō, 687, 833.

-ne in questions, 259.

Nōlō, conjugation, 687, 833.

nōlī, with infinitive, 544-546.

Nominative case, 14.

Nōnne and *num*, in questions, 259.

Numerals, 640.

Participles, 557-561.

Parts of speech. Introduction.

Passive voice, 297-299.

Periphrastic conjugations, 606-612.

Plūs, declined, 219.

Possessive adjectives, 323.

Possum, 832.

Predicate adjectives and nouns, 265.

Prefixes, 36, 43.

Prepositions, 24-28.

Principal parts of verbs, 88.

Prohibitions, 544-546.

Pronouns, 285.

demonstrative, 335-339, 346, 378-379.

indefinite, *quis*, *aliquis*, etc., 634, 635.

interrogative, 363.

personal, 288, 303.

reflexive, 322.

relative, 499.

Pronunciation, Introduction.

Purpose, expressed by gerundive

with *ad*, 603.

relative clauses of, 496.

by subjunctive, 404-6, 764.

by supine, 620.

Quantity, Introduction.

-que, enclitic, 281.

Questions, direct, 258-260.

indirect, 777.

Quī, declension, 363.

Quis, declension, 364.

Relative clauses, 496-512.

pronoun, 499.

Result, 423-427.

Rūs, 141.

Sentences, Introduction, 258, 274, 387, 393.

Sequences of tenses, 412-417.

Subjunctive mood, 398.

hortatory subjunctive, 526.

indirect discourse, 793.

indirect questions, 777.

of purpose, 404-6, 764.

of result, 423-427.

with verbs of fearing, 770.

Suffixes, 714.

Suī, declined, 322.

Sum, 262, 461, 831.

Supine, 620-622.

INDEX

Suus, distinguished from *eius*, 323.

Syllables, Introduction.

Temporal clauses, 433-436, 443-445,
448-450.

Tōtus, declension, 352.

Trēs, declension, 819.

Ūnus, declension, 819.

Utinam, with subjunctive, 534.

Verb, rule for agreement, 86.

definitions, 77, 78, 79, 80, 81, 88,
94.

Vocative case, 44.

Volō, 687.

Vowels, Introduction.

Wishes, 525-534.

Word lists, 803.

order, 101.

55
4/69

F

YB 41180

U. C. BERKELEY LIBRARIES



C046782665

367404

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

